

IBM Z Workload Scheduler
Planning and Installation
Version 10.2 SPE (Revised July 2025)

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in [Notices on page ccclxxi](#).

This edition applies to version 10, release 2, modification level 0 of IBM Z Workload Scheduler (program number 5698-T09) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

Contents

List of Figures.....	viii
List of Tables.....	ix
About this publication.....	x
What is new in this release.....	x
Who should read this publication.....	x
Accessibility	xi
Technical training.....	xi
Support information.....	xi
Part I. Planning.....	12
Chapter 1. Overview.....	13
Hardware requirements.....	13
Software requirements and optional software.....	13
Controlling system.....	13
Controlled z/OS systems.....	14
Optional software.....	14
Related software.....	14
Parts and their relationships.....	15
Tracker.....	15
Controller.....	15
Server.....	16
Graphical user interfaces.....	16
Data Store.....	17
Output collector.....	17
Configurations.....	18
Controlling system.....	18
Controlled systems.....	18
Integration.....	19
Subtasks.....	19
Relationship between the Scheduler and z/OS system.....	21
Using the Program Directory.....	22
Sample library.....	22
The installation process.....	22
Chapter 2. Planning your configuration.....	24
Trackers.....	24
Initialization statements.....	24
Communication.....	24
How to connect IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems.....	25
TCP/IP.....	25
z/OS cross-system coupling facility.....	25
VTAM® (network communication function).....	25
Workstation destination.....	26
Workload restart.....	26
JES considerations.....	26
Basic configuration examples.....	27
TCP/IP connected.....	27
XCF connected.....	29
VTAM® connected.....	30
Tracker and controller in a single address space.....	32
Basic data store configuration examples.....	33
SNA-only connection.....	33
XCF-only connection.....	35
TCP/IP-only connection.....	37
Mixed SNA and XCF connection.....	39
Mixed TCP/IP and XCF connection.....	42
Configuring a backup controller for disaster recovery.....	44
Chapter 3. Planning your installation.....	48
Configuring for availability.....	48
Hot standby.....	48
Starting an event writer with an event reader function.....	48
Using two message log (MLOG) data sets.....	49
Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler.....	50
Part II. Installing and migrating IBM Z Workload Scheduler.....	59
Chapter 4. Installing	60
Step 1. Loading tracker software.....	64
Step 2. Loading controller software.....	65
Step 3. Loading national language support software	66
Step 4. Using the EQQJOBS installation aid.....	66
Setting up the EQQJOBS installation aid.....	66
Creating the sample job JCL.....	68
Generating batch-job skeletons.....	79
Generating Data Store samples.....	85
Creating the Workload Automation Programming Language samples.....	89
Step 5. Adding SMF and JES exits for event tracking.....	91
SMF only.....	92
JES2 only.....	93
JES3 only.....	94
Step 6. Updating SYS1.PARMLIB.....	94
Defining subsystems.....	94
Authorizing the load-module library.....	98
Updating SMF parameters.....	98
Updating z/OS dump options.....	101
Updating the z/OS link-library definition.....	101
Updating XCF initialization options.....	102
Modifying TSO parameters.....	103
Performance considerations.....	104

Defining the DLF exit for Hiperbatch™ support.....	104
Starting the product automatically.....	104
Updating APPC options.....	104
Implementing support for data set triggering....	104
Step 7. Setting up the RACF® environment.....	106
Controlling the user ID of the address space.....	106
Controlling the user ID of submitted jobs.....	106
Controlling dynamic allocation of job libraries.....	108
Protecting data sets.....	108
Controlling access to resources.....	109
Controlling access to IBM Z Workload Scheduler resources when using the Dynamic Workload Console.....	110
Authorizing IBM Z Workload Scheduler as a job submitter.....	111
Authorizing IBM Z Workload Scheduler to issue JES commands.....	112
Authorizing IBM Z Workload Scheduler end-to-end and Dynamic Workload Console server tasks for security resource EZB.BINDDVIPARANGE.....	113
Step 8. Securing communications.....	113
Security for TCP/IP connections.....	113
Security for HTTP connections.....	115
Step 9. Allocating data sets.....	116
Allocating the VSAM data sets.....	117
Allocating Restart and Cleanup VSAM data sets.....	125
Allocating non-VSAM data sets.....	125
Allocating Data Store data sets.....	141
Allocating data sets for the Dynamic Workload Console reporting feature.....	142
Allocating the files and directories.....	142
Step 10. Creating JCL procedures for address spaces.....	144
Implementing support for started-task operations.....	145
Required data sets.....	146
Optional data sets.....	148
Step 11. Defining the initialization statements.....	150
Step 12. Setting up the ISPF environment.....	150
Setting up the CLIST library.....	150
Setting up the ISPF tables.....	151
Allocating dialog data sets to your TSO session.....	153
Invoking the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog.....	155
Step 13. Using XCF for communication.....	156
XCF groups.....	157
XCF runtime options.....	158
Initialization statements used for XCF.....	158
Step 14. Activating the network communication function.....	159
Adding NCF to the VTAM® network definitions.....	159
Adding NCF session parameters.....	160
Activating network resources.....	161
Diagnostic data set.....	162
Step 15. Using TCP/IP for communication.....	162
Initialization statements used for TCP/IP.....	162
Step 16. Activating support for the API.....	163
Defining VTAM resources.....	163
Updating APPC options.....	165
Activating support for APPC.....	166
Step 17. Activating support for the product dialog and programming interface using the server.....	166
Defining VTAM resources for the product dialog and program interface using the server.....	167
Defining VTAM® resources for the server.....	168
Updating APPC options for the server.....	169
Defining VTAM® resources in a parallel sysplex.....	169
Starting the server.....	170
Step 18. Activating support for end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities.....	170
Step 19. Activating support for Dynamic Workload Console.....	170
Dynamic Workload Console considerations	171
Activating server support for the Dynamic Workload Console.....	171
Step 20. Activating support for the Java™ utilities....	172
Step 21. Activating support for FIPS standard over SSL secured connections.....	172
Chapter 5. Verifying your installation.....	175
Verifying installation of a tracker.....	175
Ensuring that all installation tasks are complete.....	176
Checking the message log (EQQMLOG).....	176
Verifying tracking events.....	177
Performing problem determination for tracking events.....	179
Verifying installation of a controller and dialogs.....	181
Ensuring that all installation tasks are complete.....	181
Checking the message log (EQQMLOG).....	182
Checking the server message log.....	183
Checking dialog functions.....	183
Performing problem determination.....	183
Verifying installation of a standby controller.....	185
Ensuring that all installation tasks are complete.....	185
Checking the message log (EQQMLOG).....	185

Verifying installation of the Restart and Cleanup function.....	185
Checking the message log (EQQMLOG).....	186
Verifying configuration.....	187
Creating entries in the databases.....	187
Running batch jobs.....	187
Checking the message logs (EQQMLOG).....	187
Verifying workload submission.....	191
Verifying job submission.....	191
Verifying takeover by a standby controller.....	192
Chapter 6. Migrating.....	193
Planning for migration.....	193
Migration considerations and strategies.....	193
Customization considerations.....	194
Establishing the required environment.....	194
JES and SMF exits	194
Migrating to existing subsystem definitions.....	195
Migrating to new subsystem definitions.....	195
Getting the correct software parts.....	195
Installation and verification.....	196
Parallel testing.....	197
Migrating the backup controller.....	198
Changing a shared DASD tracker-to-controller connection to an NCF, XCF, or TCP/IP connection.....	198
Running on upgraded operating systems.....	200
HOME directory requirements for started tasks.....	201
Migrating actions.....	201
Migrating data sets.....	201
Migrating the production environment.....	208
Migrating the controller with the IWSZSELFUPGRADE application.....	211
Installing or upgrading the IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent automatically.....	213
Performing fallback.....	215
Part III. Installing Dynamic Workload Console and Z connector.....	217
Chapter 7. Preparing the installation.....	218
Installation paths.....	218
Downloading installation images.....	219
Prerequisites for Dynamic Workload Console.....	219
Chapter 8. Installing the Dynamic Workload Console.....	222
Installing WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base.....	222
Encrypting passwords (optional).....	223
Creating and populating the database.....	225
DB2 - Dynamic Workload Console.....	226
DB2 for z/OS - Dynamic Workload Console.....	228
Oracle - Dynamic Workload Console.....	232
MSSQL - Dynamic Workload Console.....	234
MSSQL cloud-based databases - Dynamic Workload Console.....	236
PostgreSQL - Dynamic Workload Console.....	238
Database configuration - configureDb script.....	241
Installing a Dynamic Workload Console server.....	251
Dynamic Workload Console installation - dwcinst script.....	256
Defining a z/OS engine in the Z connector	265
Defining a z/OS engine in the Dynamic Workload Console.....	267
Encrypting the connection between the Z connector and the server started task.....	269
Navigating the Dynamic Workload Console.....	269
Starting and stopping the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base.....	269
Installation log files.....	271
Chapter 9. Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console.....	272
Configuring a user registry.....	272
Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console for Single Sign-On.....	277
Chapter 10. Upgrading the Dynamic Workload Console.....	278
Chapter 11. Uninstalling the Dynamic Workload Console.....	279
Part IV. Deploying with containers	280
Part V. Deploying AI Data Advisor.....	282
Part VI. Installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (z-centric).....	284
Chapter 12. Installing the z-centric agent.....	285
Authorization roles for running the twsinst script.....	285
Encrypting passwords (optional).....	286
Optional password encryption - secure script.....	287
Installing z-centric agent using twsinst.....	290
twsinst.....	291
The twsinst log files.....	297
Enabling dynamic capabilities after installation or upgrade.....	298
Deploying with containers	299
Prerequisites.....	300
Deploying Docker compose on Linux on Z.....	301
Deploying Docker containers on IBM zCX.....	303
Deploying containers with Docker.....	306
Accessing the Docker containers.....	307
Creating a Docker image to run IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agents.....	308
Chapter 13. Upgrading the z-centric agent.....	309
Coexistence with previous versions.....	309
Upgrading notes.....	309
Upgrading using twsinst.....	309

Examples.....	309
The twsinst log files.....	310
Enabling dynamic capabilities after upgrade.....	310
Chapter 14. Uninstalling the z-centric agent.....	311
Uninstalling the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent using the twsinst script.....	311
The twsinst log files.....	313
Chapter 15. Troubleshooting and maintaining installation, upgrade, and uninstallation.....	314
Analyzing return codes for agent installation, upgrade, restore, and uninstallation.....	316
Part VII. Installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent on IBM i systems.....	320
Chapter 16. Installing the agents on IBM i systems.....	321
Agent installation parameters on IBM i systems.....	323
Example installation of an agent on IBM i systems.....	330
Chapter 17. Upgrading agents on IBM i systems.....	331
Agent upgrade parameters on IBM i systems.....	332
Example upgrade of an agent on IBM i systems.....	334
Chapter 18. Uninstalling dynamic and z-centric agents on IBM i systems.....	336
Chapter 19. The twsinst script log files on IBM i systems.....	338
Chapter 20. Analyzing return codes for agent installation, upgrade, restore, and uninstallation.....	339
Appendix A. Integrating Workload Automation with Zowe™.....	342
Using Zowe CLI to issue Workload Automation commands.....	342
Using Zowe API Mediation Layer to access the Workload Automation REST APIs.....	343
Supporting authentication through Zowe JWT token.....	345
Appendix B. Sample library (SEQQSAMP).....	347
Using the Visual Age compiler.....	353
SMP/E samples.....	354
Environment setup.....	354
RECEIVE processing.....	355
APPLY processing.....	356
ACCEPT processing.....	356
SMF exits.....	357
Exit installation.....	357
Job step termination exit.....	357
Initialization exit.....	358
Record write exits.....	359
JES exits.....	359
Exit installation.....	359
JES2 QMOD phase change exit.....	359
JES2 JCT I/O exit.....	360
JES3 OSE modification exit.....	360
JES3 input service final-user exit.....	360
RACF® samples.....	360
Class descriptor table.....	360
Router table.....	360
EQQYCBAG sample.....	361
EQQBENCR sample	361
Appendix C. Invoking the EQQEXIT macro.....	362
Invoking EQQEXIT in SMF exits.....	362
Invoking EQQEXIT in JES exits.....	362
Macro invocation syntax for EQQEXIT.....	363
Appendix D. Invoking the EQQLSENT macro.....	366
Invoking EQQLSENT to create EQQDSLST.....	366
Macro invocation syntax for EQQLSENT.....	366
Notices.....	ccclxxi
Index.....	375

List of Figures

Figure 1: A z/OS system with a TCP/IP connection.....	28
Figure 2: A z/OS system with an XCF connection.....	29
Figure 3: A z/OS system with a VTAM® connection.....	31
Figure 4: A tracker and controller configured in a single address space.....	32
Figure 5: Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through SNA.....	34
Figure 6: Controller, tracker, and Data Store connected through XCF.....	36
Figure 7: Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through TCP/IP.....	38
Figure 8: A mixed SNA and XCF connection.....	40
Figure 9: A mixed TCP/IP and XCF connection.....	43
Figure 10: Configuring trackers, primary controller, and backup controller.....	46
Figure 11: EQQJOBS0 - EQQJOBS application menu.....	67
Figure 12: EQQJOBS3 - Create sample job JCL.....	68
Figure 13: EQQJOBS4 - Create sample job JCL.....	69
Figure 14: EQQJOBS8 - Create sample job JCL.....	71
Figure 15: EQQJOBS9 - Create sample job JCL.....	72
Figure 16: EQQJOBSC - Create sample job JCL.....	73
Figure 17: EQQJOBSD - Create sample job JCL.....	75
Figure 18: EQQJOBS1 - Generate IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch-job skeletons.....	80
Figure 19: EQQJOBS2 - Generate IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch-job skeletons.....	81
Figure 20: EQQJOBSA - Generate IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch-job skeletons.....	82
Figure 21: EQQJOBS5 - Create Data Store samples.....	85
Figure 22: EQQJOBS6 - Create Data Store samples.....	86
Figure 23: EQQJOBS7 - Create Data Store samples.....	87
Figure 24: EQQJOBSE - Create WAPL samples.....	89

List of Tables

Table 1: IBM Z Workload Scheduler subtasks.....	19	Table 26: IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets.....	125
Table 2: Stages summarizing the IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation process.....	23	Table 27: Data Store VSAM data sets.....	142
Table 3: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 4.....	28	Table 28: Started task JCL samples for IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces.....	144
Table 4: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 5	30	Table 29: IBM Z Workload Scheduler required data sets...	146
Table 5: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 3.....	31	Table 30: IBM Z Workload Scheduler optional data sets...	148
Table 6: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 6.....	33	Table 31: ISPF and IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog data sets.....	153
Table 7: Example members for Figure 7.....	35	Table 32: Problem determination for missing tracking events.....	179
Table 8: Example members for Figure 8.....	36	Table 33: Data sets that you need to migrate.....	205
Table 9: Example members for Figure 9.....	39	Table 34: Data sets that IBM Z Workload Scheduler can use.....	205
Table 10: Example members for Figure 10.....	41	Table 35: Valid values for -lang and LANG parameter.....	244
Table 11: Example members for Figure 11.....	44	Table 36: Valid values for -lang and LANG parameter.....	261
Table 12: Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler.....	51	Table 37: Properties for Workflow.....	303
Table 13: IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks.....	60	Table 38: Windows operating system agent return codes.....	314
Table 14: IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks.....	62	Table 39: UNIX or Linux operating system agent return codes.....	315
Table 15: tracker libraries loaded by SMP/E.....	64	Table 40: Windows operating system agent return codes.....	317
Table 16: Controller libraries loaded by SMP/E.....	65	Table 41: UNIX or Linux operating system agent return codes.....	318
Table 17: NLS libraries loaded by SMP/E.....	66	Table 42: Valid values for -lang and LANG parameter.....	326
Table 18: Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog.....	76	Table 43: Windows operating system agent return codes.....	339
Table 19: Controller skeleton JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog.....	84	Table 44: UNIX or Linux operating system agent return codes.....	340
Table 20: Data Store samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog.....	88	Table 45: SEQQSAMP library members.....	347
Table 21: Workload Automation Programming Language samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog.....	90		
Table 22: Sample exits for IBM Z Workload Scheduler.....	92		
Table 23: Examples of MAXECSA storage values.....	96		
Table 24: IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data sets.....	117		
Table 25: Calculations of VSAM data set size.....	120		

About this publication

IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation describes the configuration planning and installation tasks of IBM Z Workload Scheduler. Installation is the task of making a program ready to do useful work. This task includes adding the installation materials to your system, initializing the program, and applying PTFs to the program. When you install a product, you are carrying out decisions you made in the planning step. Customization, an optional step, gives you the opportunity to tailor the program to the behavior or special needs required for your site.

Your workload can run on various platforms, but you control it from a central z/OS® system that runs the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller.

The term *scheduler*, when used in this publication, refers to IBM Z Workload Scheduler. The term *DB2®*, when used in this publication, refers to both DATABASE 2 and DB2 Universal Database™.

This publication complements the *Program Directory*.

The *Program Directory* is provided with the IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation media. It describes all of the installation materials and gives installation instructions specific to the product release level or feature number. If any differences exist between this publication and the *Program Directory*, use the information in the *Program Directory*.

What is new in this release

Learn what is new in this release.

For information about the new or changed functions in this release, see the section *Summary of enhancements* in the *Overview* manual.

For information about the APARs that this release addresses, see the *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Program Directory* and the Dynamic Workload Console Release Notes.

Who should read this publication

Learn the audience of this publication.

This publication is intended for system programmers who are responsible for software on a z/OS system and plan on installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

To use this publication effectively, you must be familiar with the following topics:

- Job control language (JCL)
- IBM® System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E)
- z/OS
- JES concepts and facilities
- Writing small code fragments in the Assembler H language
- Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF)
- Interactive System Productivity Facility/Program Development Facility (ISPF/PDF)

- Time-Sharing Option (TSO)
- Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM) (desirable but not essential)

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler Application Programming Interface (API) uses advanced program-to-program communication (APPC) services. Defining and configuring the conversation partners requires some knowledge of APPC services.

Accessibility

Accessibility features help users with a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use software products successfully.

With this product, you can use assistive technologies to hear and navigate the interface. You can also use the keyboard instead of the mouse to operate all features of the graphical user interface.

For detailed information, see the appendix about accessibility in the *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference*.

Technical training

Cloud & Smarter Infrastructure provides technical training.

For Cloud & Smarter Infrastructure technical training information, see: <http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/education>

Support information

IBM provides several ways for you to obtain support when you encounter a problem.

If you have a problem with your IBM software, you want to resolve it quickly. IBM provides the following ways for you to obtain the support you need:

- Searching knowledge bases: You can search across a large collection of known problems and workarounds, Technotes, and other information.
- Obtaining fixes: You can locate the latest fixes that are already available for your product.
- Contacting IBM Software Support: If you still cannot solve your problem, and you need to work with someone from IBM, you can use a variety of ways to contact IBM Software Support.

For more information about these three ways of resolving problems, see the appendix about support information in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Troubleshooting Guide*.

Part I. Planning

This part provides an overview of the IBM Workload Automation environment and describes how to plan for the installation.

You can use IBM Z Workload Scheduler to plan, control, and automate the entire production workload in your complex, not just the z/OS® batch subset. It automatically plans, controls, and monitors your production workload to maximize the throughput and optimize resource use, but lets you intervene manually when required. If you are currently using previously supported versions, follow the instructions in [Migrating on page 193](#).

To avoid security exposures, ensure that you follow all the instructions provided to secure data communication.

Chapter 1. Overview

The following topics introduce IBM Z Workload Scheduler and its implementation. For a description of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler terminology and functions, see the *IBM Workload Automation: Overview* manual.

Hardware requirements

IBM Z Workload Scheduler operates on any IBM® hardware configuration supported by z/OS. For the minimum version supported, see the [Program Directory](#).

IBM Z Workload Scheduler needs a minimum region of 8 MB below the 16 MB line; at least 32 MB must be available above the 16 MB line. The region value depends strictly on the IBM Z Workload Scheduler customization and workload. For IBM Z Workload Scheduler to work correctly, you might need to specify a region value of 64 MB, which gives you all the available space below the 16 MB line plus 64 MB above the 16 MB line.

In particular, a region value of 64 MB is strongly recommended when the IBM Z Workload Scheduler TCP/IP or APPC server is used for remote interfaces, such as the Dynamic Workload Console, PIF, and ISPF.

Consider to increase the region size specification if the server task will normally run for a long time (several weeks or months). Also make sure that the IEFUSI exit is not limiting the region size to a value less than the one coded in the JCL.

An IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog user needs a region of 3 MB below the 16 MB line; if you want to run EQQAUDIT interactively (option 9.10 of the main menu), this number then increases to 4 MB. IBM Z Workload Scheduler report programs need a region of 3 MB below the 16 MB line.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses less than 1 KB of 24-bit Common Service Area (CSA) storage. The amount of 31-bit Extended Common Service Area (ECSA) used is approximately 30 KB, plus 2 KB per active dialog user.

Software requirements and optional software

Installing and maintaining IBM Z Workload Scheduler requires one of the following products:

- z/OS® (program number 5650-ZOS). For the minimum version supported, see the [Program Directory](#).
- IBM® SMP/E for z/OS®. For the minimum version supported, see the [Program Directory](#).

IBM Z Workload Scheduler requires the functions provided by a z/OS® control program running on a z/OS® system. The Job Entry Subsystem might be either JES2 or JES3.

Controlling system

The following IBM® licensed programs are required on the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlling system:

- IBM Z Workload Scheduler Version 10.2 SPE (Revised July 2025) (program number 5698-T09). Both the base product (the tracker) and the controller features are required.

Controlled z/OS® systems

The following IBM® licensed program is required on each z/OS system that is controlled by IBM Z Workload Scheduler:

- IBM Z Workload Scheduler (program number 5698-T09). Only the base product (tracker) is required.

Optional software

The following optional IBM Z Workload Scheduler functions require specific IBM programs:

- Tracking resource availability requires the Resource Object Data Manager (RODM) in IBM Z NetView.
- Graphical view of jobs and their dependencies using ISPF panels requires GDDM®.
- For TCP/IP communications, it is required z/OS® Communications Server Version 2.5, or later.
- IBM Z NetView® is required to enable IBM Z Workload Scheduler to schedule generic alerts as defined by that NetView® release and to specify an alert receiver ID other than the default receiver.
- User-authority-support functions require z/OS® Security Server RACF® Version 2.5, or later .
- z/OS Version 2.5 DFSMS™ with Hierarchical Storage Management component is required for the catalog management function to recall migrated data sets.
- If you are using Db2 for z/OS, the mirroring feature for the Orchestration Monitor requires that you have:
 - Installed IBM Db2 for z/OS V13.1.503, or later.
 - Installed IBM Db2 Accessories Suite for z/OS for Db2 13 for z/OS V04.02.00, or later.
 - Defined a Workload Manager (WLM) policy for the required Db2 for z/OS environment and that a Db2 procedure for the WLM Application environment is up and running.
- The Dynamic Workload Console reporting feature requires:
 - IBM Db2 for z/OS Version 12, or later.
 - IBM® Semeru Runtime Certified Edition (formerly known as IBM® 64-bit SDK for z/OS®, Java Technology Edition) V17, or later.
- The IBM Z Workload Scheduler control Language tool, Workload Automation Programming Language, and Dynamic Workload Console reporting feature require either the IBM Compiler Library for REXX/370 or the IBM Alternate Library for REXX™ on zSeries®, which can be downloaded from <https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/node/572469>.

Related software

These IBM® licensed programs can be used with IBM Z Workload Scheduler to provide comprehensive, integrated DP operations:

- IBM Z NetView® Version 6.2, or later.
- Report Management and Distribution System (RMDS) Version 2.3, or later.
- IBM Z Decision Support for z/OS® Version 1.9, or later.
- System Automation for z/OS® Version 4.2, or later.
- IBM Z Monitoring V1.1, or later
- IBM Tivoli Output Manager Version 3.1, or later.

Parts and their relationships

IBM Z Workload Scheduler consists of a base product, the *agent*, and a number of features. You need the base product to track your workload. Hereafter, you see the agent referred to as the *tracker* and the engine referred to as the *Z controller*. One z/OS system in your complex is designated the *controlling* system and runs the *Z controller* feature. Only one controller feature is required, even when you want to start standby controllers on other z/OS systems in a sysplex.

You can also control the workload in other operating environments (UNIX, Windows, IBM i) using the end-to-end scheduling functions provided in IBM Z Workload Scheduler and IBM Workload Scheduler.

Additionally, national language features let you see the IBM Z Workload Scheduler ISPF dialogs in the language of your choice. These languages are available:

- English
- German
- Japanese
- Korean
- Spanish

The rest of this section describes the tracker and Z controller, their relationship, and how you can configure them.

Tracker

A tracker is required for every z/OS system in an IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration. The tracker handles the submission of jobs and tasks on the system, and keeps track of the status of the workload. In conjunction with standard interfaces to JES and SMF, IBM Z Workload Scheduler records the relevant information about the workload by generating *event records*. The event records are captured and stored by the tracker. The tracker then communicates event information to the Z controller for further processing. The log where events are written by the tracker is called the *event data set*.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces are defined as z/OS subsystems. The routines that run during subsystem initialization establish services that enable event information to be generated and stored in common storage (ECSA) even when an address space is not active.

You can optionally install a Data Store for each JES spool in a system. In a simple JES configuration this would mean one Data Store for each tracker. In systems with shared spools (for example, JES2 MAS), there is a Data Store for each spool, and there are fewer Data Stores than trackers.

Controller

The Z controller is the focal point of your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration. It contains the controlling functions, ISPF dialogs, databases, and plans. The system that the Z controller is started on is called the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlling system. IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems that communicate with the controlling system are called controlled or tracker systems. You need to install at least one Z controller for your production systems. This controls the entire IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration, the OPCplex, both local and remote.

You can use the Z controller to provide a single, consistent, control point for submitting and tracking the workload on any operating environment. IBM Z Workload Scheduler provides distributed agents and open interfaces you use to integrate the planning, scheduling, and control of work units such as online transactions, file transfers, or batch processing in any operating environment that can communicate with z/OS®.

Server

IBM Z Workload Scheduler provides a server you use to access the controller remotely from ISPF dialogs, PIFs, and the Dynamic Workload Console interface. Connections with the server run through Advanced Program-to-Program Communications (APPC) sessions or Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP). The server runs in its own address space; however, it is optional if you do not access the controller remotely.

Using a Started Task JCL you start and stop one or more servers either individually, using the Start and Stop operator commands, or automatically with the controller, using a keyword in the OPCOPTS statement. A server must start on the same z/OS image as its controller.

The PIF dialog connection to the controller, whether via server or subsystem interface, is allowed only when the code is at the same level on both sides of the interface.

Graphical user interfaces

A graphical user interface is packaged with the product. You can use it in addition to, or in place of, ISPF:

Dynamic Workload Console

The Web-based user interface for the entire IBM Workload Automation suite of products. It is the strategic user interface for the suite and includes support for the latest functions and enhancements featured in IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

The console gets access to the controller by way of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector component, which is installed by default with the Dynamic Workload Console and is connected to IBM Z Workload Scheduler by TCP/IP. For detailed information about how you install the Z connector with the Dynamic Workload Console, see [Installing the Dynamic Workload Console on page 222](#).

The Dynamic Workload Console and IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector are components that you install and run on distributed platforms, Windows™, UNIX™, Linux™, and z/OS.

One Z connector can be used to communicate with multiple Z controllers, and can serve multiple machines running Dynamic Workload Console. The graphical user interface and Z connector are installed in the installation directory of the same computer.

For detailed information about the Dynamic Workload Console, see the *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

The following additional publications are specific to the Dynamic Workload Console:

[Dynamic Workload Console download document](#)

Provides you with detailed information about downloading the product installation images.

Dynamic Workload Console Detailed System Requirements

A dynamically maintained document that provides detailed information about the supported platforms, hardware and software prerequisites, and supported client browsers.

Dynamic Workload Console Release Notes

A dynamically maintained document that contains the following topics:

- What is new in the release
- Interoperability tables
- Software limitations and workarounds
- Installation limitations and workarounds
- Internationalization Notes
- Documentation updates
- APARS fixed in the release

Data Store

Data Store is a separate address space. Its function is to collect structured (steps and data sets) and, optionally, unstructured (SYSOUT) information for all submitted jobs.

Data Store is required to use the following Restart and Cleanup functions:

- Restart at the job or step level
- Data set clean up
- JOBLLOG retrieval

The controller can be connected to Data Store using XCF, SNA, or TCP/IP.

Output collector

The function of this started task is to collect the logs of jobs and dynamic jobs run on IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agents (z-centric) and to send them to the JES spool, where they can be taken and archived by any integrated output management product into a dedicated repository.

Output collector is sent an event (in the form of a record in an event data set) by the controller every time a job or a dynamic job completes or terminates in the z-centric environment. The event contains the information necessary for the output collector to identify the job and the agent that ran it. The output collector then retrieves the job log from the agent (or the dynamic domain manager if the job is dynamic) and copies it to a SYSOUT in JES to make it available to an output management product.

In addition, Output collector attaches a header at the top of the job log with information that classifies the output (occurrence name, occurrence IA, job name, workstation name, operation number, start time, end time) and information about the run (process ID, return code, duration, status, hostname).

Activation of this feature is optional. If you activate it, it automatically collects the logs of all jobs run in the z-centric environment, regardless of whether they complete successfully or terminate in error. If you do not activate it, you can still configure your system to either request logs manually or to receive those of jobs ended in error.

In a sysplex configuration, the Output collector started task must reside in the same image where the controller is.

For a detailed description of the Output collector, see *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.

Configurations

You can configure IBM Z Workload Scheduler to control virtually any combination of operating environments. IBM Z Workload Scheduler can automatically schedule, submit, and track batch jobs, started tasks, and write-to-operator (WTO) messages. You can also use it to coordinate manual activities in your production workload.

Your configuration can include:

- A controlling system
- Controlled systems:
 - Local and remote controlled z/OS systems, including a parallel sysplex.
 - Standby Z controller systems.
 - Previous IBM Z Workload Scheduler releases.
 - Controlled systems running on distributed agents.
 - Other operating environments that do not support the distributed agents.

For an explanation of the connections between IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems and some examples of configurations, see [Planning your configuration on page 24](#)

Controlling system

A controlling system requires both a tracker and Z controller. If you install only one system, this is the controlling system. The controlling system can communicate with controlled z/OS systems using the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP), cross-system coupling facility (XCF), and network communication function (NCF).

Controlled systems

A controlled z/OS system requires a tracker. Communication with the controlling system is through TCP/IP, XCF, or NCF. The tracker writes event records to an event data set, and transfers the records to the controlling system if connected using TCP/IP, XCF, or NCF. NCF uses ACF/VTAM to link IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems.

If you use XCF for communication, you can include a *standby Z controller* on one or more controlled systems. A standby Z controller is started in its own address space. It can take over the functions of the Z controller if z/OS fails or if the Z controller itself fails. It cannot perform the functions of a tracker while in standby mode.

The Z controller also controls the workload in the end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities environment.

For detailed information about how to control other operating environments, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning*.

Integration with IBM Workload Scheduler

Integration with IBM Workload Scheduler is provided by activating the end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities feature. This feature is designed to let you schedule and control workload from the mainframe to distributed systems through z-centric agents, in a very simple architecture of the end-to-end scheduling framework. IBM Z Workload Scheduler becomes the single point of control, providing you with all the mainframe capabilities to manage distributed workload. Communication between the z-centric agents and IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller is direct, through the HTTP or HTTPS protocol. This feature enables dynamic scheduling of jobs (by connecting a dynamic domain manager to the controller) as well as scheduling of job types with advanced options (file transfer, database, web services, J2EE, and more).

For detailed information about the z-centric end-to-end scheduling environment, see *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.

Subtasks

An IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space (subsystem) consists of many z/OS subtasks. Some of these subtasks are always attached when the subsystem is started, others are conditionally attached according to initialization parameters specified for the scheduler options (OPCOPTS) statement in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler parameter library.

When a Z controller is started in standby mode, only the IBM Z Workload Scheduler main task (EQQMAJOR) is started. The subtasks that comprise an active Z controller are attached when a takeover is performed.

[Table 1: IBM Z Workload Scheduler subtasks on page 19](#) describes the subtasks.

Table 1. IBM Z Workload Scheduler subtasks

Subtask ID	Component code	Description	Activated by	Function
APPC	PP	APPC functions	OPCOPTS APPCTASK(YES)	Starts APPC support
AR	AR	Automatic recovery	OPCOPTS RECOVERY(YES)	Manages failing operations
CPH	CPH	Critical path handler	Always activated	Updates the critical job table
DBF	DF	DB Filler	FEDERATOR parameter of MIRROPTS	Replicates CP data to the database referenced by the Federator
DRT	DX	Data router	Always activated	Routes data to other subtasks or IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystems
EMGR	EM	Event manager	OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES)	Processes job-tracking events

Table 1. IBM Z Workload Scheduler subtasks (continued)

Subtask ID	Component code	Description	Activated by	Function
ERDR	ER	Event reader	OPCOPTS ERDRTASK(<i>n</i>)	Reads events from an event data set
EWTR	EW	Event writer	OPCOPTS EWTRTASK(YES)	Writes events to an event data set
EXA	EX	External router	OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES)	Calls EQQUX009 to route submit requests to a user-defined destination ID
FL	FL	Fetch joblog	OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES)	Retrieves JOBLOG information
GEN	GS	General service	OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES)	Processes IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog requests
HTC	HTC	HTTP client	HTTP parameter of ROUTOPTS	Manages communications with z-centric agents through the HTTP or HTTPS protocol
HTS	HTS	HTTP client	HTTP parameter of ROUTOPTS	Listens for inbound requests from the z-centric agent
ID	ID	TCP/IP Data Store	TCPDEST parameter of FLOPTS	Manages communications with TCP/IP-connected Data Stores
IP	IP	TCP/IP tracker	TCPIP parameter of ROUTOPTS	Manages communications with TCP/IP-connected standard trackers
JCC	JC	Job completion checker	OPCOPTS JCCTASK(YES)	Scans SYSOUT data sets
JLA	JL	JT and DB logs archiver	OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES)	Copies JT and DB logs to the archive data set (EQQJTARC and EQQDBARC, respectively)
NMM	NM	Normal mode manager	OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES)	Maintains the current plan
PSU	PS	Pre-SUBMIT tailoring	OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES)	Tailors the JCL before submitting it by adding the EQQCLEAN pre-step
RODM	RM	RODM support	OPCOPTS RODMTASK (YES)	Starts RODM support
SUB	SU	Submit task	Always activated	Initiates work (job submit, job release, and WTO and STC operations)

Table 1. IBM Z Workload Scheduler subtasks (continued)

Subtask ID	Component code	Description	Activated by	Function
VTAM®	CB	Network communication function (NCF)	OPCOPTS NCFTASK(YES)	Transmits and receives IBM Z Workload Scheduler data through a VTAM® link
WSA	WA	Workstation analyzer	OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES)	Schedules work for processing



Note: The subtask ID is the same identifier used to control the subtask using the z/OS MODIFY command.

Relationship between IBM Z Workload Scheduler and the z/OS system

IBM Z Workload Scheduler is a z/OS subsystem, initialized during IPL. Routines run during subsystem initialization establish basic services, such as an event queue in ECSA. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses standard interfaces to SMF and JES to gather relevant information about the workload on the z/OS system.

The functions of the Z controller are available when an address space has been created for it, and the required subtasks have been successfully initialized. The Z controller can run either as a started task or as a batch address space. Normally, the address space is started during the IPL process, that is by a z/OS start command in `COMMNDnn`, or by console automation. Alternatively, a z/OS operator can issue a `START` command from the operator console. The z/OS operator can also stop or modify the address space, using the `STOP` and `MODIFY` commands.

A TSO user accesses IBM Z Workload Scheduler services using the dialogs. A dialog is a sequence of ISPF panels. Many of the functions supported by the dialogs pass service requests from the TSO user's address space to the Z controller address space for processing.

Before performing any function you request, the dialog function passes the request to the system authorization facility (SAF) router. If RACF®, or a functionally equivalent security product, is installed and active on the z/OS system, the SAF router passes the verification request to RACF® to perform this authority check.

A typical dialog service request is to access one or more records in VSAM files that are maintained and controlled by IBM Z Workload Scheduler. Such a request is passed to IBM Z Workload Scheduler through the z/OS subsystem interface (SSI). This interface invokes a routine that resides in common storage. This routine must be invoked in APF-authorized mode.

Consider that all long term plan (LTP) and CP batch planning jobs have to be excluded from SMARTBATCH DA (Data Accelerator) processing. When the SMARTBATCH DATA ACCELERATOR is used with the scheduler LTP and CP batch planning jobs, the normal I/O to EQQCKPT is delayed until END OF JOB (or at least END OF JOBSTEP). This interferes with the normal exchange of data between the batch job and the controller started task so that when the batch job signals the controller to check the EQQCKPT to determine whether a new current plan has been created, the required updates to the CKPT have not yet been made. This causes the controller to conclude that no NCP has been created, and no turnover processing is done. As a result, even if the plan jobs run successfully, the NCP is not taken into production by the controller unless a `CURRPLAN(NEW)` restart is performed.

The Data Store uses the MVS/JES SAPI functions to access sysout data sets, allowing concurrent access to multiple records from a single address space.

Batch optimizer utilities, such as BMC Batch Optimizer Data Optimizer and Mainview Batch Optimizer, prevent correct communication between the scheduler's controller and CP/LTP batch planning jobs. The scheduler's logic depends on an exchange of enqueues and real-time updates of several sequential data sets to pass information back and forth between the controller's STC and the CP/LTP batch planning jobs. These optimizers hold I/O from the batch jobs until END OF STEP or END OF JOB, then preventing the required communication from taking place. When such utilities are allowed to "manage" I/O for the scheduler's CP or LTP batch planning jobs, communication between the jobs and the controller is disrupted. This causes numerous problems that are hard to diagnose. Most commonly, the CURRENT PLAN EXTEND or REPLAN jobs will run to normal completion, and an NCP data set will be successfully created, but the controller will fail to automatically take the new plan into production until it is forced to do so via a CURRPLAN(NEW) restart of the CONTROLLER. Use of BATCHPIPES with these batch planning jobs will result in the same sorts of problems.

Using the Program Directory

The *Program Directory* contains instructions for downloading the product and might include technical information that is more recent than the information provided in this publication.

In addition, the *Program Directory* describes the program temporary fix (PTF) level of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler licensed program that you receive.

Before you start installing the product, check the *preventive service planning* (PSP) bucket for recommendations added by the service organizations after your *Program Directory* was produced. The PSP bucket includes a Service Recommendations section that includes high impact or pervasive (HIPER) APARs. Ensure the corresponding PTFs are installed before you start an IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem.

Sample library

SEQQSAMP is a library included on the distribution CD containing samples of exits, application programs, and the job control language (JCL). You can use the samples for specific installation tasks. [Sample library \(SEQQSAMP\) on page 347](#) describes the members of the SEQQSAMP library. Familiarize yourself with the contents of the SEQQSAMP library before you begin installation.

The installation process

[Table 2: Stages summarizing the IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation process on page 23](#) shows the various stages to install IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

After you have installed the product, you might want to include more functions. For details, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning*.

Table 2. Stages summarizing the IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation process

Stage	Description	For more information ...
1	Plan your configuration. You might create a diagram of your own IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration to refer to during the installation process.	Planning your configuration on page 24 gives examples of common configurations.
2	Plan your product installation.	Planning your installation on page 48 describes considerations for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler and provides a checklist for the installation tasks.
3	Install the product.	Installing on page 60 describes the installation tasks in detail.
4	Verify your installation.	Verifying your installation on page 175 describes how you can verify that IBM Z Workload Scheduler is correctly installed.

Chapter 2. Planning your configuration

When planning the configuration for your installation, consider the areas explained in the following topics, which describe the connections between the IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems and provide some examples of basic configurations.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler must recognize when events occur, for example when a started task or job begins to run or terminates, or when a data set has been printed. It uses JES and SMF exits to obtain this information from z/OS and to create *event records* describing the changes in the system.

The event records are stored in a sequential file called the *event data set* identified by the EQQEVDS DD name.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler also uses the event data set to write checkpoint information for submission requests. The first record of the data set is used for this purpose, so the EQQEVDS DD name must be specified for all IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces. The same data set can be used for both submit checkpointing and the event-writer subtask.

Trackers

A tracker must be installed on every z/OS system that you want IBM Z Workload Scheduler to control. The tracker on each system writes events to the event data set. A subtask of the tracker, called the *event writer* performs this function. For the current plan to be updated, the event information must be communicated to, and processed by, the Z controller. The events are routed to the Z controller through the connection that links the tracker and the Z controller.

Initialization statements

IBM Z Workload Scheduler initialization statements specified in the parameter library describe, among other things, the configuration of your installation.

When a tracker is connected with the Z controller (that is, through an XCF, NCF, or TCP/IP connection) or the tracker and Z controller are running in the same address space, the event writer can be used to forward events directly to the Z controller.

When an event writer is started with the EWSEQNO keyword on the EWTROPTS initialization statement, the event writer logs event information on the event data set and adds the event concurrently to the data router queue. The event is *not* read back from the event data set each time, as it is by an event reader subtask. In this configuration, events are only read back from DASD if they need to be resent to the Z controller during restart processing (for example when the communication link to the Z controller becomes active after an outage).

For more information about the ERDROPTS and EWTROPTS initialization statements, see *Customization and Tuning*. For detailed information about allocating event data sets, see also [Event data sets \(EQQEVDS, EQQEVDnn, and EQQHTTP0\) on page 132](#).

Communication

The data router subtask is responsible for communicating the event to the Z controller event manager subtask, either by XCF, NCF, TCP/IP or by adding directly to the queue when the tracker and Z controller are started in the same address space. This eliminates the need for a separate event-reader function, saves time, and saves I/O operations.

The EWSEQNO value is not used to build a DD name, as happens with the event reader subtask. The event writer uses the EQQEVDS DD name to identify the event data set.

If a connection is lost between a tracker and the Z controller, the event writer continues to record events. When the connection is restored, the event data set is processed from the last event received by the Z controller before the outage.



Note: Controllers scheduling work (for a given z/OS image) must have unique subsystem names.

How to connect IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems

IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems can be connected by using any of the following methods.

- TCP/IP link
- XCF communication links
- VTAM® link

The controller uses any of these methods to transmit work to a tracker system. The tracker system uses the same connection to transmit events back to the Z controller.

Distributed agents communicate with the controller by using TCP/IP services.

TCP/IP

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) to connect a tracker to the controller using a TCP/IP link.

The Z controller transmits work to the tracker through TCP/IP, and the same connection is used to pass back event information. The scheduler uses TCP/IP also to connect a distributed agent to the server. The TCP/IP connection between the server and the clients is established by the server.

z/OS cross-system coupling facility

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the z/OS cross-system coupling facility (XCF) to connect IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems using XCF communication links.

When one or more trackers are connected to the Z controller through XCF communication links, the IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems form an XCF group. The systems use XCF group, monitoring, and signaling services to communicate. The Z controller submits work and control information to the trackers using XCF signaling services. The trackers use XCF services to transmit events back to the Z controller.

XCF connections let IBM Z Workload Scheduler support a hot standby Z controller and automatic-workload-restart functions.

VTAM® (network communication function)

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the network communication function (NCF) to connect a tracker to the Z controller using a VTAM link. The Z controller transmits work to the tracker through NCF, and the same connection is used to pass back event information.

Workstation destination

The various physical and logical locations where tasks are performed at your installation are represented in IBM Z Workload Scheduler by workstations. Each workstation groups related activities. Every operation in the application description database and the current plan is associated with a workstation. You define workstations in the workstation description database.

The destination field is one attribute of a workstation description. It identifies the system in your configuration to which the operations scheduled for this workstation should be submitted. The field can contain an XCF member name, a VTAM LU name, an IP address or host name and port, or a user-defined destination.

If the destination field is not blank, the same name must also be present in the SNA, TCPIP, USER, XCF, HTTP, or HTTPS keyword of the ROUTOPTS statement, depending on the connection method.

The destination field can also remain blank. A blank destination field means that operations at this workstation will be submitted by the Z controller.

The operation-initiation exit, EQQUX009, manages the routing of the workload to user-defined destinations.

Workload restart

You can use workload restart (WLR) to restart and reroute work in your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration. WLR tracks the status of workstations. It can be invoked when a workstation becomes inactive; that is, when the Z controller cannot communicate with the tracker at the destination that the workstation represents.

If an operation is *restartable*, it can be started again after a workstation failure. If an operation is *reroutable*, it can be moved to an alternative workstation for running when its workstation is no longer active.

For WLR purposes, the status of a workstation can be either active or inactive. An inactive workstation has a status of offline, failed, or unknown. The actions that WLR performs depend on the new status of the workstation and on the values you specify on the WSFAILURE and WSOFFLINE keywords of the JTOPTS initialization statement. The inactive status that a workstation can have depends on the type of connection between the tracker and the Z controller. The connection type and the new workstation status determine whether workload restart actions can be invoked automatically. You can use the full capabilities of WLR on systems that are connected by XCF.



Note: JES also has restart functions, which can be used when the system is restarted after a failure. JES can restart jobs that were active when the failure occurred. To prevent jobs from being started twice, ensure that both JES and WLR do not perform restart actions for jobs on the failing system.

JES considerations

The JES type and configuration in your installation has implications on your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration.

Consider the following situations in a JES type configuration:

1. On systems where JES2 is installed, an IBM Z Workload Scheduler Tracker must be installed on each system in the JES2 Multi-Access Spool (MAS) complex.
2. If you do not install IBM Z Workload Scheduler on all systems in a JES3 complex, ensure that:
 - A tracker is installed on the global.
 - Jobs are submitted, whether by IBM Z Workload Scheduler or outside IBM Z Workload Scheduler, to a system where a tracker is installed. Use the `//*MAIN SYSTEM=sysid` statement in the JCL, or start job classes used by these jobs only on those systems where a tracker is installed.
 - If you track print operations, output is printed only on those systems where a tracker is installed.

Basic configuration examples

The examples in this topic show the configurations using the various connection methods. They are based on a single-image z/OS environment.

The examples in this topic show:

- All IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces as Version 2 subsystems.
- Sample initialization statements that you can use to create the configuration. Only initialization statements that specifically relate to the configuration are included.
- The IBM Z Workload Scheduler components that are required, the flow of automatic work submission, and event collection in various system combinations.

TCP/IP connected

[Figure 1: A z/OS system with a TCP/IP connection on page 28](#) shows two IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces with a TCP/IP connection on a z/OS system.

You represent this system to the scheduler by defining a computer workstation with a destination field that specifies the destination name of the tracker. The Z controller transmits JCL, release commands, WTO messages, and cleanup requests across the TCP/IP link. The tracker receives data across the TCP/IP link and performs the following actions:

- Submits JCL for batch jobs to the JES internal reader
- Writes the JCL for started tasks into the EQQSTC data set and issues `START procname` z/OS commands
- Issues JES release commands for jobs in HOLD status
- Submits the cleanup job.

The event-tracking routines create event records to describe activities that occur on the system. These records are added to the tracker event writer queue in ECSA. The tracker processes the queue, transmits the records to the Z controller across the TCP/IP link, and writes the events into the event data set. The IP task in the Z controller receives the event records, and the current plan is updated.



Note: You must specify EQQEVDS for a controller, even if an event writer is not started in the controller address space. The EQQEVDS data set is used for submit checkpointing. It can be the same data set that is used by an event-writer function. Use a unique EQQEVDS for each address space of the scheduler.

Example

Figure 1. A z/OS system with a TCP/IP connection

Production System

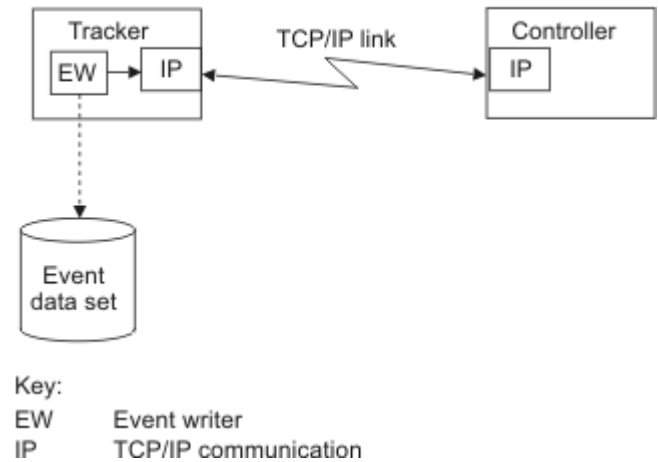


Table 3: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 4 on page 28 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 1: A z/OS system with a TCP/IP connection on page 28.

Table 3. Example EQQPARM members for Figure 4

Members for the Z controller	Members for the tracker
OPCECNT <pre>OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES) ERDRTASK(0) ROUTOPTS TCPIP(DEST1:'1.111.111.111'/4444) TCPOPTS TCPIPJOBNAME('TCPIP') HOSTNAME('9.12.134.1') TRKPORTNUMBER(8888)</pre>	TRKA <pre>OPCOPTS OPCHOST(NO) ERDRTASK(0) EWRTTASK(YES) TRROPTS HOSTCON(TCP) TCPHOSTNAME('9.12.134.1') TCPPORTNUMBER(8888) TCPOPTS TCPIPJOBNAME('TCPIP') HOSTNAME('1.111.111.111') TRKPORTNUMBER(4444)</pre> STDEWTREWTROPTS EWSEQNO(01)



Note: In this example, the name of the destination is DEST1. The destination name is defined also in the destination field of the workstation.

XCF connected

Figure 2: A z/OS system with an XCF connection on page 29 shows two IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces with an XCF connection in a z/OS monoplex.

You represent this system to IBM Z Workload Scheduler by defining a computer workstation with a destination field that specifies the XCF member name of the tracker. The Z controller uses XCF services to transport JCL, release commands, WTO messages, and cleanup requests to members in the sysplex. The tracker receives data from XCF and performs the following actions:

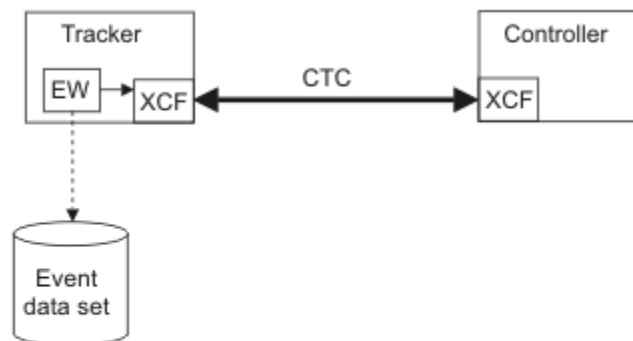
- Submits JCL for batch jobs to the JES internal reader
- Writes the JCL for started tasks into the EQQSTC data set and issues `START procname z/OS®` commands
- Issues JES release commands for jobs in HOLD status
- Submits the cleanup job.

The event-tracking routines create event records to describe activities that occur on the system. These records are added to the tracker event writer queue in ECSA. The tracker processes the queue, transports the records to the Z controller across the XCF link, and writes the events into the event data set. The data router subtask in the Z controller receives the event records from XCF, and the current plan is updated.

Example

Figure 2. A z/OS system with an XCF connection

Production System



Key:

EW	Event writer
XCF	Cross-system coupling facility
—	Communication between tasks
==	Channel to channel physical link
-.-	Access to a data set

Table 4: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 5 on page 30 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 2: A z/OS system with an XCF connection on page 29.

Table 4. Example EQQPARM members for Figure 5

Members for the Z controller	Members for the tracker
OPCECNT OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES) ERDRTASK(0) ROUTOPTS XCF(OPCTRK) XCFOPTS MEMBER(OPCCNT) GROUP(PLEXSYSA)	TRKA OPCOPTS OPCHOST(NO) ERDRTASK(0) EWTRTASK(YES) EWTRPARM(STDEWTR) TRROPTS HOSTCON(XCF) XCFOPTS MEMBER(OPCTRK) GROUP(PLEXSYSA) STDEWTR EWTROPTS EWSEQNO(01)



Note: In this example, the name of the monoplex is PLEXSYSA. The members in that group are:

OPCCNT

The controller

OPCTRK

The tracker

The tracker member name is defined in the destination field of the workstation.

VTAM® connected

Figure 3: A z/OS system with a VTAM connection on page 31 shows two IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces with a VTAM® connection on a z/OS system.

You represent this system to IBM Z Workload Scheduler by defining a computer workstation with a destination field that specifies the LU name of the tracker. The Z controller transmits JCL, release commands, WTO messages, and cleanup requests across the LU-LU link using the NCF component. The tracker receives data across the VTAM® link and performs the following actions:

- Submits JCL for batch jobs to the JES internal reader
- Writes the JCL for started tasks into the EQQSTC data set and issues `START procname` z/OS commands
- Issues JES release commands for jobs in HOLD status
- Submits the cleanup job.

The event-tracking routines create event records to describe activities that occur on the system. These records are added to the tracker event writer queue in ECSA. The tracker processes the queue, transmits the records to the Z controller across the VTAM® link, and writes the events into the event data set. The VTAM® subtask in the Z controller receives the event records, and the current plan is updated.



Note: You must specify EQQEVDS for a controller, even if an event writer is not started in the controller address space. The EQQEVDS data set is used for submit checkpointing. It can be the same data set that is used by an event-writer function. Use a unique EQQEVDS for each address space of the scheduler.

Example

Figure 3. A z/OS system with a VTAM® connection

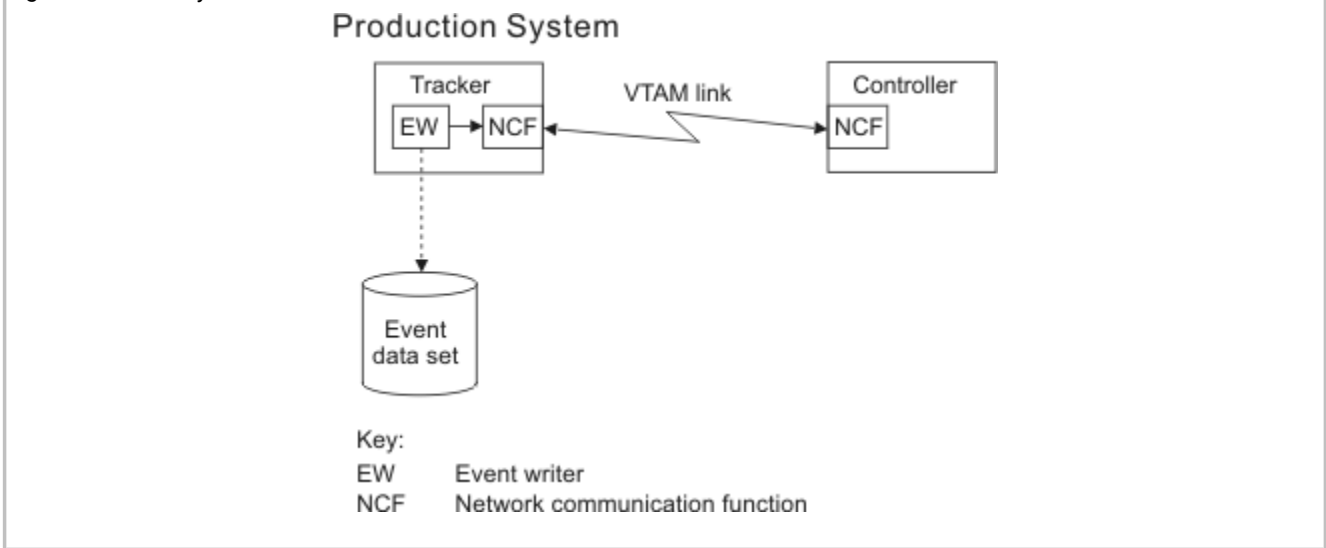


Table 5: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 3 on page 31 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 3: A z/OS system with a VTAM connection on page 31.

Table 5. Example EQQPARM members for Figure 3

Members for the Z controller	Members for the tracker
OPCECNT	TRKA
OPCOPTS OPCHOST(YES) ERDRTASK(0) NCFTASK(YES) NCFAPPL(CNTSYS) ROUTOPTS SNA(TRKSYS)	OPCOPTS OPCHOST(NO) ERDRTASK(0) EWTRTASK(YES) EWTRPARM(STDEWTR) NCFTASK(YES) NCFAPPL(TRKSYS) TRROPTS HOSTCON(SNA) SNAHOST(CNTSYS)
	STDEWTR

Table 5. Example EQQPARM members for Figure 3 (continued)

Members for the Z controller	Members for the tracker
EWTROPTS EWSEQNO(01)	



Note: In this example, the LU name of the Z controller is CNTSYS and the tracker uses TRKSYS. The tracker LU is defined in the destination field of the workstation.

Tracker and controller in a single address space

Figure 4: A tracker and controller configured in a single address space on page 32 shows one IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space performing the function of both the tracker and the Z controller. To optimize availability, do not use this configuration in your production environment. However, at least one of your IBM Z Workload Scheduler test environments will probably use this configuration.

You represent this system to IBM Z Workload Scheduler by defining a computer workstation with a blank destination field. The submit subtask performs the following actions:

- Submits JCL for batch jobs to the JES internal reader
- Writes the JCL for started tasks into the EQQSTC data set and issues `START procname` z/OS commands
- Issues JES release commands for jobs in HOLD status

The event-tracking routines create event records to describe activities that occur on the system. These records are added to the subsystem event writer queue in ECSA. The event writer subtask processes the events and:

- Adds the event to the data router queue, and the current plan is updated
- Writes the events into the event data set.

Example

Figure 4. A tracker and controller configured in a single address space



Table 6: Example EQQPARM members for Figure 6 on page 33 shows initialization statements to create the configuration in Figure 4: A tracker and controller configured in a single address space on page 32.

Table 6. Example EQQPARM members for Figure 6

EQQPARM members for the address space			
OPCECNT		STDEWTR	
OPCOPTS	OPCHOST(YES) ERDRTASK(0) EWTRTASK(YES) EWTRPARM(STDEWTR)	EWTROPTS	EWSEQNO(01)

Basic data store configuration examples

You need to install a Data Store for each spool tracked by IBM Z Workload Scheduler in the configuration.

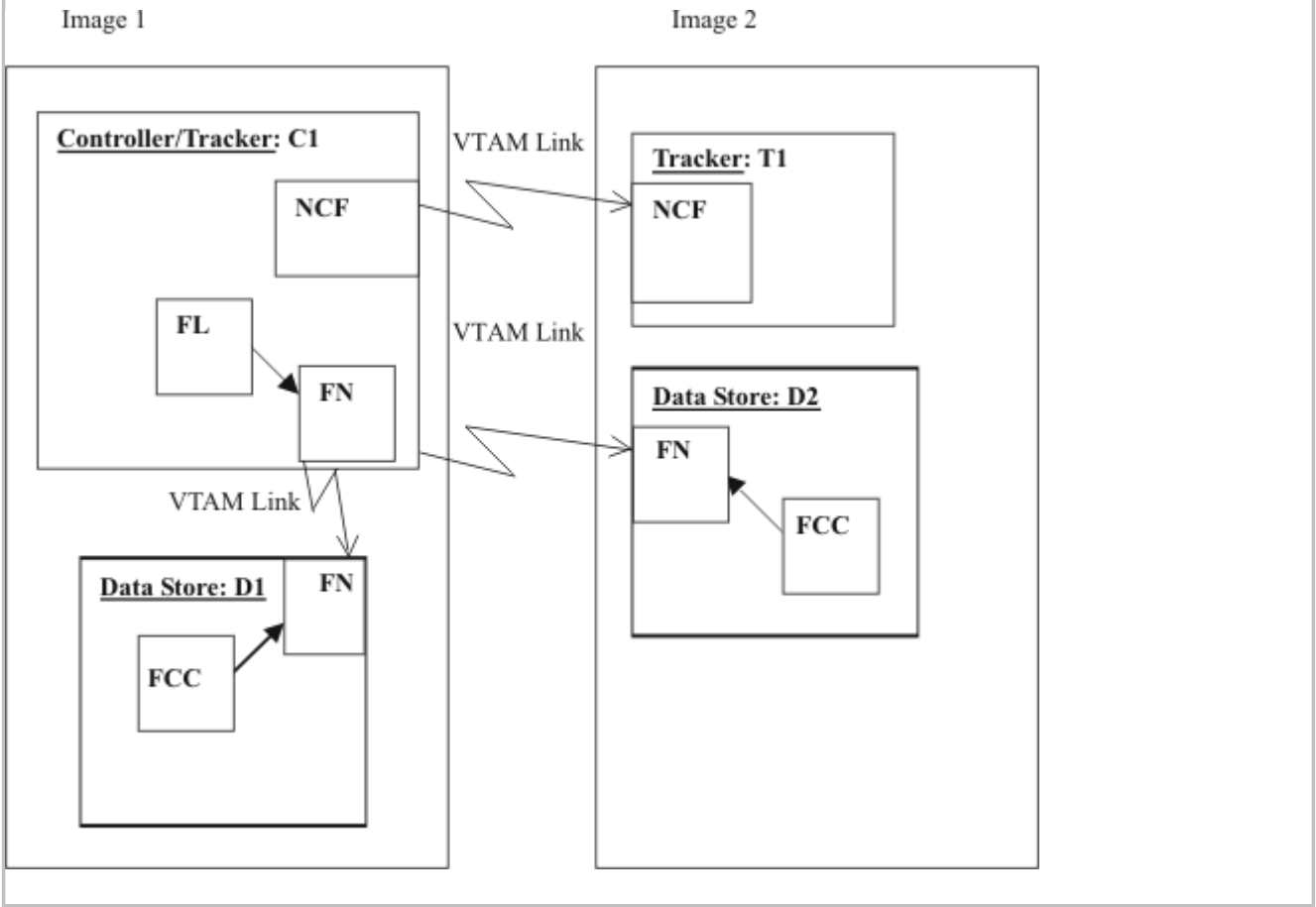
If you have a shared spool, for example, JES2 MAS, you can have a single Data Store for multiple trackers. Three kinds of controller-Data Store connections are supported: SNA, XCF, and TCP/IP. The Data Store type must be defined either as SNA, XCF, or TCP/IP. The same controller can connect, at the same time, with more than one Data Store, using a different connection type for each Data Store. Note that you need separate LU values: one for the Data Stores and one for the trackers. All Data Stores work on a reserved destination which must always have the same name.

SNA-only connection

Figure 5: Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through SNA on page 34 shows a JES2 with two images. In Image 1, the controller and tracker are in the same address space. Image 2 contains a tracker. The spool is not shared. Two Data Stores are required, one for Image 1 and one for Image 2. All connections are VTAM links.

Example

Figure 5. Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through SNA



Key:

- FCC**
Data Store Communication task
- FL**
Fetch Job Log Task
- FN**
Data Store SNA handler task
- NCF**
Network Communication function

Table 7: Example members for Figure 7 on page 35 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 5: Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through SNA on page 34.

Table 7. Example members for Figure 7

Controller member	Tracker member
C1 OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES) NCFTASK(YES) NCFAPPL(LU00C1T) FLOPTS CTLLUNAM(LU00C1D) SNADEST(*****.LU000D1, LU000T1.LU000D2) ROUTOPTS SNA(LU000T1)	T1 OPCOPTS NCFTASK(YES) NCFAPPL (LU000T1) TRROPTS HOSTCON(SNA) SNAHOST(LU00C1T)
D1 DSTOPTS DSTLUNAM(LU000D1) CTLLUNAM(LU00C1D)	D2 DSTOPTS HOSTCON(SNA) DSTLUNAM(LU000D2) CTLLUNAM(LU00C1D)
Data Store members	



Note: In this example, the LU names for the communication partners are the following:

LU00C1D

Controller C1, when communicating with a Data Store.

LU000D1

Data Store D1.

LU000D2

Data Store D2.

LU00C1T

Controller C1, when communicating with tracker T1.

LU000T1

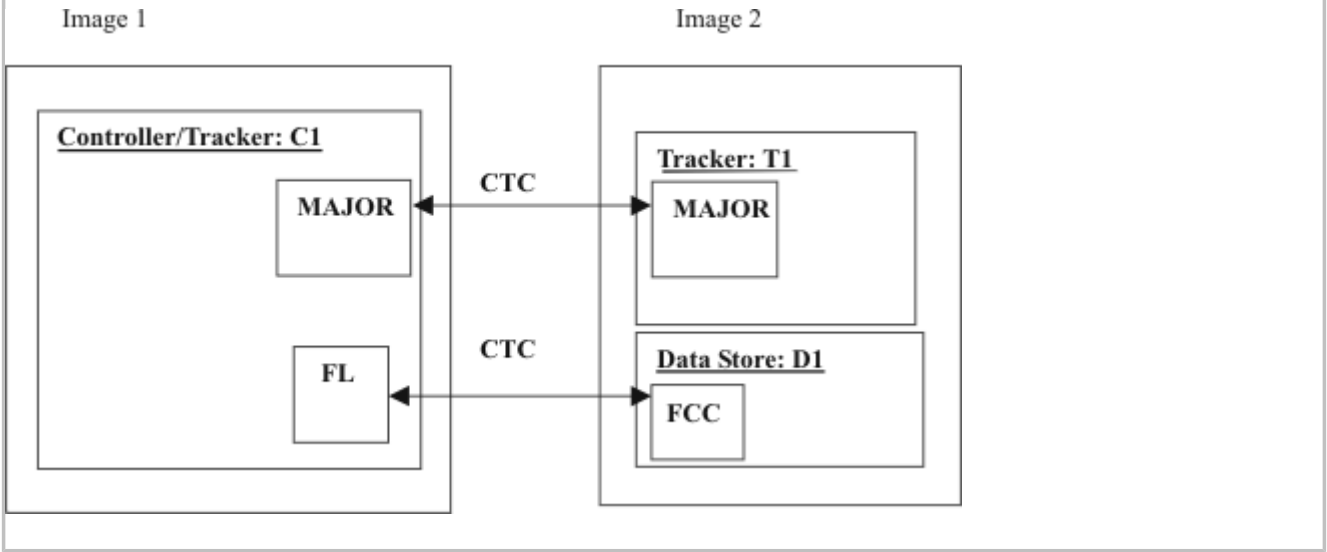
Tracker T1.

XCF-only connection

Figure 6: Controller, tracker, and Data Store connected through XCF on page 36 shows a JES2 MAS (shared spool) with two images. In Image 1, the controller and a tracker are in the same address space and connected via XCF. Image 2 contains another tracker. You need only one Data Store, which is installed in Image 2. The controller will request the Job Log from the Data Store using the FL subtask.

Example

Figure 6. Controller, tracker, and Data Store connected through XCF



Key:

FL

Fetch Job Log task

FCC

Data Store Communication task

MAJOR

Controller/tracker main task

Table 8: Example members for Figure 8 on page 36 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 6: Controller, tracker, and Data Store connected through XCF on page 36.

Table 8. Example members for Figure 8

Controller member	Tracker member
C1	T1
OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES) NCFTASK(NO)	OPCOPTS NCFTASK(NO)
ROUTOPTS XCF(XCFMEMT1)	TRROPTS HOSTCON(XCF)
XCFOPTS GROUP(XCFGRUCT) MEMBER(XCFMEMCT)	XCFOPTS GROUP(XCFGRUCT) MEMBER(XCFMEMT1)
FLOPTS DSTGROUP(XCFGRUCD)	

Table 8. Example members for Figure 8 (continued)

Controller member	Tracker member
CTLMEM(XCFMEMCD) XCFDEST(*****.XCFMEMD1, XCFMENT1.XCFMEMD1)	
Data Store member	
D1	
DSTOPTS HOSTCON(XCF) DSTGROUP(XCFGRUCD) DSTMEM(XCFMEMD1)	



Note: In this example, the XCF groups for the communication partners are the following:

XCFGRUCD

The XCF group for the communication between controller and Data Store. The members in the group are:

XCFMEMCD

The controller.

XCFMEMD1

The Data Store.

XCFGRUCT

The XCF group for the communication between controller and tracker. The members in the group are:

XCFMEMCT

The controller.

XCFMENT1

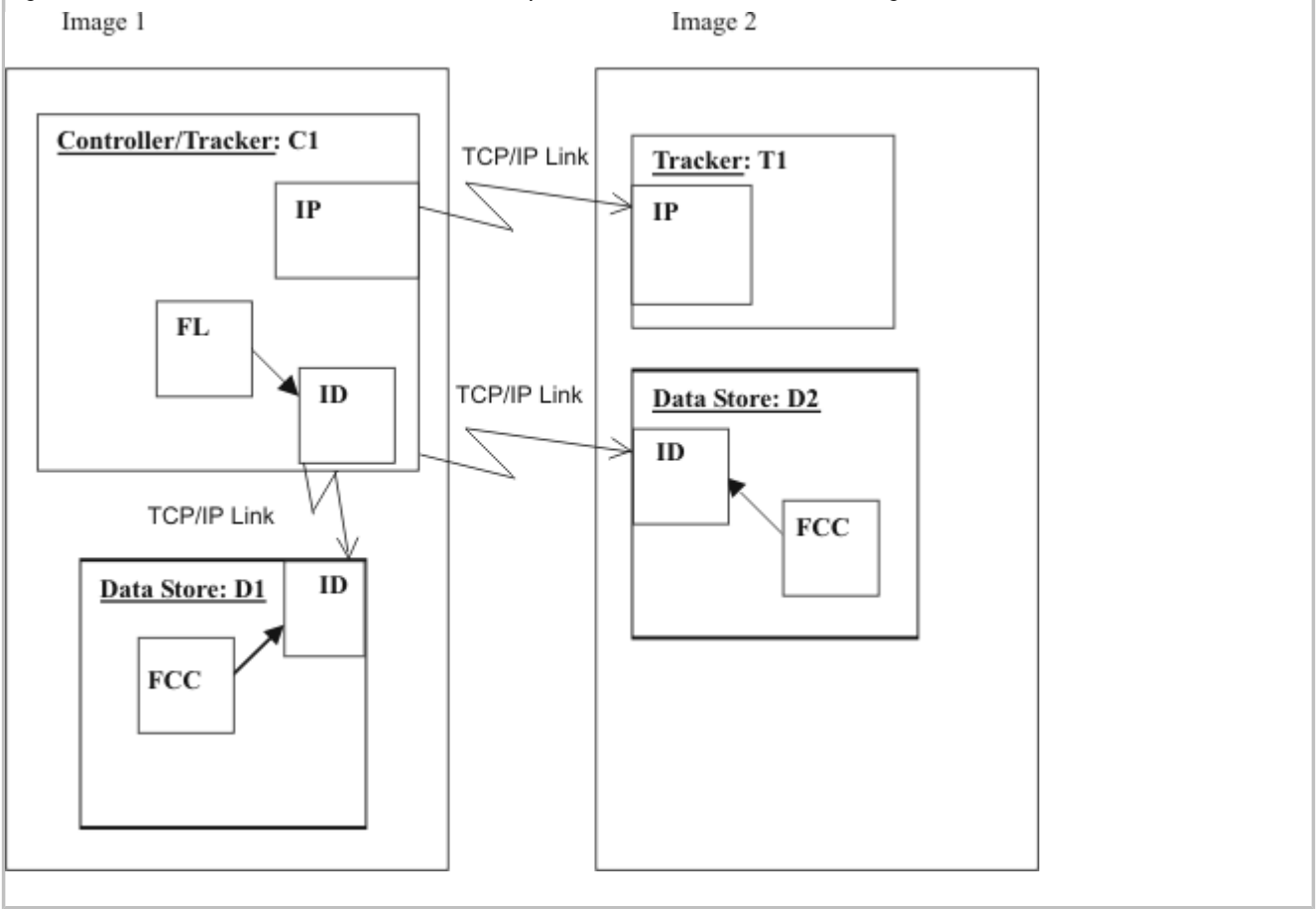
The tracker.

TCP/IP-only connection

[Figure 7: Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through TCP/IP on page 38](#) shows a JES2 with two images. In Image 1, the controller and tracker are in the same address space. Image 2 contains a tracker. The spool is not shared. Two Data Stores are required, one for Image 1 and one for Image 2. All connections are TCP/IP links.

Example

Figure 7. Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through TCP/IP



Key:

FCC

Data Store Communication task

FL

Fetch Job Log Task

ID

Task for Data Store-to-controller TCP/IP communication

IP

Task for tracker-to-controller TCP/IP communication

Table 9: Example members for Figure 9 on page 39 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 7: Controller and tracker in same address space with tracker connected through TCP/IP on page 38.

Table 9. Example members for Figure 9

Controller member	Tracker member
C1 OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES) FLOPTS TCPDEST(*****,'9.12.134.1', '9.12.134.9') ROUTOPTS TCPIP(TRK1:'9.12.134.9')	T1 TRROPTS HOSTCON(TCP) TCPHOSTNAME('9.12.134.1')
Data Store members	
D1 DSTOPTS HOSTCON(TCP) CTLHOSTNAME('9.12.134.1')	D2 DSTOPTS HOSTCON(TCP) CTLHOSTNAME('9.12.134.1')



Note: In this example, the name of the tracker destination is TRK1. The destination name is defined also in the destination field of the workstation. The TCP/IP address of image 1 is 9.12.134.1 and the TCP/IP address of image 2 is 9.12.134.9.

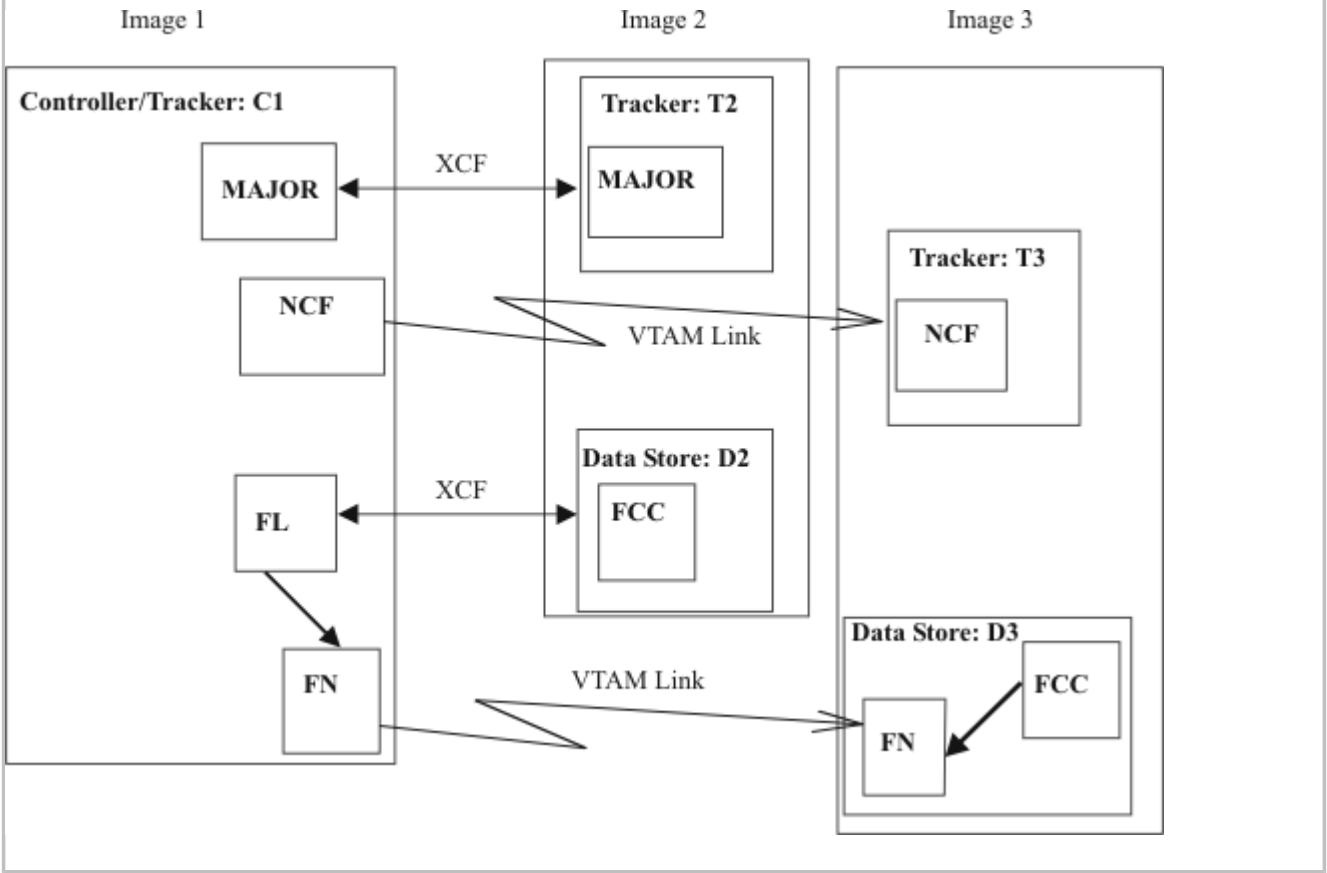
Mixed SNA and XCF connection

[Figure 8: A mixed SNA and XCF connection on page 40](#) shows a mixed SNA and XCF connection. In Image 1, the controller and tracker are in the same address space. In Image 2, the tracker is connected using XCF. In Image 3, the remote tracker is connected using SNA with a VTAM® link. The spool is only shared between Image 1 and Image 2 (JES2 MAS). You must have two Data Stores, one installed in Image 2 and one in Image 3.

Note that the controller and tracker in Image 1 must have two different LU names. For each XCF connection, there must be a different XCF group name.

Example

Figure 8. A mixed SNA and XCF connection



Key:

- FCC**
Data Store Communication task
- FL**
Fetch Job Log task
- FN**
Data Store SNA handler task
- MAJOR**
Controller/tracker main task
- NCF**
Network Communication function

Table 10: Example members for Figure 10 on page 41 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 8: A mixed SNA and XCF connection on page 40.

Table 10. Example members for Figure 10

Controller member	
C1	
OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES) NCFTASK(YES) NCFAPPL(LU00C1T)	
ROUTOPTS SNA(LU000T3) XCF(XCFMEMT2)	
XCFOPTS GROUP(XCFGRUCT) MEMBER(XCFMEMCT)	
FLOPTS DSTGROUP(XCFGRUCD) CTLMEM(XCFMEMCD) XCFDEST(*****.XCFMEMD2, XCFMEMT2.XCFMEMD2) CTLLUNAM(LU00C1D) SNADEST(LU000T3.LU000D3)	
Tracker members	
T2	T3
OPCOPTS NCFTASK(NO)	OPCOPTS NCFTASK(YES) NCFAPPL(LU000T3)
TRROPTS HOSTCON(XCF)	TRROPTS HOSTCON(SNA) SNAHOST(LU00C1T)
XCFOPTS GROUP(XCFGRUCT) MEMBER(XCFMEMT2)	
Data Store members	
D2	D3
DSTOPTS HOSTCON(XCF) DSTGROUP(XCFGRUCD) DSTMEM(XCFMEMD2)	DSTOPTS DSTLUNAM(LU000D3) CTLLUNAM(LU00C1D)



Note: In this example, the XCF groups or the LU names for the communication partners are the following:

XCFGRUCD

The XCF group for the communication between controller and Data Store. The members in the group are:



XCFMEMCD

Controller C1.

XCFMEMD2

Data Store D2.

XCFGRUCT

The XCF group for the communication between controller and tracker. The members in the group are:

XCFMEMCT

Controller C1.

XCFMENT2

Tracker T2.

LU00C1D

Controller C1, when communicating with D3.

LU00D3

Data Store D3.

LU00C1T

Controller C1, when communicating with T3.

LU00T3

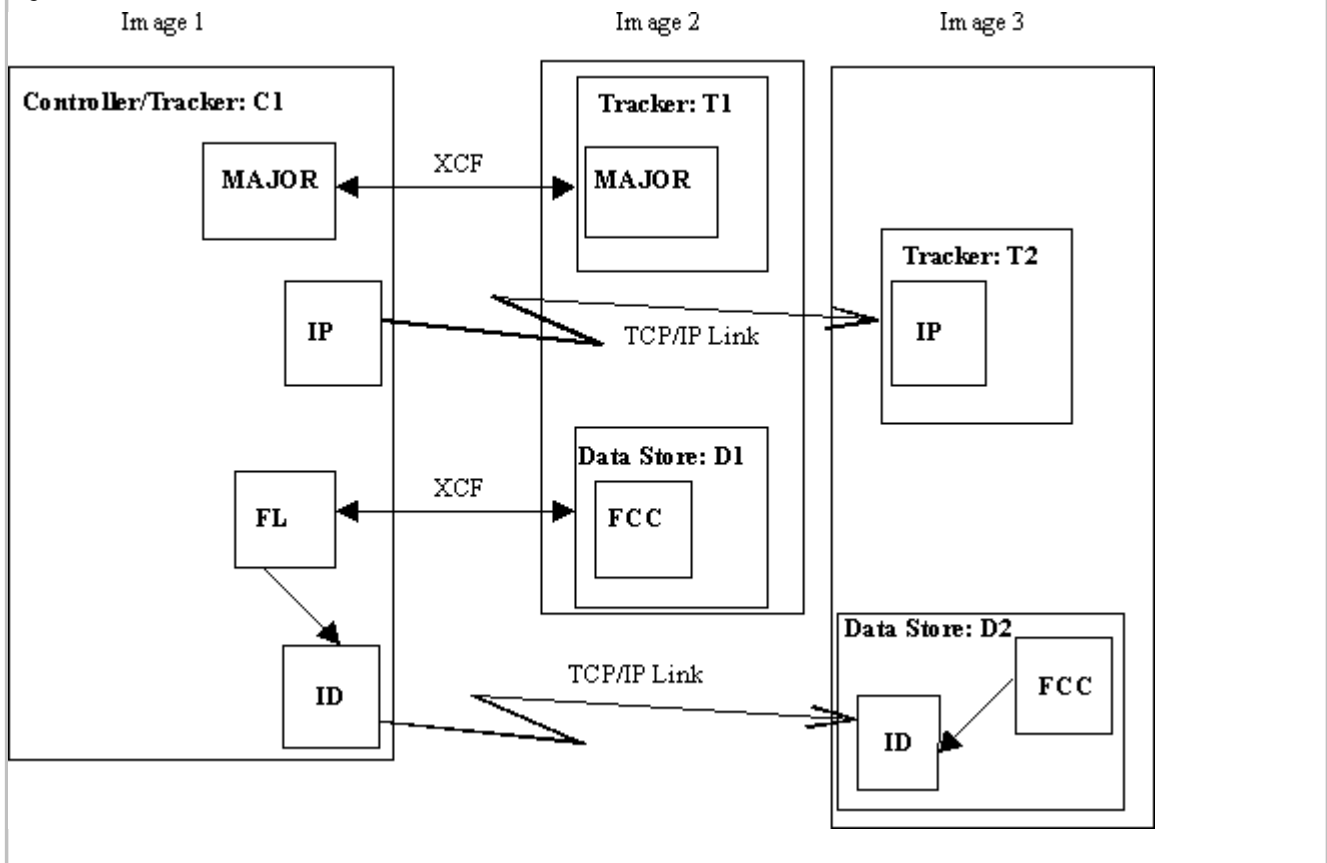
Tracker T3.

Mixed TCP/IP and XCF connection

[Figure 9: A mixed TCP/IP and XCF connection on page 43](#) shows a mixed TCP/IP and XCF connection. In Image 1, the controller and tracker are in the same address space. In Image 2, the tracker is connected using XCF. In Image 3, the remote tracker is connected using TCP/IP. The spool is shared only between Image 1 and Image 2 (JES2 MAS). You must have two Data Stores, one installed in Image 2 and one in Image 3.

Example

Figure 9. A mixed TCP/IP and XCF connection



Key:

FCC

Data Store Communication task

FL

Fetch Job Log task

FN

Data Store SNA handler task

MAJOR

Controller/tracker main task

ID

Task for Data Store-to-controller TCP/IP communication

IP

Task for Tracker-to-controller TCP/IP communication

Table 11: Example members for Figure 11 on page 44 shows the initialization statements you can use to create the configuration in Figure 9: A mixed TCP/IP and XCF connection on page 43.

Table 11. Example members for Figure 11

Controller member	
C1	
<pre>OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES) FLOPTS TCPDEST(*****,'1.22.333.4','1.22.333.4') DSTGROUP(XCFGRUCD) CTLMEMT(XCFMEMCD) XCFDEST(*****.XCFMEMD2,XCFMENT2.XCFMEMD2) ROUTOPTS TCPIP(TRK1:'1.22.333.4') XCF(XCFMEMCT)</pre>	
Tracker members	
T1	T2
<pre>OPCOPTS NCFTASK(NO) TRROPTS HOSTCON(XCF) XCFOPTS GROUP(XCFGRUCT) MEMBER(XCFMENT2)</pre>	<pre>OPCOPTS NCFTASK(NO) TRROPTS HOSTCON(TCP) TCPHOSTNAME('1.22.333.4')</pre>
Data Store members	
D1	D2
<pre>DSTOPTS HOSTCON(XCF) DSTGROUP(XCFGRUCD) DSTMEM(XCFMEMD2)</pre>	<pre>DSTOPTS HOSTCON(TCP) CTLHOSTNAME('1.22.333.4')</pre>

Configuring a backup controller for disaster recovery

IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports the recovery of a system failure between two remote sites. A disaster recovery process ensures that the business supported by the data center is always kept viable by switching from a local site where the failure occurs, to a remote site.

The controller in charge of planning, controlling, and monitoring the workload sends all the data and plan updates to a *backup* controller running in a different sysplex. In this way, the backup controller (also known as a *remote hot standby controller*) is kept up-to-date and can act as the *primary* controller when a planned or unplanned switch occurs.

You can configure a backup controller to replace the primary controller in the event of a system or connection failure. Both controllers must have the same configuration. The backup controller is continuously connected with the primary controller through TCP/IP and kept updated with all the required data. When the backup controller takes over from the primary controller, the tracker, if running, switches its connection from the primary to the backup controller.

To configure a backup controller and set its communication with the primary controller, define the following initialization statements. For detailed information about the statements, see *Customization and Tuning*.

BKPTOPTS

To define the local attributes for the TCP/IP communication between the primary and backup controller. Define this statement on both controllers.

OPCOPTS

To set the OPCHOST parameter, which defines the role of the subsystem. Define this statement on both controllers.

TRROPTS

To define the routing options from a z/OS tracker that is connected to a primary controller, and possibly also to a backup controller.



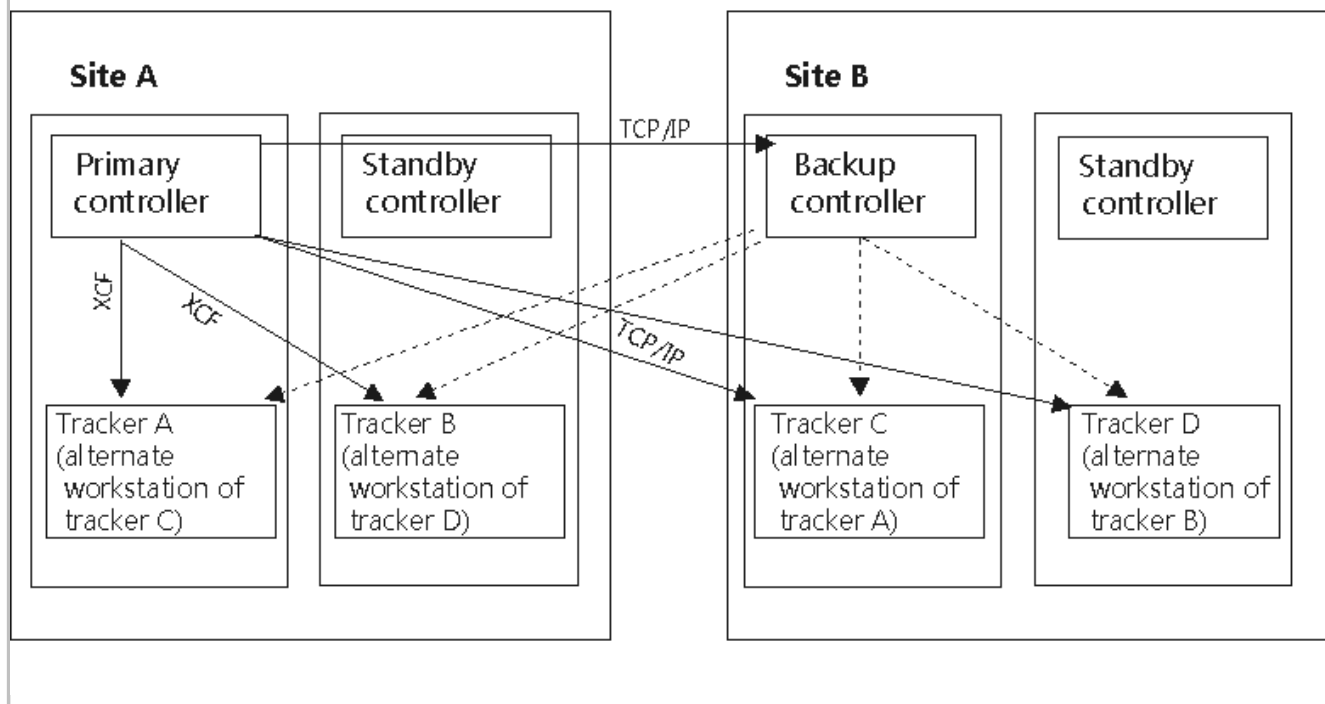
Note: To connect to a backup controller, a tracker can use only TCP/IP. In this case, to connect to a primary controller the same tracker can use only XCF or TCP/IP connection protocol.

The configuration to include a backup controller supports the following features:

- z/OS trackers
- IBM Workload Scheduler agents (also known as z-centric agents)
- Dynamic domain managers
- Cross dependencies

Figure 10: [Configuring trackers, primary controller, and backup controller on page 46](#) shows two remote sites, with two images each.

Figure 10. Configuring trackers, primary controller, and backup controller



In this configuration:

- The primary controller is connected to trackers A and B through XCF links. It is connected to the backup controller, trackers C and D through TCP/IP.
- The backup controller connects to trackers A, B, C, and D through TCP/IP links when you issue the modify command `/F procname, BKTAKEOVER` and the backup controller becomes the controlling system.
- On the primary controller you set the following statements:

```
OPCOPTS  OPCHOST(YES)
BKPTOPTS TCPIPJOBNAME('TCPIP')
          HOSTNAME('1.11.111.111')
          LOCPORTNUMBER(7543)
          PEERHOSTNAME('2.22.222.222')
          PEERPORTNUMBER(6456)
ROUTOPTS XCF(ZWS2) 1
```

- On the backup controller you set the following statements:

```
OPCOPTS  OPCHOST(BACKUP)
BKPTOPTS TCPIPJOBNAME('TCPIP')
          HOSTNAME('2.22.222.222')
          LOCPORTNUMBER(6456)
          PEERHOSTNAME('1.11.111.111')
          PEERPORTNUMBER(7543)
ROUTOPTS TCPIP(ZWS2:'3.33.333.333'/4348)1
```

- On trackers A and B you set the following statements:

```
TRROPTS  HOSTCON(XCF)
          BKPHOSTNAME('2.22.222.222')
```

```

        BKPPORTNUMBER(924)
XCFOPTS GROUP (GRUXCFX)
        MEMBER (ZWS2)
TCPOPTS  HOSTNAME ( '3.33.333.333' )
        TRKPORTNUMBER(4348)

```

- On trackers C and D you have set the following statements:

```

TRROPTS  HOSTCON(TCP)
        TCPHOSTNAME( '1.11.111.111' )
        TCPPORTNUMBER(424)
        BKPHOSTNAME( '2.22.222.222' )
        BKPPORTNUMBER(924)
TCPOPTS  HOSTNAME ( '3.33.333.333' )
        TRKPORTNUMBER(4348)

```

1

On the primary and backup controller, the destination name in the ROUTOPTS statement must be the same (zws2, in this example).

Chapter 3. Planning your installation

During the planning stage of your IBM Z Workload Scheduler project, consider carefully how you want to install the scheduler to control your production workload. The installation consists of installing the tracker and Z controller in combinations to suit your processing environment, and connecting them using one or more of the communication methods described in [Planning your configuration on page 24](#). Later, you can customize your IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems to include more functions.

Before you start the installation tasks, ensure that you have all the resources you need to complete your installation. For a detailed description of the installation tasks, see [Installing on page 60](#).

Configuring for availability

It is recommended that you install the tracker and Z controller as separate subsystems on an IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlling system. The tracker can then continue to collect events even when the Z controller is stopped. Events are created by SMF and JES exits, and added to a queue in the z/OS extended common service area (ECSA). If the event writer is not active while work is running in the system, the queue might fill up, and new events might be lost. IBM Z Workload Scheduler cannot recover these lost events.

You can improve IBM Z Workload Scheduler availability using the z/OS® Automatic Restart Manager (ARM). Automatic restart management can reduce the impact of an unexpected error on IBM Z Workload Scheduler because it can restart it automatically, without operator intervention.

To use Automatic Restart Manager, set the ARM parameter in the OPCOPTS statement to YES. For details about the ARM parameter, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Hot standby

If you connect your IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems by using the z/OS cross-system coupling facility (XCF), you can include one or more standby Z controllers in your configuration. A standby system can take over the functions of the Z controller if the Z controller fails or if the z/OS system that it was active on fails. You can create a standby Z controller on one or more IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlled systems within the XCF group. Each standby system must have access to the same resources as the Z controller. These resources include data sets and VTAM® cross-domain resources. However, if EQQMLOG is allocated as a data set, it cannot be shared between the Z controller and standby Z controller. The standby system is started the same way as the other IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces, but is not activated unless a failure occurs or unless it is directed to take over through a z/OS operator modify command. If you use one or more servers to remotely access the controller, note that the server must always run on the same system as the controller.

Starting an event writer with an event reader function

Starting an event writer with an event-reader function improves performance, because events are not written to the event data set and then read back again, which requires an event-reader task to continually check the event data set for new events. Instead, the event writer writes events to the event data set and forwards them directly to the Z controller through a TCP/IP, XCF, or NCF link.

Using two message log (MLOG) data sets

All the major components and tasks of IBM Z Workload Scheduler log messages to either SYSOUT or to a data set, based on your configuration choice.

When the messages are logged to a data set (EQQMLOG), the message log data set remains under the control of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller for as long as the controller is active. If you want to save, or clear, the contents of the data set, you must first stop the controller. Also, if the controller is not stopped for a long period of time, and EQQMLOG runs out of space, the messages are written into the system log.

To avoid these problems, including the increased amount of time required to find specific records in an oversized data set, you can configure IBM Z Workload Scheduler to use two message log data sets, EQQMLOG and EQQMLOG2.

The two MLOGs are used alternatively: while one logs messages, the other remains inactive. Then, when the active data set reaches a pre-set level of completion, its contents are copied into a GDG data set and it goes idle, while the other data set starts logging. When the same level of completion is reached in the now active data set, the switch is repeated. Every time the data sets are shifted, message:

```
EQQZ402I SWITCH FROM ddn1 TO ddn2
```

is issued on SYSLOG and written in the just switched MLOG.

The messages copied from EQQMLOG and EQQMLOG2 are available in the GDG data set.

To configure IBM Z Workload Scheduler to use two MLOGS, specify Y in the `MLOG SWITCH` field of the [EQQJOBSC installation aid panel on page 73](#). To activate this feature, you must also specify in the `Switchlimit` field the number of records written in the MLOG file that you want to trigger the switch mechanism. When the file reaches this level of capacity, its contents are saved in the GDG file, and the oncoming messages are written on the alternate file.

The number of records in `Switchlimit` must be greater than 0 for the feature to be activated.

Specifying Y in `MLOG SWITCH` results in the creation of sample JCLs that:

- Add DD EQQMLOG2 in the controller started task JCL (samples EQQCONO and EQQCON) and initial parameters (samples EQQCONOP and EQQCONP)
- Add DD EQQMLOG2 in the tracker started task JCL and initial parameters (samples EQQTRA and EQQTRAP)
- Allocate the EQQMLOG2 data set like EQQMLOG (sample EQQPCS02)
- Create the GDG data set where the outgoing MLOG file is archived (samples EQQSMLOG and EQQREPRO)
- Allocate the GDG root to archive the MLOGS (sample EQQPCS12)

You must then make the EQQSMLOG procedure (copied from the EQQJOBS customized samples) accessible to the controller, for example by adding it in the `user.proclib`.

After the product is installed, you can configure the `MLOGPROCNAME` and `SWITCHMLOGLIM` keywords of the `OPCOPTS` initialization statement to set or change the feature (for detailed information about `OPCOPTS`, see *Customization and Tuning*).

Particular attention should be paid to calibrating the number of records specified in `Switchlimit` (or `SWITCHMLOGLIM`), the point being that an exceedingly low value triggers the switching function with unnecessary frequency while at the other end you risk filling the MLOG to its capacity and generate a B37 abend. As a best practice, you enter a number that at least doubles the number of records logged at the controller startup or during the workload peak (when many `ETT add` messages are sent).

For example, if you use a 3390 disk, a track is 56664 bytes. One cylinder includes 15 tracks, which are 849960 bytes. If you allocate an MLOG of 1 cylinder with 1 extent, the number of available bytes is 1699920. Since the MLOG record length is 125 bytes, the maximum number of available records is 13599 (1699920/125). Under these conditions, the appropriate number of records for `Switchlimit` or `SWITCHMLOGLIM` should be a little lower, perhaps 13000. If you then find that a greater number of messages is issued at short intervals during peak workload or at controller startup, this implies that you should increase the value and allocate more space for `EQQMLOG`.

Another advantage of using the MLOG switching function is that it prevents the loss of the messages that are written to `EQQMLOG` when abend B37 occurs as the MLOG file becomes full. In fact with the switching function on, if the current MLOG file fills up due to an inadequate number of records defined in `Switchlimit` or `SWITCHMLOGLIM`, when B37 is issued, a switch MLOG action is forced, all records are copied to the GDG data set, and control is passed to the alternate MLOG.

When this feature is installed, you can:

- Run the modify command, `/F subsys, SWITCHMLOG`, to force the switch to the alternate data set (`EQQMLOG` or `EQQMLOG1`), regardless of the number of currently logged messages, and starts the record counter from 0 again.
- See which of the two MLOG data sets is in current use on the BROWSING GENERAL CURRENT PLAN INFORMATION dialog (`EQQSGCPP`; fast path 6.6).

See also [Message log data set \(EQQMLOG\) on page 138](#).

Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler

[Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler on page 50](#) provides you a guide through the installation tasks for a tracker, Z controller, standby Z controller, or the ISPF dialogs.



Note: Always install the tracker first on the controlling system or on a system where a standby Z controller will be installed.

In the checklist, the task numbers are arranged in a recommended order but are not meant to imply a required order. You perform the tasks suited to your own configuration.

The **Applies to** column indicates for which IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space you should perform that particular task. You might not need to perform every task outlined in the list. Skip those tasks or actions that do not apply to your installation.

A check mark (✓) in the **IPL** column means that an IPL of the z/OS system is needed for the change to take effect. It does not indicate how many IPLs are needed. You can install IBM Z Workload Scheduler with only one IPL of the z/OS system by performing all the required steps before a scheduled IPL.

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
Step 1. Loading tracker software on page 64	Load tracker software. Perform the following actions on each system in your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration: • Run SMP/E to receive tracker software. • Apply tracker maintenance.	• Tracker	
Step 2. Loading controller software on page 65	Load Z controller software. Perform the following actions on each system where you are installing a Z controller, standby Z controller, or dialogs: • Run SMP/E to receive Z controller software. • Apply Z controller maintenance.	• Z controller • Standby Z controller • Dialogs	
Step 3. Loading national language support software on page 66	Load national language support (NLS) software for the Z controller. Perform the following actions on each system where you are installing a Z controller standby Z controller, or dialogs: • Run SMP/E to receive NLS software. • Apply NLS maintenance.	• Z controller • Standby Z controller • Dialogs	
Step 4. Using the EQQJOBS installation aid on page 66	Run the EQQJOBS installation aid. You can run EQQJOBS as soon as the tracker software is loaded. It helps you install IBM Z Workload Scheduler: • Set up EQQJOBS. • Create the sample job JCL. Do this to generate tailored samples from the EQQJOBS dialog. • Generate batch job skeletons. Use EQQJOBS to generate skeletons for the ISPF dialogs. • Optionally generate the Data Store samples if you want to install the Data Store.	• Tracker • Z controller • Standby Z controller • Dialogs	
Step 5. Adding SMF and JES exits for event tracking on page 91	Add SMF and JES event tracking exits.	• Tracker	✓

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler (continued)

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
	Perform this task on every z/OS system in your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration.  Note: If you place exits in a link-pack-area (LPA) library, you must perform an IPL of the z/OS system with the CLPA option.		
Step 6. Updating SYS1.PARMLIB on page 94	Update <i>SYS1.PARMLIB</i>. On each system where you are installing the product, perform the actions that are applicable to your installation: • Define IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystems (IEFSSNnn). This is required for each system where the product is installed. • Authorize the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load module library (IEAAPFnn). Do this if you install the product in a separate load module library. • Update SMF parameters (SMFPRMnn). Do this when installing a tracker. • Update dump-content definitions. Consider this on each system where you are installing the product. • Update the z/OS link-library definition (LNKLSTnn) on each system where you are installing the product. • Update XCF initialization options (COUPLEnn). Review this section if you use XCF connections. • Modify TSO parameters (IKJTSONn). Do this when installing a Z controller, a standby Z controller, or the ISPF dialogs. • Update PPT for performance (SCHEDnn) on each system where you are installing the product. • Define the DLF exit for Hiperbatch™ support (COFDLFnn). Do this if you use Hiperbatch™ support. • Choose whether to start IBM Z Workload Scheduler automatically (COMMNDnn).	• Tracker • Z controller • Standby controller • Dialogs	✓

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler (continued)

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
	Consider this on each system where you are installing the product. Update APPC options (APPCPMnn). Consider this action if you intend to use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler API or server. Define VTAM® resources before you update SYS1.PARMLIB. Coordinate this action with task 18 or 19.		
Step 7. Setting up the RACF environment on page 106	Set up the RACF® environment. Perform these actions on each system in your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration: - Update RACF® for IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks (ICHRIN03) on all IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks on each system. - Update RACF® for a Z controller or standby Z controller.	- Tracker - Z controller - Standby controller - Dialogs	✓
At this point, if you placed exit modules in LPA, you can IPL with CLPA. No other options for IBM Z Workload Scheduler require an IPL.			
Step 8. Securing communications on page 113	Set up the SSL environment Perform these actions to activate a secure communication in a TCP/IP network: - Create the SSL work directory. - Create as many private keys, certificates, and trusted certification authority (CA) chains as you plan to use in your network. - Configure the scheduler, by specifying the TCPOPTS statement for each component of your network.	- Tracker - Z controller - Standby controller - Data Store server - User address space	
Step 9. Allocating data sets on page 116	Allocate data sets. Perform these actions if you are installing a tracker or a Z controller:	- Tracker - Z controller - Data Store server	

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler (continued)

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
	- Review the section on allocating IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets. Do this before you allocate data sets. - Allocate VSAM data sets for a Z controller. Perform this action to create new data sets for a Z controller. - Allocate non-VSAM data sets. Perform this action for each IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space. - Optionally, allocate the VSAM Data Store data sets if you want to use the Data Store.		
Implementing support for started-task operations on page 145	Update <i>SYS1.PROCLIB</i>. Perform these actions for each IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space. - Create a JCL procedure for each address space on all z/OS systems where you are installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler. - If you use IBM Z Workload Scheduler to schedule started-task operations, ensure that the started-task-submit data set (EQQSTC) is in the JES PROCLIB concatenation and in the master scheduler start procedure. - If you use Restart and Cleanup, copy the EQQCLEAN sample procedure to a data set that is referenced in the JES PROCLIB concatenation.	- Tracker - Z controller - Standby controller	
Step 11. Defining the initialization statements on page 150	Define initialization statements. Perform this task for each IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space: Define initialization statements. Create members in the parameter library (EQQPARM) for each address space.	- Tracker - Z controller - Standby controller	
If you are not using NCF, XCF, or TCP/IP connections you can now start a tracker and continue with the verification task.			

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler (continued)

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
The ISPF environment on page 196	Set up the ISPF environment. Perform these actions on the system where you are installing the ISPF dialogs. • Set up the IBM Z Workload Scheduler CLIST library. • Set up the ISPF tables. • Allocate ISPF and IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets to your TSO session. • Invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog.	• Dialogs	
If you are not using NCF, XCF, or TCP/IP connections, the API or server, you can now start a Z controller and continue with the verification task.			
Step 13. Using XCF for communication on page 156	Using XCF for local communications. Even if you have already specified XCF initialization statements in Task 12 and updated the COUPLEnn member in Task 7, consider these actions if you use XCF: • Update XCF initialization options. Ensure that XCF initialization options are suitable for your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration. • Add initialization statement options for XCF. Specify XCF runtime options in the parameter library for all started tasks.	• Tracker • Z controller • Standby controller	
Step 14. Activating the network communication function on page 159	Activate NCF for VTAM® connections. Perform these actions for each address space that is connected through NCF. Ensure that a standby Z controller has the same tracker connections as the Z controller and that each tracker can connect to all standby Z controllers:	• Tracker • Z controller • Standby controller	

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler (continued)

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
	• Add NCF network definitions. Define VTAM® applications on each system where a started task uses NCF. • Add NCF session parameters on each z/OS system where IBM Z Workload Scheduler is installed. • Update the COS table. Consider this action if you do not want to use the VTAM® COS default entry. • Activate network resources. Check that all the required VTAM® resources are active. • Add NCF initialization options. Include initialization statement options in the parameter library for all started tasks that use NCF.		
Step 15. Using TCP/IP for communication on page 162	Activate TCP/IP connections Perform these actions for each address space that is connected via TCP/IP. Ensure that a standby Z controller has the same tracker connections as the Z controller and that each tracker can connect to all standby Z controllers: • Add TCP/IP network definitions. Define IP address for the controller and tracker. • Add TCP/IP initialization options. Include initialization statement options in the parameter library for all started tasks that use TCP/IP. • For TCP/IP, the IBM Z Workload Scheduler server can manage up to 500 concurrent connection requests in a queue. In the PROFILE.TCPIP configuration file, set the SOMAXCONN statement to a value not greater than 500.	• Tracker • Z controller • Standby controller	
Step 16. Activating support for the API on page 163	Activate support for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler API.	• Tracker • Z controller • Standby controller	

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler (continued)

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
	To use the API, perform these actions for each IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space that you want to send requests to: • Define VTAM® resources. Define a local LU for IBM Z Workload Scheduler, logon modes, and cross-domain resources, as required. • Update APPC options. Update the APPCPMnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. • Activate IBM Z Workload Scheduler support for APPC. In the parameter library, include APPCTASK(YES) on the OPCOPTS statement.		
Step 17. Activating support for the product dialog and programming interface using the server on page 166	Activate support for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Server to use APPC or TCP/IP communications.  Note: Include this task when activating an IBM Z Workload Scheduler server. To activate the server, perform these actions in the order shown: 1. Define VTAM® resources. Define a local LU for IBM Z Workload Scheduler, logon modes, and cross-domain resources, as required. 2. Update APPC options. Update the APPCPMnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. 3. Activate IBM Z Workload Scheduler support for APPC. In the parameter library, include SERVERS on the OPCOPTS statement.	• Server • Z controller • Standby controller	
Step 18. Activating support for end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities on page 170	Activate support for end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities	• Tracker • Z controller • Standby controller	

Table 12. Checklist for installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler (continued)

Step	Description	Applies to	IPL
	 Note: Include this task when you intend to use IBM Z Workload Scheduler to schedule jobs on distributed z-centric agents. • Define the ROUTOPTS initialization parameters for the controller. • Define the HTTPOPTS initialization parameters for the tracker.		
Step 19. Activating support for Dynamic Workload Console on page 170	Activate Support for the Dynamic Workload Console  Note: Include this task when activating a server and intending to use the Dynamic Workload Console. To activate the server, perform these actions: • Install the Connector • In the parameter library, include SERVERS on the OPCOPTS statement.	• Server • Z controller • Standby controller	
Step 20. Activating support for the Java utilities on page 172	Activate Support for the Java™ utilities Perform this task if you want to use one of the following features: • Dynamic Workload Console reporting. • Event-driven workload automation for data set triggering, with centralized deploy process.	• Z controller	

Part II. Installing and migrating IBM Z Workload Scheduler

Chapter 4. Installing

[Table 13: IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks on page 60](#) summarizes the tasks to install IBM Z Workload Scheduler and identifies the address space type for each of them. Depending on your configuration, you might not need to perform every task indicated in the table. Skip those sections that are not relevant to your installation.

Before beginning the installation tasks, determine the IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration you want to create and the functions you want to use (for details, see [Planning your configuration on page 24](#)).



Note: To generate the skeletons that are appropriate to the current version, you are required to run EQQJOBS. For details, see [Step 4. Using the EQQJOBS installation aid on page 66](#).

Table 13. IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks

Installation task	Perform for					
	tracker	Controller	Server	Standby Z controller	Data Store	Dialogs
Step 1. Loading tracker software on page 64	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Step 2. Loading controller software on page 65		✓		✓		✓
Step 3. Loading national language support software on page 66		✓		✓		✓
Step 4. Using the EQQJOBS installation aid on page 66		✓			✓	✓
Step 5. Adding SMF and JES exits for event tracking on page 91	✓					
Step 6. Updating SYS1.PARMLIB on page 94	✓	✓		✓		✓
Step 7. Setting up the RACF environment on page 106	✓	✓		✓		
Step 8. Securing communications on page 113	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Step 9. Allocating data sets on page 116				✓	✓	
• Allocating the VSAM data sets on page 117		✓				
• Allocating non-VSAM data sets on page 125	✓	✓				

Table 13. IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks (continued)

Installation task	Perform for					
	tracker	Controller	Server	Standby Z controller	Data Store	Dialogs
Allocating the files and directories on page 142			✓			
Step 10. Creating JCL procedures for address spaces on page 144	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 11. Defining the initialization statements on page 150	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 12. Setting up the ISPF environment on page 150						✓
Step 13. Using XCF for communication on page 156	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 14. Activating the network communication function on page 159	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 15. Using TCP/IP for communication on page 162	✓	✓		✓		
Step 16. Activating support for the API on page 163		✓		✓		
Step 17. Activating support for the product dialog and programming interface using the server on page 166		✓		✓		
Step 18. Activating support for end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities on page 170	✓	✓		✓		
Step 19. Activating support for Dynamic Workload Console on page 170		✓		✓		
Step 20. Activating support for the Java utilities on page 172		✓				
Verifying your installation on page 175 Verifying installation of a tracker on page 175	✓					

Table 13. IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks (continued)

Installation task	Perform for					
	tracker	Controller	Server	Standby Z controller	Data Store	Dialogs
• Verifying installation of a controller and dialogs on page 181 • Verifying installation of a standby controller on page 185 • Verifying installation of the Restart and Cleanup function on page 185 • Verifying configuration on page 187	✓	✓		✓	✓	
• Step 21. Activating support for FIPS standard over SSL secured connections on page 172		✓				

Table 14. IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks

Installation task	Perform for					
	tracker	Controller	Server	Standby Z controller	Data Store	Dialogs
Step 1. Loading tracker software on page 64	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Step 2. Loading controller software on page 65		✓		✓		✓
Step 3. Loading national language support software on page 66	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Step 4. Using the EQQJOBS installation aid on page 66		✓			✓	✓
Step 5. Adding SMF and JES exits for event tracking on page 91	✓					
Step 6. Updating SYS1.PARMLIB on page 94	✓	✓		✓		✓

Table 14. IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks (continued)

Installation task	Perform for					
	tracker	Controller	Server	Standby Z controller	Data Store	Dialogs
Step 7. Setting up the RACF environment on page 106	✓	✓		✓		
Step 8. Securing communications on page 113	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Step 9. Allocating data sets on page 116 - Allocating the VSAM data sets on page 117 - Allocating non-VSAM data sets on page 125 - Allocating the files and directories on page 142	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Step 10. Creating JCL procedures for address spaces on page 144	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 11. Defining the initialization statements on page 150	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 12. Setting up the ISPF environment on page 150						✓
Step 13. Using XCF for communication on page 156	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 14. Activating the network communication function on page 159	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Step 15. Using TCP/IP for communication on page 162	✓	✓		✓		
Step 16. Activating support for the API on page 163		✓		✓		
Step 17. Activating support for the product dialog and programming interface using the server on page 166		✓		✓		
Step 18. Activating support for end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities on page 170	✓	✓		✓		

Table 14. IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation tasks (continued)

Installation task	Perform for					
	tracker	Controller	Server	Standby Z controller	Data Store	Dialogs
Step 19. Activating support for Dynamic Workload Console on page 170		✓		✓		
Step 20. Activating support for the Java utilities on page 172		✓				
Verifying your installation on page 175 • Verifying installation of a tracker on page 175 • Verifying installation of a controller and dialogs on page 181 • Verifying installation of a standby controller on page 185 • Verifying installation of the Restart and Cleanup function on page 185 • Verifying configuration on page 187	✓	✓		✓	✓	
	✓	✓		✓		

Step 1. Loading tracker software

You must load tracker software on each z/OS system in your configuration. Process the software distribution media by using the facilities of System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E). This creates or updates the necessary software libraries on your system. [Table 15: tracker libraries loaded by SMP/E on page 64](#) describes the distribution and target libraries that are created or updated by SMP/E.

Table 15. tracker libraries loaded by SMP/E

SMP/E DD name		Description
Distribution	Target	
AEQQPNL0	SEQQPNL0	Panels for the EQQJOBS installation aid
AEQQMOD0 (object)	SEQQLMD0 (load)	tracker modules
AEQQMSG0	SEQQMSG0	Messages
AEQQMAC0	SEQQMAC0	Assembler macros

Table 15. tracker libraries loaded by SMP/E (continued)

SMP/E DD name		Description
Distribution	Target	
AEQQCLIB	SEQQCLIB	IBM Z Workload Scheduler CLISTs
AEQQSAMP	SEQQSAMP	Sample exits, programs, and JCL
AEQQSKL0	SEQQSKL0	JCL skeletons, input to EQQJOBS
AEQQTBL0	SEQQTBL0	ISPF tables
AEQQDATA	SEQQDATA	Sample IBM Z Workload Scheduler databases
AEQQMISC	SEQQMISC	License, REXX files

It is recommended that you place all the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load modules in a separate library. Use the same library for both the tracker and the Z controller. Create the library before you run the SMP/E jobs.

Alternatively, you can place the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load modules in one of your existing load-module libraries, for example SYS1.LINKLIB. The remaining data sets loaded by SMP/E are new data sets that you must create before running the SMP/E jobs. For the JCL and instructions to load the software, see the *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Program Directory*.

After you have loaded the tracker software, apply any recommended maintenance described in the PSP bucket.

Step 2. Loading controller software

To load the Z controller software, process the software distribution media by using SMP/E. This creates or updates the necessary disk-resident libraries on your system. For a description of the data set that is created or updated by SMP/E, see [Table 16: Controller libraries loaded by SMP/E on page 65](#).

Table 16. Controller libraries loaded by SMP/E

SMP/E DD name		Description
Distribution	Target	
AEQQMOD0 (object)	SEQQLMD0 (load)	Controller modules
AEQQMISC	SEQQMISC	License, REXX files

Recommendation: Install the Z controller in the same library that you are using for the tracker.

After you have loaded the Z controller software, apply any recommended maintenance described in the PSP bucket.

Step 3. Loading national language support software

To load national language support (NLS) software, process the product software by using SMP/E. This creates or updates the necessary disk-resident libraries on your system. [Table 17: NLS libraries loaded by SMP/E on page 66](#) describes the data sets that are created or updated by SMP/E.

After you have loaded the national language support software, apply any recommended maintenance described in the PSP bucket.

Table 17. NLS libraries loaded by SMP/E

SMP/E DD name		Description
Distribution	Target	
AEQQPxxx	SEQQPxxx	Panels
AEQQMxxx	SEQQMxxx	Messages
AEQQLxxx	SEQQLxxx	Advanced ISPF panel templates
AEQQGxxx	SEQQGxxx	Advanced ISPF panels
 Note: The suffix xxx is the NLS identifier. It is recommended that you place NLS software in the same library that you are using for the tracker and Z controller.		

Loading national language support (NLS) software is not applicable for IBM Z Workload Scheduler

Step 4. Using the EQQJOBS installation aid

EQQJOBS is a CLIST-driven ISPF dialog that can help you install IBM Z Workload Scheduler. You can set up EQQJOBS as soon as the tracker software has been installed. EQQJOBS assists in the installation of the tracker and Z controller by building batch-job JCL that is tailored to your requirements. You can then use the JCL to perform the following actions:

- Install the tracking exits
- Set up RACF® security
- Create data sets
- Create started-task JCL
- Perform planning functions

Set up EQQJOBS now, so that it is ready to use when needed.

Setting up the EQQJOBS installation aid

EQQJOBS reads skeleton JCL from the SEQQSAMP or SEQQSKL0 libraries, tailors the JCL, and then writes the tailored JCL to an output library that you specify. The output library must be a partitioned data set with record length 80 and record format FB, and must be allocated before you run EQQJOBS. The components of EQQJOBS reside in these libraries:

SEQQCLIB

CLIST to drive the dialog

SEQQPNL0

EQQJOBS panels

SEQQSAMP

Sample JCL

SEQQSKL0

IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch-job skeletons.

To be able to run EQQJOBS, you can either:

- Allocate the following libraries to the DD statements in your TSO session:
 - SEQQCLIB to SYSPROC
 - SEQQPNL0 to ISPLIB
 - SEQQSKL0 and SEQQSAMP to ISPSLIB.

To invoke EQQJOBS, enter the TSO command `EQQJOBS` from an ISPF environment.

- From the SEQQCLIB library, invoke the EQQ#JOBS CLIST (where the symbol # depends from the code page you are using, this is related to code page 1047) by issuing the EXEC command.

In this way, the required libraries are automatically allocated, and EQQJOBS is automatically invoked.

The following panel is displayed:

Example

Figure 11. EQQJOBS0 - EQQJOBS application menu

```

EQQJOBS0 ----- EQQJOBS APPLICATION MENU -----
Select option ==>

1 - Create sample job JCL
2 - Generate batch-job skeletons
3 - Generate Data Store samples
4 - Generate WAPL samples
X - Exit from the EQQJOBS dialog

Userid   - SYSPROC
Time     - 15:04
Terminal - 3278

```

The following sections describe:

- Option 1, [Creating the sample job JCL on page 68](#)
- Option 2, [Generating batch-job skeletons on page 79](#)

- Option 3, [Generating Data Store samples on page 85](#)
- Option 4, [Creating the Workload Automation Programming Language samples on page 89](#)

**Note:**

1. To ensure that all files are correctly allocated, perform first option 2 then option 1.
2. If you need to run EQQJOBS again, ensure that you saved your customized batch-job skeletons because they will be generated again and overwritten.

Creating the sample job JCL

To ensure that all the files are correctly allocated, before creating the sample job JCL you must have generated the batch-job skeletons, as described in [Generating batch-job skeletons on page 79](#).

To create the sample job JCL:

1. From the EQQJOBS application menu, select option 1. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 12. EQQJOBS3 - Create sample job JCL

```

EQQJOBS3 ----- CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL -----
Command ==>

The data set names specified on this panel should be fully qualified
names without any enclosing apostrophes.

Enter the name of the output library:

Sample job JCL      ==> CCOPC.OPCA.INSTJCL_____
BATch-job skeletons ==> _____

Job statement information:

==> //SYSPROG1 JOB (111111,2222),'OPCESA BATCH',CLASS=B,MSGCLASS=H,_____
==> //          MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=SYSPROG_____
==> //*_____
==> //*_____

The following data set names are used by one or more of the generated job

Message library name ==> OPC.SEQMSG0_____
Data library name    ==> DEV.DATA_____
Parameter library    ==> CCOPC.OPCA.PARM_____
Checkpoint data set  ==> CCOPC.OPCA.CKPT_____
Press ENTER to continue

```

The data set names that you specify on this panel must be completely qualified and not be enclosed within quotes.

Sample job JCL

Required. Name of the library to which you want that the generated JCL samples are written. The library must be allocated before you generate the batch JCL samples. Ensure that the library that you specify has sufficient directory blocks to store all the sample members that are generated by EQQJOBS (for details, see [Table 18: Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 76](#).)

Batch-job skeletons

Required. Name of the library where the JCL skeletons are to be stored (either a new library that you create or an existing JCL skeletons library). Before you submit the batch jobs, allocate this library to the ISPSLIB DD statement in the TSO session of dialog users. For a description about how to set up the dialog, see [Step 12. Setting up the ISPF environment on page 150](#).

Job statement information

Required. The JOB statement that follows standard JCL syntax and your installation standards.

Message library name

Required. Name of the library that contains the IBM Z Workload Scheduler messages (SMP/E target DDNAME SEQMSG0).

Data library name

Required. Name of the library that will contain the SSL certificates provided with IBM Z Workload Scheduler. For detailed information about these certificates, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.

Parameter library

Required. Name of the library that will contain the initialization statements. This library will be allocated by the EQQPCS01 batch job.

Checkpoint data set

Required. Name of the checkpoint data set. This library will be allocated by the EQQPCS01 batch job.

2. Press Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 13. EQQJOBS4 - Create sample job JCL

```

EQQJOBS4 ----- CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL -----
Command ==>

Enter the following required job stream parameters:

non-VSAM dsn prefix  ==> CCOPC.OPCA-----
VSAM dsn prefix     ==> CCOPC.OPCAV-----
Unit name          ==> 3390-----      Default unit name
Primary volume serial ==> PROD01-----  Primary volume serial for VSAM
Backup volume serial ==> PROD02-----  Secondary volume serial for VSAM
SYSOUT class       ==> *-----        SYSOUT class for reports

The following information is optional:

STEPLIB dsname      ==>
OPC.SEQQLMD0-----
VSAMCAT dsname      ==>

-----
VSAM password       ==> -----
Dsn prefix of old   ==> -----
VSAM files          ==> CCOPC.OPCAV-----
non-VSAM files      ==> CCOPC.OPCA-----
Samples with cloning support generated: N (Y/N)

Static symbol used  ==> SYSCONE without enclosing '&' and period

Press ENTER to continue

```

non-VSAM dsn prefix

Required. The qualifiers that prefix the non-VSAM data set names. IBM Z Workload Scheduler adds a low-level qualifier to the prefix to uniquely identify the non-VSAM data sets. For example, it adds EV for the event data set. In this example, the full name is CCOPC.OPCA.EV.



Note: IBM Z Workload Scheduler does not use the prefix for the parameter library or checkpoint data set. You specified the names of these data sets in the previous panel.

VSAM dsn prefix

Required. The qualifiers that prefix the VSAM data set names. IBM Z Workload Scheduler adds a low-level qualifier to the prefix to uniquely identify each IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data set. For example, it adds AD for the application description data set. In this example, the complete name is CCOPC.OPCAV.AD.

Unit name

Required. The device name that is valid at your installation; it can be a device type, for example 3380, or a group name, for example PROD or TEST.

Primary volume serial

Required. The volume to be used by sample job EQQPCS01 to allocate the primary data sets. Some IBM Z Workload Scheduler logical files are implemented as two physical data sets, a primary and an alternate; for example, the current plan data set. To minimize the potential impact of errors on a particular device, allocate the primary and alternate data sets on different physical devices.

SYSOUT Class

Required. The SYSOUT class that you want to use for the reports that are generated by the sample jobs.

STEPLIB dsname

Optional. Name of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load module library, if the load modules are not in a data set included in an active LNKST member.

VSAMCAT dsname

Optional. Name of a catalog in which VSAM data sets are to be defined, if they are not to be defined in the master catalog.

VSAM password

Optional. The password for the VSAM catalog, if the catalog is password-protected.

VSAM files

Optional. The qualifiers that prefix your existing IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data set names. These are used to create the data set-conversion sample JCL.

non-VSAM files

Optional. The qualifiers that prefix your existing IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data set names. These are used to create the data set-conversion sample JCL.

Samples with cloning support generated

Optional. Enter Y if you want the SYSCONE variable resolved.

**Note:**

- a. Generated JCLs do not contain a period before &SYSCONE.
- b. &SYSCONE variable is intended to be substituted in the scheduler started tasks. It is not substituted in the generated JCLs that run as batch jobs. To obtain the variable substitution, run the JCL as cataloged procedure.

3. Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 14. EQQJOBS8 - Create sample job JCL

```

EQQJOBS8 ----- CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL -----
Command ==>

RESTART AND CLEANUP (Data Store)      Y      (Y= Yes ,N= No)
Reserved destination      ==> OPCX_____
Connection type           ==> SNA          (SNA/XCF/TCP)
SNA Data Store luname     ==> I9PC45AA    (only for SNA connection )
SNA FN task luname       ==> I9PC45RA    (only for SNA connection )
Xcf Group                 ==> _____ (only for XCF connection )
Xcf Data Store member     ==> _____ (only for XCF connection )
Xcf FL task member        ==> _____ (only for XCF connection )
TCP Data store host name: ==> _____ (only for TCP connection )
==>
TCP Data store port number ==> _____ (only for TCP connection )
Press ENTER to continue

```

RESTART AND CLEANUP (Data Store)

Specify Y if you want to use the Restart and Cleanup function.



Note: The panel shown in [Figure 14: EQQJOBS8 - Create sample job JCL on page 71](#) creates only one sample entry, but you can define all kinds of connections, including a combination of mixed connections.

Reserved destination

The destination reserved for Data Store output. It must be the same as that for controller and Data Store parameters.

Connection type

Required. The connection method used to handle communication between FN/FL tasks and Data Store. It can be SNA, TCP, or XCF.

SNA Data Store luname

If you set SNA in Connection type, specify the Data Store VTAM® connection name.

SNA FN task luname

If you set SNA in Connection type, specify the VTAM® application name of the controller FN task.

Xcf Group

If you set XCF in Connection type, specify the name of the XCF group.

Xcf Data Store member

If you set XCF in Connection type, specify the name of the Data Store XCF member.

Xcf FL task member

If you set XCF in Connection type, specify the name of the controller FL task XCF member.

TCP Data store host name

If you set TCP in Connection type, the Data Store TCP/IP host name.

TCP Data store port number

If you set TCP in Connection type, the Data Store TCP/IP port number.

4. Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 15. EQQJOBS9 - Create sample job JCL

```

EQQJOBS9 ----- CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL -----
Command ==>

  JAVA UTILITIES ENABLEMENT:  Y      (Y= Yes ,N= No)
  Installation Directory      ==> /usr/lpp/TWS/V9R5M0-----
                               ==> -----
  Java Directory              ==> /usr/lpp/java/J5.6-----
                               ==> -----
  Work Directory              ==> /var/TWS/inst-----
                               ==> -----
  User ID                     ==> UID-----
  Group ID                    ==> GID-----

  JZOS Batch Launcher
  PDSE Library                 ==> -----
  Load Module Name            ==> JVMLDMnn-----

Press ENTER to continue

```

JAVA UTILITIES ENABLEMENT

Specify Y to enable one or all the following features:

- Dynamic Workload Console reporting.
- Event-driven workload automation feature for data set triggering.

Installation Directory

The directory, with its complete path, where the product specific HFS or ZFS files are stored. This path corresponds to the path where the binary files are located, omitting the `/bin` subdirectory.

Java™ Directory

The HFS or ZFS directory where the Java™ Software Development Kit (SDK) for z/OS® is installed.

Work Directory

The directory where the subsystem specific HFS or ZFS files are stored. Each subsystem supporting the JAVA utility must have its own work directory.

User ID

The UNIX™ System Services user ID.

Group ID

The UNIX™ System Services group ID.

JZOS Batch Launcher PDSE Library

The PDSE that contains the JZOS Batch Launcher JVMLDM module.

JZOS Batch Launcher Load Module Name

Specify JVMLDM nn , meaning the JZOS Batch Launcher load module name used with the 64-bit SDK for z/OS® supported version.

5. Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 16. EQQJOBSC - Create sample job JCL

```

EQQJOBSC ----- CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL -----
Command ==>

  OUTPUT COLLECTOR          (Y= Yes ,N= No)
    Class                   ==> -----
    Writer                   ==> -----

  MLOG SWITCH               (Y= Yes ,N= No)
    Switchlimit             ==> ----- (0 , nnnn)

  EXTENDED AUDITING         ==> _      (Y= Yes ,N= No)

  STEP AWARENES             Y          (Y= Yes ,N= No)
    Store on primary controller ==> Y    (Y= Yes ,N= No) forced to N if
                                           Step Awareness is N

Press ENTER to continue

```

OUTPUT COLLECTOR

If you plan to use the Output collector started task to collect job logs from IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agents, specify Y to generate the related samples.

Class

Name of the JES CLASS where the job logs are to be copied by Output collector. If you do not specify this value, no JESCLASS keyword is recorded in the generated EQQOUCP sample; you can define it later in the OUCOPTS initialization statement (for details about OUCOPTS, see *Customization and Tuning*).

Writer

Name of the user ID associated with the WRITER task used to copy the job logs to the JES SYSOUT. If you do not specify this value, no WRITER keyword is recorded in the generated EQQOUCP sample; you can define it later in the OUCOPTS initialization statement (for details about OUCOPTS, see *Customization and Tuning*).

MLOG SWITCH

Enter Y if you plan to use the message log (MLOG) switching function, which automatically switches to a second MLOG file when the first one reaches the number of records specified in `Switchlimit`. Specify Y to generate the related samples.

See also [Using two message log \(MLOG\) data sets on page 49](#).

Switchlimit

The number of records that must be present in the MLOG file to activate the switching function. When this number is reached, the switching function activates an alternate MLOG file and archives the records of the first MLOG file into a GDG data set. You can also use the OPCOPTS SWITCHMLOGLIM parameter to specify or modify this number after the product is installed.

Note that unless you specify a positive number of records, the function is not activated, even if you specified Y in the MLOG SWITCH field. The maximum possible value is 999 999 999 records.

See also [Using two message log \(MLOG\) data sets on page 49](#).

EXTENDED AUDITING

Specify YES to activate the extended auditing feature. This value is meaningful only if you have set AMOUNT(EXTENDED) in the AUDIT statement of the controller (for details, see *Customization and Tuning*).

By activating the extended auditing feature, the EQQPCS14 sample creates the EQQDBnn, EQQDBARC, and EQQDBOUT data sets. EQQDBnn and EQQDBARC are added to the controller started-task. EQQDBARC and EQQDBOUT are added to the DP batch job.

STEP AWARENESS

Specify YES to have the tracker generate a list of the step events related to the jobs you run, and send it to the primary controller. The primary controller logs the step list, without storing it. If a backup controller exists, the primary controller sends the list to the backup controller, where the information is stored.

Store on primary controller

Specify YES to store the list of step events also on the primary controller. This option can affect the controller performance.

6. Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 17. EQQJOBSD - Create sample job JCL

```

EQQJOBSD ----- CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL -----
Command ==>

CDP LOG INTEGRATION ENABLEMENT:      Y  (Y= Yes ,N= No)
HFS Path for log files                ==> /u/cdplog-----
Switch CDP log limit                  ==> 12000 (1, nnnnnnnn)
      (Switch limit is an integer representing the number of records to be
      written in current LOG before to switch to the second, default is 1000)

BKPT configuration                     N      (Y= Yes ,N= No)
Backup data set name                  ==> TWSZ.INST.BKPT-----

BKPTOPTS statement procedure names:
DUMP Procedures for:
NCP, NCX, NXD Files                  ==> -----          CX, CP1, XD1 Files      ==> -----
LTP File                             ==> -----          CX, CP2, XD2 Files      ==> -----

RESTORE Procedures:
NCP, NCX, NXD Files                  ==> -----          CX, CP1, XD1 Files      ==> -----
LTP File                             ==> -----          CX, CP2, XD2 Files      ==> -----

Press ENTER to create sample job JCL.

```

CDP LOG INTEGRATION ENABLEMENT

Enter Y to enable the logging of data in the EQQCDP1 and EQQCDP2 log files, which are read by IBM® Common Data Provider for z Systems (CDP) if you configure it to integrate with IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

HFS Path for log files

The complete path to the EQQCDP1 and EQQCDP2 log files (up to 40 alphanumeric characters). It must be existent in the HFS file system.

Switch CDP log limit

How many records must be written in the CDP log, before the CDP log switching function is started.

The CDP log switching function stops the running CDP log file, and starts the alternate CDP log file. The alternate CDP log file records upcoming messages until the log limit value is reached again, and the process is repeated.

The default is 1000. Valid values are between 1 and 999 999 999.

BKPT configuration

Specify Y to enable the backup controller configuration.

Backup data set name

Required. The name of the backup data set.

DUMP Procedures for NCP, NCX, NXD Files

Name of the dump procedure for NCP, NCX, and NXD files. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQSENCNCP is used.

DUMP Procedures for CX, CP1, XD1 Files

Name of the dump procedure for CX, CP1, XD1, and ST files. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQSECP1 is used.

DUMP Procedures for CX, CP2, XD2 File

Name of the dump procedure for CX, CP2, XD2, and ST files. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQSECP2 is used.

DUMP Procedures for LTP Files

Name of the dump procedure for the LTP file. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQSENLT is used.

RESTORE Procedures for NCP, NCX, NXD Files

Name of the restore procedure for NCP, NCX, and NXD files. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQRENCNCP is used.

RESTORE Procedures for CX, CP1, XD1 Files

Name of the restore procedure for CX, CP1, XD1, and ST files. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQRECP1 is used.

RESTORE Procedures for CX, CP2, XD2 Files

Name of the restore procedure for CX, CP2, XD2, and ST files. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQRECP2 is used.

RESTORE Procedures for LTP File

Name of the restore procedure for the LTP file. If you do not specify any value, the default EQQRESLT is used.

7. After you have entered the information on panel EQQJOBSD, click Enter. The dialog process generates several members in the output library that you specified. These members, which are described in [Table 18: Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 76](#), will be used at various stages of the installation.

Table 18. Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog

Member	Description of job
EQQ9SM01	Updates the RACF® router table (ICHRFR01).
EQQ9SMDE	Updates the RACF® class-descriptor table (ICHRRCDE).
EQQAUDIB	Sample to invoke EQQAUDIT in batch mode outside of the dialog.  Note: EQQAUDIB is used only if you specified a value for the EQQTROUT dsname and the EQQAUDIT output dsn fields in the EQQJOBBSA panel.
EQQBENCR	Sample JCL to run the utility that encrypts the Windows™ passwords set in the USRPSW parameter of the USRREC statements.
EQQBSCAN	Uses the batch loader to scan an Application Description.
EQQBSUBS	Uses the batch loader to create the Application Descriptions and Operator Instructions.

Table 18. Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog (continued)

Member	Description of job
EQQBVSAM	Deletes and defines an Application Description data set and creates an Application Description and Operator Instructions, by using the batch loader.
EQQCONOP	Sample initial parameters for the controller only.
EQQCONO	Sample started task procedure for the controller only.
EQQCONP	Sample initial parameters for a controller and tracker in same address space.
EQQCON	Sample started task procedure for a controller and tracker in same address space.
EQQDBENC	Contains the JCL to encrypt the password in the DBOPT statement.
EQQDBOPT	Sample DBOPT statement.
EQQDPCOP	JCL and usage notes for copy VSAM function.
EQQFLWAT	Sample JCL to call filewatch utility to monitor HFS or ZFS file changes.
EQQICNVS	Migrates VSAM files.
EQQJES2	Assembles and link-edits the JES2 EXIT7.
EQQJER2U	Restores the EXIT7 as a JES2 usermod.
EQQJER2V	Restores the EXIT51 as a JES2 usermod.
EQQJER3U	Restores the EQQUX191 and EQQUX291 as JES3 usermods.
EQQJER3Z	Restore the EQQUX291 as JES3 usermod.
EQQJES21	Assembles and link-edits the JES2 EXIT51.
EQQJES2U	Installs the JES2 EXIT7 usermod.
EQQJES2V	Installs the JES2 EXIT51 usermod.
EQQJES3	Assembles and link-edits a JES3 exit.
EQQJES3U	Installs the JES3 usermod.
EQQJES3Z	Installs the EQQUX291 as JES3 usermod.
EQQMTWSO	Migrates TWSOU data set size for extended job names from lrecl 120 to lrecl 160.
EQQOUC	Sample started task procedure for the Output collector.
EQQOUCH	Sample header template for job logs.
EQQOUCP	Sample initial parameters for the Output collector.
EQQPCS01	Allocates unique data sets within the sysplex.
EQQPCS02	Allocates non-unique data sets.

Table 18. Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog (continued)

Member	Description of job
EQQPCS03	Generates a job that allocates VSAM copy data set.
EQQPCS07	Allocates VSAM data sets for Restart and Cleanup.
EQQPCS08	Allocates USS files for Java™ utilities enablement.
EQQPCS09	Allocates the GDG root and VSAM data set used as input by the archiving process supporting the Dynamic Workload Console reporting feature.
EQQPCS10	Creates the SSL work directory used for TCP/IP communication with the controller.
EQQPCS11	Allocates data sets (EQQOUCV on page 140 and EQQOUCKP on page 140) used for the retrieval of job logs in the z-centric environment with the Output collector.
EQQPCS12	Allocates the GDG root to archive the MLOG files.
EQQPCS13	Allocates the GDG root to send and restore procedures.
EQQPCS14	Allocates the data sets for the extended auditing.
EQQRECP1	Restore procedure for CX, CP1, XD1, ST files.
EQQRECP2	Restore procedure for CX, CP2, XD2, ST files.
EQQRENC	Restore procedure for NCP, NCX, NXD files.
EQQRESLT	Restore procedure for LTP files.
EQQREPRO	Is invoked by EQQSMLOG to copy the contents of the outgoing MLOG file onto the GDG data set. You must copy this sample to the PARMLIB of the controller.
EQQRAD	Restore procedure for the Application Description.
EQQRJS1	Restore procedure for the primary JCL repository.
EQQRJS2	Restore procedure for the secondary JCL repository.
EQQROI	Restore procedure for the Operator Instructions.
EQQRRD	Restore procedure for the Resource Description.
EQQRSI	Restore procedure for the Side Information file.
EQQRWS	Restore procedure for the Workstation Description.
EQQSAD	Send procedure for the Application Description.
EQQSAMPI	Copies sample databases from the sample library to VSAM data sets.
EQQSECP1	Dump procedure for CX, CP1, XD1, ST files.
EQQSECP2	Dump procedure for CX, CP2, XD2, ST files.

Table 18. Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog (continued)

Member	Description of job
EQQSENC	Dump procedure for NCP, NCX, NXD files.
EQQSENLT	Dump procedure for LTP files.
EQQSERP	Sample initial parameters for a Server.
EQQSER	Sample started task procedure for a Server.
EQQSJS1	Send procedure for the primary JCL repository.
EQQSJS2	Send procedure for the secondary JCL repository.
EQQSMF	Updates SMF exits for IBM Z Workload Scheduler.
EQQSMLOG	Sample procedure that creates the GDG data set where the outgoing MLOG file is archived when the MLOG switching function takes effect. Uses the EQQREPRO input parameter.
EQQSOI	Send procedure for the Operator Instructions.
EQQSRD	Send procedure for the Resource Description.
EQQSSI	Send procedure for the Side Information file.
EQQSW	Send procedure for the Workstation Description.
EQQTRA	Sample started task procedure for a tracker.
EQQTRAP	Sample initial parameters for a tracker.
EQQTROPT	Sample TRGOPT statement.

Generating batch-job skeletons

To ensure that all files are correctly allocated, you must generate the batch-job skeletons before creating the sample job JCL.

Several Z controller functions, such as daily planning, are performed by batch jobs that are submitted from the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog. To generate the skeleton JCL for these jobs:

1. From the EQQJOBS main menu, select option 2. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 18. EQQJOBS1 - Generate IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch-job skeletons

```

EQQJOBS1 ----- GENERATE BATCH-JOB SKELETONS -----
Command ==>

Enter the name of the output library. This should be a fully qualified
data set name without any enclosing apostrophes. This library should be
allocated to ISPSLIB.

Batch-job skeletons ==> CCOPC.OPCA.JCLSKELS_____

The following data set names are used by one or more of the generated job
You can specify an asterisk (*) to indicate the name of the subsystem.

Message library name ==> OPC.SEQMSG0_____
Parameter library    ==> CCOPC.*.PARM_____
Member in parameter  ==> BATCHOPT_____
library              ==> BATCHOPT_____
Checkpoint data set  ==> CCOPC.*.CKPT_____

Press ENTER to continue

```

Batch-job skeletons

Required. Name of the library where the JCL skeletons are to be stored. Before you use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog to submit batch jobs, allocate this library to the ISPSLIB DD statement in the TSO session of dialog users.

For detailed information about how you set up the dialog, see [The ISPF environment on page 196](#).

You can create a new library for the skeleton JCL members or put them in an existing skeleton-JCL library.

In the following fields, you can enter &XOPCNM. as one of the qualifiers for the data set names. This is an ISPF variable that is stored in the profile and is the same variable that you specify in option 0.1 (SUBSYSTEM NAME) in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialogs. When a skeleton is then used by a dialog of the scheduler, &XOPCNM. is substituted with the name of the scheduler subsystem that is being used.

Ensure that &XOPCNM. ends with a period if it is not the low-level qualifier. For example, you could enter CCOPC.&XOPCNM..PARMLIB but CCOPC.&XOPCNM.PARMLIB results in a JCL error.

If you enter an asterisk (*) as a data set qualifier, the generated skeletons will contain &XOPCNM. in place of the asterisk.

Message library name

Required. Name of the library that contains the IBM Z Workload Scheduler messages (SMP/E target DD name SEQMSG0).

Parameter library

Required. Name of the library where to store the initialization statements.

Member in parameter library

Required. Name of a member in the parameter library where to store the BATCHOPT initialization statement. The IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch jobs will use this member. If you have not already

created the BATCHOPT statement, you can still generate the batch skeletons, but remember to create a member with the same name when you create the initialization statements.

Checkpoint data set

Required. Name of the checkpoint data set.

2. Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 19. EQQJOBS2 - Generate IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch-job skeletons

```

EQQJOBS2 ----- GENERATE BATCH-JOB SKELETONS -----
Command ==>

Enter the following required job stream parameters:
Non-VSAM dsn prefix ==> CCOPC.*-----

VSAM dsn prefix      ==> CCOPC.*V-----
Unit name            ==> 3390_____ Default unit name
Unit name (temp ds) ==> SYSDA_____ Unit name for temporary data sets
Unit name (sort ds) ==> SYSDA_____ Unit name for sort work data sets
SYSOUT class         ==> *_____ SYSOUT class for reports

The following information is optional:

STEPLIB dsname       ==> OPC.SEQQLMD0-----
STEPCLCAT dsname     ==> _____
EQQMLOG dsname       ==> CCOPC.*.MLOGBAT-----

-----
The following information is REQUIRED WITH DBCS support:

KJSRTBL dsname       ==> _____

Press ENTER to generate OPC batch-job skeletons

```

Non-VSAM dsn prefix

Required. Enter the qualifiers that prefix the non-VSAM data set names. IBM Z Workload Scheduler adds a low-level qualifier to the prefix to uniquely identify the non-VSAM data sets. For example, it adds JTARC for the job-tracking archive data set. If the subsystem name is OPCA, the data set name will be CCOPC.OPCA.JTARC when the skeleton is used by the dialogs.

VSAM dsn prefix

Required. Enter the qualifiers to prefix the VSAM data set names. IBM Z Workload Scheduler adds a low-level qualifier to the prefix to uniquely identify each IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data set. For example, it adds WS for the workstation description data set. If the subsystem name is OPCA, the data set name will be CCOPC.OPCAV.WS when the skeleton is used by the dialogs.

Unit name

Required. Enter a device name that is valid at your installation. This can be a device type, for example 3380, or a group name, for example PROD or TEST.

Unit name (temp ds)

Required. Enter a device name that can be used for temporary data sets.

Unit name (sort ds)

Required. Enter a device name that can be used for sort-work data sets.

SYSOUT class

Required. Specify the SYSOUT class that you want to use for the reports that are generated by the batch jobs.

STEPLIB dsname

Optional. Name of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load module library if the load modules are not in a data set included in an active LNKLST member.

STEPDAT dsname

Optional. Name of a private catalog if one or more data sets cannot be reached through the master catalog. To customize the EQQAUDNS skeleton clist with the appropriate loadlib that should be referenced when audit/debug is invoked, you must specify the dsname.

EQQMLOG dsname

Optional. Name of a message log data set if messages are not sent to SYSOUT. This must not be the same data set that is used by a tracker, controller, or standby controller.

KJSRTBL dsname

Required if you use the Japanese language feature. Name of the data set to be used when sorting fields containing DBCS data.

- Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 20. EQQJOBBSA - Generate IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch-job skeletons

```

EQQJOBBSA ----- GENERATE BATCH-JOB SKELETONS -----
Command ==>
Specify if you want to use the following optional features:

  RESTART AND CLEAN UP (DATA STORE):      Y      (Y= Yes ,N= No)
  (To be able to retrieve joblog,
  execute data set clean up actions and step restart)

  FORMATTED REPORT OF TRACKLOG EVENTS:    N      (Y= Yes ,N= No)
  EQQTROUT dsname                        ==> -----
  EQQAUDIT output dsn                    ==> -----

  JAVA UTILITIES ENABLEMENT:              N      (Y= Yes ,N= No)
  Work Directory                         ==> /var/TWS/inst-----
                                         ==> -----
                                         ==> -----

  JZOS PDSE Library                      ==> -----
  JZOS Load Module Name                   ==> JVMLDMnn-----
  REXX SYSEXEC dsname                     ==> OPC.SEQQMISC-----
  Input XML dsname for                    ==> TWS.EVLIB.XML($$$$$$)-----
  data set triggering

Press ENTER to generate OPC batch-job skeletons

```

RESTART AND CLEAN UP (Data Store)

Specify Y if you want to use the Restart and Cleanup feature.

FORMATTED REPORT OF TRACKING EVENTS

Specify Y if you want to use the feature that produces a formatted report of the tracklog events.

EQQTROUT dsnname

Optional. Name of the data set in which DP Extend and Replan writes tracklog events. Leave blank if you want the corresponding DD card for these jobs to specify DUMMY as in previous releases. Type out if you plan to use sample EQQAUDIB (see [Table 18: Sample JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 76](#)).

EQQAUDIT output dsn

Name of the data set where the EQQAUDIT output is to be written. Required if FORMATTED REPORT OF TRACKLOG EVENTS is set to Y.

Work Directory

Directory where the subsystem specific HFS or ZFS files are stored. Each subsystem supporting the JAVA utility must have its own work directory.

JZOS PDSE Library

The PDSE containing the JZOS Batch Launcher JVMLDM module.

JZOS Load Module Name

Specify JVMLDM*nn*, meaning the JZOS Batch Launcher load module name used with the 64-bit SDK for z/OS® supported version.

REXX™ SYSEXEC dsnname

The installation SEQQMISC library containing the REXX™ programs EQQRXARC and EQQRXTRG.

Input XML dsnname for data set triggering

Name of the input data set containing the event rules in XML format used to produce the data set triggering configuration files that will be sent to trackers. The default data set is provided in the panel.



Note: In controller MLOG dsn, EQQTROUT dsnname, and EQQAUDIT output dsn you can use an asterisk (*) for the subsystem name. It will be replaced with the current subsystem name when the dialog is invoked.

4. After you have entered the information on panel EQQJOBSA, click Enter. The dialog generates the batch-job skeleton members.

After completing this procedure, you can proceed with the creation of the sample job JCL, as described in [Creating the sample job JCL on page 68](#).

If you are not sure at this stage what some of the values will be, it does not matter. You can rerun the dialog as many times as you want to regenerate the skeletons. You can also edit the generated skeletons manually.

[Table 19: Controller skeleton JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 84](#) shows the JCL skeleton members generated by EQQJOBS:

Table 19. Controller skeleton JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog

Member	Batch job description
EQQADCDS	Application cross-reference of conditional dependencies.
EQQADCOS	Calculate and print run dates of an application.
EQQADDES	Application cross-reference of external dependencies.
EQQADPRS	Application print program.
EQQADXRS	Application cross-reference program.
EQQADX1S	Application cross-reference of selected fields.
EQQAMUPS	Application description mass update.
EQQAPARS	Procedure to gather diagnostic information.
EQQAUDIS	Extract and format job tracking events (batch invocation).
EQQAUDNS	Extract and format job tracking events (interactive invocation)  Note: Ensure to copy this member from the library where it was created by EQQJOBS into a procedure library. This step is required since this member must be invoked interactively.
EQQDBARS	Daily Planning - Historical run data archiver for Dynamic Workload Console reporting feature.
EQQDPEXS	Daily planning - plan next period.
EQQDPPRS	Daily planning - print current period results.
EQQDPRCS	Daily planning - replan current period.
EQQDPSJS	Daily planning -DBCS sort step.
EQQDPSTS	Daily planning - normal sort step.
EQQDPTRS	Daily planning - plan a trial period.
EQQJVPRS	Print JCL variable tables.
EQQLEXTS	Long-term planning - extend the long-term plan.
EQQLMOAS	Long-term planning - modify all occurrences.
EQQLMOOS	Long-term planning - modify one occurrence.
EQQLPRAS	Long-term planning - print all occurrences.
EQQLPRTS	Long-term planning - print one occurrence.
EQQLTRES	Long-term planning - create the long-term plan.

Table 19. Controller skeleton JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog (continued)

Member	Batch job description
EQQLTRYS	Long-term planning - trial.
EQQOIBAS	Operator instructions - batch program.
EQQOIBLS	Operator instructions - batch input from a sequential data set.
EQQTPRPS	Print periods.
EQQTPRTS	Print calendars.
EQQTRBLS	Event driven workload automation - Create configuration files for data set triggering
EQQWPRTS	Print workstation descriptions.

Generating Data Store samples

To create the Data Store samples, perform the following steps:

1. From the EQQJOBS application menu, select option 3. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 21. EQQJOBS5 - Create Data Store samples

```

EQQJOBS5 ----- CREATE DATA STORE SAMPLES -----
Command ==>

The data set names specified on this panel should be fully qualified
names without any enclosing apostrophes.

Enter the name of the output library:
Sample job JCL          ==> CCOPC.OPCA.JCLDS_____

Job statement information:
==> //SYSPROG1 JOB (111111,2222),'OPCESA BATCH',CLASS=B,MSGCLASS=H,__
==> //          MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=SYSPROG_____
==> _____
==> _____

The following data set names are used by one or more of the generated jobs.
Message library name ==> OPC.SEQMSG0_____
Parameter library   ==> CCOPC.OPCEDS.PARM_____

Press ENTER to continue

```

Sample job JCL

Required. Name of the library to which you want the generated Data Store samples written. The library must be allocated before you generate the Data Store samples. Ensure that the library that you specify has sufficient directory blocks to store all the sample members that are generated by EQQJOBS (see [Table 20: Data Store samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 88](#)).

Job statement information

Required. The JOB statement that follows standard JCL syntax and your installation standards.

Message library name

Required. Name of the library where to store the scheduler messages (SMP/E target DDNAME SEQQMSG0).

Parameter library

Required. Name of the library where to store the initialization statements. Use a name different from that of the controller and tracker parameter library. Ensure that this library is allocated.

2. Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 22. EQQJOBS6 - Create Data Store samples

```

EQQJOBS6 ----- CREATE DATA STORE SAMPLES -----
Command ==>

Enter the following required job stream parameters:
Non-VSAM dsn prefix   ==> CCOPC.OPCA-----
VSAM dsn prefix      ==> CCOPC.OPCAV-----
Unit name           ==> 3390_____ Default unit name
Primary volume serial ==> PROD01_____ Primary volume serial for VSAM

The following information is optional:
STEPLIB dsname       ==> OPC.SEQQLMD0-----
VSAMCAT dsname       ==> -----
VSAM password        ==> -----

Press ENTER to continue

```

Non-VSAM dsn prefix

Required. The qualifiers that prefix the non-VSAM data set names. The scheduler adds a low-level qualifier to the prefix to uniquely identify each Data Store non-VSAM data set.

VSAM dsn prefix

Required. The qualifiers that prefix the VSAM data set names. The scheduler adds a low-level qualifier to the prefix to uniquely identify each Data Store VSAM data set.

Unit name

Required. A device name that is valid at your installation. This could be a device type, for example 3390, or a group name, for example PROD or TEST.

Primary volume serial

Required. The volume that will be used by sample job EQQPCS04 to allocate the primary data sets.

STEPLIB dsname

Optional. Name of the scheduler load module library, if the load modules are not in a data set included in an active LNKLIST member.

VSAMCAT dsname

Optional. Name of a catalog in which VSAM data sets are to be defined, if they are not to be defined in the master catalog.

VSAM password

Optional. The password for the VSAM catalog, if the catalog is password-protected.

3. Click Enter. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 23. EQQJOBS7 - Create Data Store samples

```

EQQJOBS7 ----- CREATE DATA STORE SAMPLES -----
Command ==>

Enter the parameters to build DSTOPTS and DSTUTIL options samples:

Reserved destination      ==> OPCX_____
Connection type           ==> SNA (SNA/XCF/TCP)
SNA Data Store luname     ==> I9PC45AA (only for SNA connection)
SNA Controller luname     ==> I9PC45RA (only for SNA connection)
Xcf Group                 ==> _____ (only for XCF connection)
Xcf Data Store member     ==> _____ (only for XCF connection)
Xcf FL task member        ==> _____ (only for XCF connection)
TCP Controller host name: ==> _____ (only for TCP connection)
==> _____
TCP Controller port number ==> _____ (only for TCP connection)
Jobdata ret. period       ==> 2_ (number of days)
JobLog retrieval          ==> Y (Y/N)
Max n. lines to store     ==> 0_____
JobLog ret. period        ==> 5_ (number of days)

Press ENTER to create sample job JCL

```

Reserved destination

Required. The Data Store reserved output destination. It must correspond to the DSTDEST parameter set in RCLOPTS option.

Connection Type

Required. The connection method used to establish the communication between FN/FL tasks and Data Store. It can be TCP, SNA, or XCF.

SNA Data Store luname

The Data Store VTAM® application name, if SNA connection type has been set.

SNA Controller luname

The controller FN task VTAM® application name, if SNA connection type has been set.

Xcf Group

Name of XCF group, if XCF connection type has been chosen.

Xcf Data Store member

Name of Data Store XCF member, if XCF connection type has been chosen.

Xcf FL task member

Name of the FL task XCF member, if XCF connection type has been chosen.

Job data retention period

The Data Store structured information retention period. It consists of the interval in days used by the online cleanup and is necessary to be able to use the Restart and Cleanup feature.

Joblog retrieval

Specify if the joblog retrieval must be enabled. This means that the Data Store will save the unstructured data in the joblog.

Max n. of lines to store

The maximum number of user sysout lines to be stored. The range is 0 to 10000.

Joblog retention period

The Data Store unstructured information retention period. It consists of the interval in days used by the online cleanup and is necessary to enable the Joblog Browse function.

TCP Controller host name

The controller TCP/IP host name, if you set TCP in Connection type.

TCP Controller port number

The controller TCP/IP port number, if you set TCP in Connection type.

4. Click Enter after you have entered the information on panel EQQJOBS7. The dialog now generates several members in the output library that you specified. These members, which are described in [Table 20: Data Store samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 88](#), are used at various stages of the installation:

Table 20. Data Store samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog

Member	Sample Description
EQQCLEAN	Sample procedure invoking EQQCLEAN program
EQQDSCL	Batch Clean Up sample
EQQDSCLP	Batch Clean up sample parameters
EQQDSEX	Batch Export sample
EQQDSEXP	Batch Export sample parameters
EQQDSIM	Batch Import sample
EQQDSIMP	Batch Import sample parameters
EQQDSRG	Batch sample reorg
EQQDSRI	Batch Recovery index
EQQDSRIP	Batch Recovery index parameters
EQQDST	Sample procedure to start Data Store
EQQDSTP	Parameters for sample procedure to start Data Store
EQQPCS04	Allocate VSAM data sets for Data Store

Creating the Workload Automation Programming Language samples

To create the Workload Automation Programming Language samples, perform the following steps:

1. From the EQQJOBS application menu, select option 4. The following panel is displayed:

Figure 24. EQQJOBSE - Create WAPL samples

```

EQQJOBSE ----- CREATE WAPL SAMPLES -----
Command ==>

The data set names specified on this panel must be fully qualified
without any enclosing apostrophes.

Enter the name of the output library:

Sample job JCL          ==> TWS.INST.EQQJOBS_____

The following data set names are used by one or more of the generated job
WAPL data maps          ==> TWS.INST.SEQQWAPL_____
MISC library name       ==> TWS.INST.SEQQMISC_____
Message library name    ==> TWS.INST.SEQQMSG0_____
Steplib                 ==> _____
REXX libraries          ==> _____
ISPF Messages           ==> ISP.SISPMENU_____
ISPF Panels             ==> ISP.SISPMENU_____
ISPF Skeletons          ==> ISP.SISPMENU_____
ISPF Tables             ==> ISP.SISPMENU_____
SYSOUT Class of Internal Reader ==> _
CSSMTP External Writer  ==> _____

Subsys ==> TWSR___ Language ==> EN__ Version ==> _____

Press ENTER to continue

```

The data set names that you specify on this panel must be completely qualified and not be enclosed within quotes.

Sample job JCL

Required. The complete name of the library where to store the generated Workload Automation Programming Language samples. The library must be allocated before you generate the Workload Automation Programming Language samples. Ensure that the library has enough directory blocks to store all the sample members that are generated by EQQJOBS (for details, see [Table 21: Workload Automation Programming Language samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 90](#)).

WAPL data maps

Required. The installation SEQQWAPL library containing the Workload Automation Programming Language data maps.

MISC library

Required. The installation SEQQMISC library containing the REXX Workload Automation Programming Language programs.

Message library name

Required. Name of the library where to store the IBM Z Workload Scheduler messages (SMP/E target DDNAME SEQQMSG0).

Steplib

Optional. Name of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load module library, if the load modules are not in a data set included in an active LNKLIST member.

REXX Libraries

Optional. Name of the IBM Compiler Library for REXX/370. This is either the compiler run time library (SEAGLPA) if you have the REXX compiler installed, or the REXX alternative library (SEAGALT) if you do not have the compiler installed. You must specify the name of the REXX library only if neither of these libraries are included in an active LNKLIST member.



Note: Workload Automation Programming Language processing is significantly faster with the SEAGLPA library.

ISPF Messages

The ISPF messages library.

ISPF Panels

The ISPF panels library.

ISPF Skeletons

The ISPF skeletons library.

ISPF Tables

The ISPF tables library.

SYSOUT Class of Internal Reader

Class of the internal reader for SMTP emails.

CSSMTP External Writer

Writer for SMTP emails through z/OS.

Subsys

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem.

Language

The Workload Automation Programming Language language. Only English (EN) is supported.

Version

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler version.

Table 21. Workload Automation Programming Language samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog

Member	Sample Description
EQQILSON	Workload Automation Programming Language procedure to load the output file into ISPF.

Table 21. Workload Automation Programming Language samples generated by the EQQJOBS dialog (continued)

Member	Sample Description
EQQYXJPL	Procedure to run the EQQWAPL load module.
EQQYXJPX	Workload Automation Programming Language for z/OS batch procedure.
EQQWCMD1	Use only on a started-task (STC) workstation to run Workload Automation Programming Language commands for an IBM Z Workload Scheduler system configured with OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(YES).
EQQWCMD2	Use only on a started-task (STC) workstation to run Workload Automation Programming Language commands for an IBM Z Workload Scheduler system configured with OPCOPTS RCLEANUP(NO).
EQQWTSO1	Sets up the Workload Automation Programming Language environment for TSO, runs Workload Automation Programming Language commands, processes the result, and resets the environment.
EQQWTSO2	This sample assumes that the Workload Automation Programming Language environment is already set up in the TSO LOGON procedure or startup REXX/CLIST. It runs commands and then processes the results.
EQQWTSO3	Sets up the Workload Automation Programming Language environment for TSO, to be called by another REXX script that sets Workload Automation Programming Language commands and then processes the results.
EQQWTSO4	This sample assumes that the Workload Automation Programming Language environment is already setup in the TSO LOGON procedure or startup REXX/CLIST. It is called by another REXX that sets Workload Automation Programming Language commands and then processes the results.
EQQWTSX3	Calls another REXX script that sets up the Workload Automation Programming Language environment to run the commands specified here.
EQQWTSX4	Calls another REXX script that assumes that the Workload Automation Programming Language environment has already been set up in the TSO LOGON procedure or startup CLIST. Then it runs the commands specified here.

Step 5. Adding SMF and JES exits for event tracking

Perform this task if you are installing a tracker.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler tracks the progress of jobs and started tasks through the z/OS system by using JES and SMF exit points. Add all these exits on each z/OS system where you will start IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

To simplify the installation of IBM Z Workload Scheduler event tracking, several sample event-tracking exits can be found in your sample library, SEQQSAMP. To assemble and install exits, you can use the sample JCL provided to install the exits as SMP/E *usermods* or alternatively you can assemble and link-edit the exits yourself. For JES exits, apply *usermods* in the CSI where JES is included: this is the best method. It has the advantage that SMP automatically reassembles the exits if maintenance is applied to the JES control blocks that IBM Z Workload Scheduler is dependent on.

If you install a new release of IBM Z Workload Scheduler in a new CSI, and the JES usermod is already installed in the same CSI as a previous release, follow these steps:

1. Apply any necessary tolerance PTFs so that the previous release can run with the new exit code.
2. Change the DDDEFs for JES so that they point to the SEQQSAMP and SEQQMAC0 libraries of the *new* release.
3. APPLY REDO the JES usermod. This reassembles the exits with the new code.

The sample exits all use the EQQEXIT macro to create event-generating code. For more information on the EQQEXIT macro, see [Invoking the EQQEXIT macro on page 362](#).

[Table 22: Sample exits for IBM Z Workload Scheduler on page 92](#) describes the samples that you can use to generate and install the exits. The sample exit, skeleton JCL, and *usermod* entries identify members of the SEQQSAMP library. The event types in the table are prefixed with A for JES2 or B for JES3, when they are created by the exit. (See [Verifying tracking events on page 177](#) for more information about event types.)

Table 22. Sample exits for IBM Z Workload Scheduler

Exit name	Exit type	Sample exit	Sample JCL/ usermod	Event supported	Event type
IEFACTRT	SMF	EQQACTR1	EQQSMF	Job and step completion	3J,3S
IEFUJI	SMF	EQQUJI1	EQQSMF	Job start	2
IEFU83	SMF	EQQU831	EQQSMF	End of print group, purge (JES3 only), data set triggering support, and automatic change support	4,5,S,T
EXIT7	JES2	EQQXIT74	EQQJES2/ EQQJES2U	JCT I/O exit for JES2, purge	1,3P,5
EXIT51	JES2	EQQXIT51	EQQJES21/ EQQJES2V	JES2 QMOD phase change exit	1
IATUX19	JES3	EQQUX191	EQQJES3/ EQQJES3U	Output processing complete	3P
IATUX29	JES3	EQQUX291	EQQJES3/ EQQJES3U	On job queue	1

SMF only

The EQQU831 sample generates type 4 and type 5 events and also generates resource availability events when a data set is closed after read or update processing. For more information, see [Implementing support for data set triggering on page 104](#).

You must tailor the sample JCL to the requirements of your installation. If you have already run EQQJOBS, tailored versions of the JCL will already exist in the EQQJOBS output library. Alternatively, you can copy any of the members from the SEQQSAMP library to one of your own libraries and manually tailor the JCL.

For detailed information about how to activate SMF exits, see [Updating SMF parameters on page 98](#) and the documentation for SMF.

JES2 only

The load module names are the same as the exit names, except for JES2. The load module of the JES2 exits, which are EXIT7 and EXIT51, are called OPCAXIT7 and TWSXIT51, and their entry points are called OPCAENT7 and TWSENT51, respectively.

If your z/OS system is a JES2 system, include these records in the JES2 initialization member:

JES2 Initialization Statements

Example

```
LOAD(OPCAXIT7) /*
Load IBM Z Workload Scheduler exit mod */
EXIT(7) ROUTINES=OPCAENT7,STATUS=ENABLED /*
Define EXIT7 entry point */
```

Example

```
LOAD(TWSXIT51) /*
Load IBM Z Workload Scheduler exit mod */
EXIT(51) ROUTINES=TWSENT51,STATUS=ENABLED /*
Define EXIT51 entry point */
```

To dynamically install the JES2 exits for IBM Z Workload Scheduler, use these commands once the modules are available in the LNKLIST:

```
$ADD LOADMOD(OPCAXIT7),STORAGE=PVT
```

```
$T EXIT(7),ROUTINES=OPCAENT7,
STATUS=ENABLED
```

```
$ADD LOADMOD(TWSXIT51),STORAGE=PVT
```

```
$T EXIT(51),ROUTINES=TWSENT51,
STATUS=ENABLED
```

To put a new version of an exit (that was previously installed) in place, use these commands once the modules are available in the LNKLIST:

```
$TLOADMOD(OPCAXIT7),REFRESH
$TLOADMOD(TWSXIT51),REFRESH
```

For more information on JES2 initialization statements, see *JES2 Initialization and Tuning Reference*.

JES3 only

To activate the exits for a JES3 system, you can link them to a library that is concatenated ahead of SYS1.JES3LIB. Alternatively, you can replace the existing exits in SYS1.JES3LIB with the IBM Z Workload Scheduler-supplied IATUX19 and IATUX29 exits. For more information, see *JES3 Initialization and Tuning Reference*. If you get RC=4 and the warning ASMA303W Multiple address resolutions may result when you assemble IATUX19 running the EQQJES3/EQQJES3U sample, you can ignore the message. If version ASMA90 of the compiler reports errors, and the RMODE=ANY statement is defined, remove the RMODE=ANY statement from the sample exit.

Step 6. Updating SYS1.PARMLIB

The following topics describe the updates to SYS1.PARMLIB for your environment:

- [Defining subsystems on page 94](#)
- [Calculating MAXECSA values on page 96](#)
- [Authorizing the load-module library on page 98](#)
- [Updating SMF parameters on page 98](#)
- [Updating z/OS dump options on page 101](#)
- [Updating the z/OS link-library definition on page 101](#)
- [Updating XCF initialization options on page 102](#)
- [Modifying TSO parameters on page 103](#)
- [Performance considerations on page 104](#)
- [Defining the DLF exit for Hiperbatch support on page 104](#)
- [Starting the product automatically on page 104](#)
- [Updating APPC options on page 104](#)
- [Implementing support for data set triggering on page 104](#)

Defining subsystems

When you define the subsystem names of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controllers and trackers, consider the following:

- The Subsystem/STC name of IBM Z Workload Scheduler controllers is unique within the PLEX. If two different controllers (regardless of their location) are configured to track work on the same z/OS® system, they must have different Subsystem/STC names.
- Because subsystem names on a given LPAR must be unique, and because all IBM Z Workload Scheduler trackers and controllers started tasks must have the same name as their associated subsystems, all started tasks on any given LPAR must have unique names. That is, inside a z/OS image, controllers and trackers must have unique Subsystem/STC names.
- Trackers running on different LPARs but connected to the same controller can have the same Subsystem/STC name. In this case, system variables like &SYSNAME can be used with the condition that each tracker uses different IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets. The tracker name cannot be the same as the name of a controller.

You must define the name of every new IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem in the active subsystem-name-table member of SYS1.PARMLIB. Install at least two IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlling systems, one for testing and one for your production environment.



Note: It is recommended that you install the tracker and the Z controller in separate address spaces on the controlling system.

To define the subsystems, update the active IEFSSNnn member in SYS1.PARMLIB. Include records as in the following example:

Example

```
Subsystem definition record
SUBSYS SUBNAME(subsystem name) INITRTN(module name) INITPARM ('maxecsa,suffix')
```

subsystem name

The name assigned to an IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem. The name must be from 2 to 4 characters. All the subsystem names, as defined in the SYS1.PARMLIB member IEFSSNnn, must be unique within a GRS complex with the exception of a standby controller. Also, the subsystem names of the controllers must be unique within your OPCplex/OPC network, both local and remote systems. IBM Z Workload Scheduler requires the started task name or job name used for an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space to exactly match the name of the associated subsystem.

module name

The name of the subsystem initialization module, EQQINITP.

maxecsa

Defines the maximum amount of extended common service area (ECSA) that is used to queue job-tracking events. The value is expressed in kilobytes (1 KB equals 1024 bytes). The default is 4, which means that a maximum of 4 KB (4096 bytes) of ECSA storage is needed to queue job-tracking events. The maximum value allowed for MAXECSA is 2816.

suffix

The module name suffix for the EQQSSCM module that EQQINITP loads into common storage. EQQSSCM is the subsystem communication module. The suffix must be a single character. Because the name of the module shipped with IBM Z Workload Scheduler is EQQINITP, specify a suffix value of P. If you do not provide a suffix, EQQINITP attempts to load module name EQQSSCMP. You can also specify a subsystem communication module name in the SSCMNAME keyword of the OPCOPTS initialization statement to load an updated version of the module before a scheduled IPL. For details, see *Customization and Tuning*.

For more information about the EQQSSCM modules, [Updating the z/OS link-library definition on page 101](#).

The following example illustrates a record that you can include in the SYS1.PARMLIB IEFSSNnn member. The record defines an IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem called OPCA. This represents a tracker. Its initialization module is EQQINITP. The

amount of ECSA that is allocated, 101104 bytes, is enough for 1136 job-tracking events. Because suffix value P is specified, EQQINITP loads module EQQSSCMP.

Example

```
/*Subsystem definition example*/
SUBSYS SUBNAME(OPCA) INITRTN(EQQINITP) INITPARM ('100,P')
```



Note: In addition to updating the IEFSSNnn member, you can temporarily use the SETSSI commands to update subsystem information. For example, to delete a subsystem issue the following command:

```
setssi delete,s=XXXX,force
```

To add a new subsystem, issue the following command:

```
setssi add,s=XXXX,i=EQQINITX,p='100,P'
```

Calculating MAXECSA values

IBM Z Workload Scheduler allocates ECSA storage for job-tracking events in blocks of 1424 bytes. Each block is equivalent to 16 events. [Table 23: Examples of MAXECSA storage values on page 96](#) gives examples of the storage needed for, the storage actually allocated, and the events accommodated for several **maxecsa** values. The number of events created for each job or started task in your environment is influenced by the definitions in the EWTROPTS initialization statement. Every job or started task creates a minimum of six events. If the job or started task generates output and PRINTEVENTS(ALL) or PRINTEVENTS(END) is specified, an event is created when each output group is purged. If STEPEVENTS(ALL) is specified, an event is created for every step in the job or started task.

If you want to calculate values that are not shown in [Table 23: Examples of MAXECSA storage values on page 96](#) for a given MAXECSA value, use this method:

- Space requested = MAXECSA * 1024
- Blocks = space requested / 1424 (round down to a whole number)
- Space allocated = blocks * 1424
- Events accommodated = blocks * 16

Table 23. Examples of MAXECSA storage values

MAXECSA value	Amount of MAXECSA space requested	Blocks of ECSA space allocated (bytes)	Number of events accommodated
0	0	0 (0)	0
4	4096	2 (2848)	32
8	8192	5 (7120)	80
16	16384	11 (15664)	176

Table 23. Examples of MAXECSA storage values (continued)

MAXECSA value	Amount of MAXECSA space requested	Blocks of ECSA space allocated (bytes)	Number of events accommodated
36	36864	25 (35600)	400
72	73728	51 (72624)	816
100	102400	71 (101104)	1136
200	204800	143 (203632)	2288
400	409600	287 (408688)	4592
500	512000	359 (511216)	5744

**Note:**

1. Allocate enough ECSA storage so that job-tracking events are not lost when the IBM Z Workload Scheduler event-writer subtask is not active. When the event writer is active, the number of queued events in ECSA is almost always 0. Allocate enough ECSA for the maximum amount of time you expect the event writer to be inactive.

For example, after the IPL of a z/OS system, job-tracking events can occur before the tracker address space has become active. If you expect a maximum of 50 events to occur during this time, you should set a MAXECSA value of 8, as shown in [Table 23: Examples of MAXECSA storage values on page 96](#). When the event writer becomes active, the queued events are processed and removed from ECSA.

If events are lost, message EQQZ035E is stored to the message log. For a description of this message, see *Messages and Codes*.

2. ECSA storage for job-tracking events is required only if the started task includes an event-writer subtask. On a controlling system, you can have one address space running only an event writer subtask, and another one running the Z controller functions and the remaining tracker functions. In this situation, you must specify a MAXECSA value of 0 for the subsystem that contains the Z controller functions.
3. To submit only trackers that have OPCOPTS EWTRTASK(NO) set, the MAXECSA value must also be 0. Do not define subsystems for trackers that will never be started, because this causes waste of ECSA storage. Even if performance monitors might show that a tracker has more ECSA than the value specified by the MAXECSA parameter, this extra ECSA belongs to other subsystems, and the total amount of ECSA used by



IBM Z Workload Scheduler for trackers never exceeds the total number of subsystems defined multiplied by their MAXECSA value.

4. All ECSA storage is allocated above the 16 MB line.

Authorizing the load-module library

You must update the active authorized-program-facility member (IEAAPFnn, or PROGnn) to authorize the load-module library. Each record, except the last, ends with a comma. For the following example, assume that you have installed IBM Z Workload Scheduler load modules in the data set OPC.SEQQLMD0 and that this data set is on volume ABC123. To authorize this library, insert this record before the last entry in the IEAAPFnn:

```
OPC.SEQQLMD0      ABC123,
```

or update the PROGnn member.



Note: Libraries that are defined in the IEAAPFnn or PROGnn member are authorized only if they remain on the volume specified. If DFHSM is used in your system, change DFHSM parameters so that the new authorized library is not migrated by DFHSM.

Updating SMF parameters

The SMFPRMnn member defines parameters for the System Management Facilities (SMF). You must verify that the active SMF parameter member, SMFPRMnn, specifies that all SMF exits used by IBM Z Workload Scheduler event tracking are activated, and that the required SMF records are being collected. If this is not the case, you must update the active SMF parameter member. Event tracking requires these SMF exits:

IEFUJI

Job initiation exit

IEFACTRT

Job-end and step-end exits

IEFU83

Record write exit. It is optional, and required only for data set triggering, automatic time change, and print event functions.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the following SMF record types:

6

For PRINT (A4 and B4) events, used only for tracking work on PRINT workstations

14

Only for data set triggering with SRREAD=YES

15

For data set triggering with SRREAD=YES or SRREAD=NO

18

Only if you want to monitor renaming data sets.

26

For all job tracking

30

For all job tracking

64

Only for data set triggering with VSAM data sets

90

Only if you want automatic daylight savings time change

IBM Z Workload Scheduler requires more SMF records to be collected if you install the SMF IEFU83 exit with SRREAD set to YES on the EQQEXIT invocation. Specify this if you want special resource availability events automatically generated when a data set is closed after being opened for:

- Read processing
- Output processing
- Either read or output processing

These SMF records are needed:

- Type 14 records are required for non-VSAM data sets opened for INPUT or RDRBACK processing.
- Type 15 records are required for non-VSAM data sets opened for output.
- Type 64 records are required for VSAM data sets.
- Type 90 records support daylight savings time automatically (optional).

You can specify that the SMF records used by the exit are not written to the SMF log. If your installation does not currently collect SMF records 14, 15, or 64, but you want resource availability events automatically generated, change the EQQU831 sample so that these records are not written to the SMF log.

To avoid data set triggering, and thus to improve performance, specify SRREAD=NO in the IEFU83 SMF exit on invocation of the EQQEXIT macro. The SRREAD=NO parameter prevents data set triggering for only SMF record type 14.

Active exits are defined by the EXITS parameter of the SYS and SUBSYS keywords. An example of these keywords is:

Example

```
/*SYS and SUBSYS keywords*/
SYS(TYPE(6,14,15,18,26,30,60,62,64,90),EXITS(IEFU83,IEFACTRT,IEFUJI))
SUBSYS(STC,EXITS(IEFUJI,IEFACTRT,IEFU83))
SUBSYS(JESn,EXITS(IEFUJI,IEFACTRT,IEFU83))
```

**Note:**

1. JES n is either JES2 or JES3. This parameter does not refer to JES itself, but to batch jobs handled by JES. So do not suppress exit invocation. Ensure that you do not specify TYPE6=NO and TYPE26=NO on the JOBCLASS and STCCCLASS statements of the JES2 initialization parameters.
2. You might find it useful during installation to code two SMFPRM nn members, one with the exits active and the other with the exits inactive. You can then use the `SET SMF= $nn$  z/OS` command to switch your current SMF parameters to the new member. By switching back, using the `SET SMF= $nn$` command, you avoid the need to re-IPL, if you encounter a problem.
3. Exits for SUBSYS STC are required by IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

Use the PROG nn parmlib member to specify installation exits and control their use. Using PROG nn , you can associate multiple exit routines with installation exits at IPL, or while the system is running. Use PROG nn in addition to SMFPRM nn to specify exits, whether or not you want to take advantage of these functions.

The following example shows how you can specify SMF exits in a PROG xx parmlib member. If you specify this in SMFPRM nn :

```
SYS(...EXITS(IEFU83,IEFACTRT,IEFUJI))
```

you would add this to get the equivalent processing in PROG nn :

```
EXIT ADD EXITNAME(SYS.IEFU83) MODNAME(IEFU83)
EXIT ADD EXITNAME(SYS.IEFACTRT) MODNAME(IEFACTRT)
EXIT ADD EXITNAME(SYS.IEFUJI) MODNAME(IEFUJI)
```

When you associate new exit routines with SMF exits through PROG nn or the SETPROG command, you must use the following naming conventions:

- For exits listed on the EXITS keyword of the SYS statement in SMFPRM nn , each exit will have the name SYS. $xxxx$ (where $xxxx$ is one of the exits listed).
- For exits listed on the EXITS keyword of the SUBSYS statement of SMFPRM nn , each exit will have the name SYS $zzzzz$. $xxxx$ (where $zzzzz$ is the name of the subsystem and $xxxx$ is one of the exits listed).

If you define two members in SYS1.PARMLIB with two different names, for example, PROG03 in which there is the statement `EXIT ADD EXITNAME(SYS.1 EFACTRT) MODNAME(EQQACTR1)`, you can switch to the version EQQACTR1 without re-ipling by issuing the command: `/SET PROG=03`

If you are using FTP, you must add the following statement to the SMFPRM xx member:

```
SUBSYS(OMVS,EXITS(IEFUJI,IEFU83))
```

Also, these statements must be added to the PROG nn member, making sure that you replace MODNAME with the module name that was used when the exits were link-edited:

```
EXIT ADD EXITNAME(SYSOMVS.IEFU83) MODNAME(EQQU831)
EXIT ADD EXITNAME(SYSOMVS.IEFUJI) MODNAME(EQQUJ11)
```

For information on using `PROGnn` to control the use of exits and exit routines, see *z/OS Initialization and Tuning Reference*.

Updating z/OS dump options

The sample JCL procedure for an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space includes a DD statement and a dump data set is allocated by the `EQQPCS02` JCL created by `EQQJOBS`. `SYSMDUMP` is the dump format preferred by the service organization.

Ensure that the dump options for `SYSMDUMP` include `RGN`, `LSQA`, `TRT`, `CSA`, and `GRSQ` on systems where an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space will run. To display the current `SYSMDUMP` options, issue the z/OS command `DISPLAY DUMP,OPTIONS`. You can use the `CHNGDUMP` command to alter the `SYSMDUMP` options. Note that this command changes the parameters only until the next IPL is performed.

To dump an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space by using the z/OS `DUMP` command, the `SDUMP` options must specify `RGN`, `LSQA`, `TRT`, `CSA`, and `GRSQ`. Consider defining these options as your system default.

When dumping the controller address space, if `JTOPTS CRITJOBS(YES)` was specified or taken as the default, you must also dump the data spaces; this is important if you need to collect information when a critical path problem occurs. Add `DSPNAME=( 'ZZZZ' , * )` to the `DUMP` command, where `ZZZZ` is the controller subsystem name.

Updating the z/OS link-library definition

If you installed IBM Z Workload Scheduler in a separate load-module library, it is recommended that you define this library in the active `LNKLSTnn` member. Alternatively, you can define the load-module library on the `STEPLIB` DD statement of the started-task JCL and TSO logon procedures of IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog users.

If you installed load modules in the data set `OPC.SEQQLMD0` and this data set is cataloged in the master catalog, insert this record before the last entry in the `LNKLSTnn` member to add this library to the link library concatenation:

Example

```
Adding LINKLIB
OPC.SEQQLMD0
```

If you choose not to define the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load-module library in the `LNKLSTnn` member, you *must*:

- Copy the tracker modules, `EQQINITP` and `EQQSSCMP`, to a library in the z/OS link-library concatenation. `EQQINITP` is used by the master-scheduler-initialization function when the z/OS system is being IPLed. `EQQINITP` then loads `EQQSSCMP` into common storage. `EQQSSCMP` is about 23KB and is placed above the 16MB line. Remember to copy the modules again whenever they are updated by IBM Z Workload Scheduler maintenance. This is especially important for the `EQQSSCMP` module, which must be at the same update level as the rest of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler code.
- Define the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load-module library on a `STEPLIB` DD statement in the started-task JCL.
- Define the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load-module library on a `STEPLIB` DD statement in the TSO logon procedure of all IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog users.
- Load the dialog module, `EQQMINOP`, from an APF-authorized library. If you define the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load-module library on a TSO `STEPLIB` DD statement, and any of the other libraries defined on this DD statement are

not authorized, you must copy EQQMINOP to another library in the LNKLIST concatenation so that it is loaded APF authorized. You must also remember to copy the module again whenever it is updated by IBM Z Workload Scheduler maintenance.

Updating XCF initialization options

This section is useful if you use XCF for communication.

XCF initialization options are specified in the COUPLEnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. If you have not specified your own COUPLEnn member, the system uses the default member, COUPLE00. The IBM-supplied COUPLE00 member causes the system to be IPLed in XCF-LOCAL mode. This mode is *not* supported by IBM Z Workload Scheduler. So ensure that your system uses a COUPLEnn member that does not IPL the system in XCF-LOCAL mode. The COUPLEnn member must include the PCOUPLE keyword of the COUPLE statement. If this is omitted, XCF is initialized in XCF-LOCAL mode. For IBM Z Workload Scheduler purposes, you can use the default values for the remaining XCF options.

```
COUPLEnn example
COUPLE   SYSPLEX(PLEX1)           /* SYSPLEX name          */
        PCOUPLE(PLEX1.COUPLE1)    /* Primary couple data set */
        ACOUPLE(PLEX2.COUPLE2)    /* Alternate couple data set*/
        MAXMSG(2000)              /* No of 1k message buffers */
CLASSDEF CLASS(DEFAULT)          /* Default transport class */
        CLASSLEN(956)             /* Message length         */
        GROUP(OPCGRP,OPCDS)       /* OPC Group names        */
PATHIN   DEVICE(cccc,dddd)
PATHOUT  DEVICE(aaaa,bbbb)
PATHIN   STRNAME(str1,str2) CLASS(DEFAULT)
PATHOUT  STRNAME(str1,str2) CLASS(DEFAULT)
```

Issue the console command "D XCF,CLASSDEF,CLASS=ALL" to see if you already have a DEFAULT class (the name of this class might be something other than DEFAULT) having CLASSLEN(956), which is the default value. If there is such a class, you just need to add the TWS specific GROUP names (OPCGRP,OPCDS) to the CLASSDEF statement for that CLASS, as shown in the example above.



Note: By specifying MAXMSG(2000) on the COUPLE statement, as shown above, all transport classes will use this value unless a different value is specified at the CLASSDEF level. MAXMSG(2000) is the default value.

If XCF is used to connect the Data Store to the controller, a specific XCF group must be defined, and it must be different from the one used to connect the controller to the z/OS® tracker. These two separate XCF groups can use the same XCF transport class.



Note: You can change XCF options while the system is active by using the SETXCF operator command.

For more information about XCF, see z/OS® MVS™ *Setting up a Sysplex*.

Modifying TSO parameters

You must define the EQQMINOP module to TSO on each system where you install the scheduler dialogs. You must also authorize the IBM Z Workload Scheduler TSO commands on every system where you install IBM Z Workload Scheduler. If you do not authorize the TSO commands, the commands will only work on the system where the Z controller is installed.

To request services from the subsystem for a TSO user, the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog invokes the EQQMINOP module using the TSO service facility. EQQMINOP is the dialog interface module. It must run as an APF-authorized program. To achieve this, define EQQMINOP to TSO. If you are installing the scheduler dialogs, include EQQMINOP in the list of programs defined by the AUTHTSF statement in the IKJTSOnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. This statement defines programs to be authorized when invoked using the TSO service facility, as shown in the following example:

Example

```
IKJTSOnn AUTHTSF example
AUTHTSF NAMES(IKJEFF76 +
               IEBCOPY  +
               EQQMINOP)
```

If you prefer, you can put EQQMINOP in CSECT IKJEFTAP instead of IKJTSOnn. For more information about using IKJEFTAP, see *TSO/E Customization*.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports the BACKUP, BULKDISC, JSUACT, OPINFO, OPSTAT, SRSTAT, and WSSTAT TSO commands. Update the IKJTSOnn member on each system where you are installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler to define these commands as authorized commands. To do this, add them to the list of commands defined by the NAMES keyword of the AUTHCMD statement, as shown in the following example

Example

```
IKJTSOnn AUTHCMD example
AUTHCMD NAMES(BACKUP +
              BULKDISC +
              JSUACT +
              OPINFO +
              OPSTAT +
              SRSTAT +
              WSSTAT)
```

If the default entry in the ISPF TSO command table ISPTCM is set for unauthorized TSO commands, then ISPTCM must be updated. The ISPTCM can be updated using the ISPMTCM macro. Define the BACKUP, BULKDISC, JSUACT, OPINFO, OPSTAT, SRSTAT, and WSSTAT commands like this:

Example

```
ISPTCM example
ISPMTCM FLAG=62, ENTNAME=BACKUP
ISPMTCM FLAG=62, ENTNAME=BULKDISC
ISPMTCM FLAG=62, ENTNAME=JSUACT
ISPMTCM FLAG=62, ENTNAME=OPINFO
ISPMTCM FLAG=62, ENTNAME=OPSTAT
ISPMTCM FLAG=62, ENTNAME=SRSTAT
ISPMTCM FLAG=62, ENTNAME=WSSTAT
```

No update is needed to ISPTCM if the default entry is set up for authorized TSO commands. For more information about the ISPMTCM macro statements, see *ISPF Planning and Customization*.

Performance considerations

The tracker and the controller address spaces must be nonswappable. To do this, include the definition of their top load module, EQQMAJOR, in the program properties table (PPT). This PPT entry example is defined in a SCHEDnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB:

```
SCHEDnn example
PPT PGMNAME(EQQMAJOR) NOSWAP
```

The EQQMAJOR program must run in storage key 8, the default value.

To ensure prompt processing by IBM Z Workload Scheduler and to avoid delays in the handling of event records, the tracker subsystem performance rating (that is, its dispatching priority) should match that of the JES subsystem.

Defining the DLF exit for Hiperbatch™ support

If you want to include Hiperbatch™ support for IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlled jobs, specify the DLF exit name in the COFDLFnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. A DLF exit sample is supplied with the SEQQSAMP library. The exit must reside in an authorized library in the LNKLST concatenation. This example of a COFDLFnn member defines a DLF exit called OPCDLF:

```
COFDLFnn example
CLASS MAXEXPB(nnnn) PCTRETB(nnn) CONEXIT(OPCDLF)
```

For more information about invoking Hiperbatch™ support in IBM Z Workload Scheduler, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Starting the product automatically

The COMMNDnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB list z/OS commands automatically issued during system initialization. To avoid delays in starting IBM Z Workload Scheduler when the z/OS system is started, consider including the names of your IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks in this member. For information on how to include start commands for your IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces, see *MVS™ Initialization and Tuning Reference*.

Updating APPC options

If you want to use the API, or the server, to communicate with IBM Z Workload Scheduler, you must update APPC options. For a detailed description of what you need to do, see [Step 16. Activating support for the API on page 163](#), or [Step 17. Activating support for the product dialog and programming interface using the server on page 166](#).

Implementing support for data set triggering

Use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler data set triggering function to start dependent processing or schedule unplannable work by automatically generating special resource availability events when a data set is closed after being opened for:

- Read processing
- Output processing
- Either read or output processing.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the SMF exit IEFU83 to generate a resource availability event when IEFU83 is called for SMF record types 14, 15, or 64. The data set activity SMF records are generated when a data set is closed or processed by EOVS. IBM Z Workload Scheduler will generate resource availability events only when the data set is closed. When a VSAM data set is closed, two SMF 64 records are created, one each for the DATA and INDEX components. When resource availability events are requested for VSAM data sets, the event will be created when the DATA component is closed, IBM Z Workload Scheduler will not generate an event when the INDEX component is closed.

SMF data set activity records are written when the data set is closed, regardless of whether the JOB/STEP/TASK/USER completed successfully. For more information about the data sets that generate SMF record types 14, 15, or 64, see the documentation for SMF.

To define the data sets for which you want events to be generated, you can perform either of the following:

- Use the EQQRXTRG program to centralize and automate the population of the data set to which the EQQJCLLIB DD name refers. For detailed information about running event-driven workload automation, see *Managing the Workload*.
- Build a selection table, as described in [Invoking the EQQLSENT macro on page 366](#). The selection table is located in ECSA. It is automatically loaded from the data set referred to by the EQQJCLLIB DD name when the event writer is started in a tracker if a table has not previously been loaded since IPL. To reload the table at any time, issue the z/OS modify command:

```
F procname,NEWDSLST
```



Note: No support is available for the data set triggering function before the event writer is started immediately after a z/OS IPL. When the event writer has started after IPL, data set triggering functions are available if the event writer is subsequently stopped. To stop data set triggering at any time issue the `NEWDSLST` modify command to load a table that contains only the end-of-table indicator.

To implement support for the data set triggering function, perform these actions:

- Update SYS1.PARMLIB member SMFPRMnn as described in [Updating SMF parameters on page 98](#).
- Install SMF exit IEFU83 using the EQQU831 sample. See [Macro invocation syntax for EQQEXIT on page 363](#) on how to specify the SRREAD parameter.
- Define the data set selection criteria as described by the event-driven resource handling section in *Managing the Workload*.

The procedure described in [Invoking the EQQLSENT macro on page 366](#) is supported for compatibility with earlier versions only.

Step 7. Setting up the RACF® environment

If your installation protects data and resources from unauthorized use, you must define IBM Z Workload Scheduler to your security system. This section assumes that the Resource Access Control Facility (RACF®) is installed and active on your z/OS system. It describes the activities you must perform to define and enable the security environment for IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

For detailed plans and instructions about how to establish a security strategy for your IBM Z Workload Scheduler resources, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Controlling the user ID of the address space

If you run IBM Z Workload Scheduler as a started task, you must associate the cataloged procedure name with a suitably authorized RACF® user. The user ID must be defined in the STARTED resource class.

If you use any of the following definitions in your initialization statements, you must also define an OMVS segment for the controller user ID:

- TPLGYSRV parameter in the OPCOPTS statement.
- TCPIP parameter in the ROUTOPTS statement.
- MONOPTS statement.
- HTTP or HTTPS parameter in the ROUTOPTS statement.

For any user IDs running the controller, server, output collector, or TCP connected tracker started task, ensure that you defined a HOME directory in the OMVS segment. For details, see [HOME directory requirements for started tasks on page 201](#).

Controlling the user ID of submitted jobs

IBM Z Workload Scheduler can submit three kinds of jobs:

- [Normal production jobs on page 106](#), which are submitted when their prerequisites in the current plan are fulfilled.
- [Stand-alone cleanup jobs on page 107](#), which are submitted to run cleanup actions separately from the original job.
- [Dialog jobs on page 108](#), which you can submit directly from a panel in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog.

Normal production jobs

IBM Z Workload Scheduler submits production jobs to the internal reader, or starts started tasks, when all prerequisites are met. IBM® Z Workload Scheduler first attempts to find jobs in the JS file. If no job is found, it keeps searching in the following order:

- Partitioned data set indicated by the JOBLIBRARY operation user field, if specified. If no job is found, an error message is issued.
- Job-library-read exit (EQQUX002), if loaded. If no job is found, it searches the EQQJBLIB partitioned data set concatenation.
- EQQJBLIB partitioned data set concatenation, if the JOBLIBRARY user field and EQQUX002 are not specified.

You can determine the authority given to a job or started task by the following ways:

- Submitting work with the authority of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space. The job or started task is given the same authority as the Z controller or tracker whose submit subtask actually submits the work. For example, work that is transmitted from the Z controller and then submitted by the tracker is given the authority of the tracker.
- Using the user field name SUBJOBUSER, specified at operation level, to cause any kind of jobs to be submitted with a specified user ID. If you use this method, it is preferred over using the job-submit exit EQQUX001.

The user field name SUBJOBUSER must always be uppercase. The user field value cannot be longer than 8 characters and cannot contain blanks: if you specify a value longer than 8 characters it is truncated; if you specify a value containing a blank, the characters after the blank are not considered.

- Using the job-submit exit, EQQUX001. This exit is called when IBM Z Workload Scheduler is about to submit work.
 - You can use the RUSER parameter of the EQQUX001 exit to cause the job or started task to be submitted with a specified user ID. The RUSER name is supported even if the job or started task is first sent to a tracker before being started.
 - In certain circumstances you might need to include a password in the JCL to propagate the authority of a particular user. You can use the job-submit exit (EQQUX001) to modify the JCL and include a password. The JCL is saved in the JCL repository (JSn) data set *before* the exit is called, thus avoiding the need to store JCL with specific passwords. This method prevents the password from being visible externally. For more information about the job-submit exit, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Stand-alone cleanup jobs

Their purpose is to run data set cleanup actions and can be submitted when:

- An automatic internal process takes place (for example, when cleanup type immediate is used and an operation ends in error)
- A Start Cleanup command is issued by an IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog or the Dynamic Workload Console.

Activate exit EQQUX001 to make sure that the submitter of the stand-alone cleanup job is the same as the submitter of the original job, otherwise the stand-alone cleanup job will run with the same authority as the controller or the tracker that submits it. The current EQQUX001 sample contains a procedure to set the RUSER value according to the value of the USER= keyword in the jobcard of the original job.

Dialog jobs

When you submit IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch jobs from your TSO address space, they go through normal TSO functions. This means that you can submit any job allowed by TSO/E. IBM Z Workload Scheduler makes no authority checks when the job is submitted.

For the IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch job to run successfully, it must be authorized to reference the data sets it uses. The submitting TSO user might also need authorization to use a specific function. For example, a user could have update authority to the AD file but not have the authority to use the AD mass update function.

Controlling dynamic allocation of job libraries

You control the dynamic allocation of job libraries by setting the user field JOBLIBRARY at operation level. If you set JOBLIBRARY, its value is preferred over the job-library-read exit (EQQUX002) and EQQJBLIB partitioned data set concatenation.



Note: Carefully examine how often you choose to allocate job libraries dynamically, because this might heavily impact the scheduling process.

For more detailed information, see the section about defining jobs in *Managing the Workload*.

Protecting data sets

For basic security of IBM Z Workload Scheduler data, you should restrict access to all the product data sets.

Two categories of users need different levels of access to the product data sets:

- Software support people must be able to debug problems and reorganize VSAM files. You might give them alter access to all the product data sets.
- Administrators and operators must be able to use the product dialogs. They need read access to ISPF-related data sets (such as the panel and message libraries), but they do not access the databases (such as the workstation database) directly: these files are accessed by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem, not by any code in the TSO user's address space. Authority to access the data for a dialog user is given using the authorization functions provided by the product.

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler started task needs:

- Alter access to VSAM data sets
- Read access to input data sets, such as the message library (EQQMLIB) and parameter library (EQQPARM)
- Update access to all other IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets
- Update access to catalogs and alter access to data sets for all work that IBM Z Workload Scheduler tracks, if you use the Restart and Cleanup function.

Controlling access to resources

Before IBM Z Workload Scheduler performs any request initiated by a user, a security verification check is passed to the system authorization facility (SAF) to ensure that the user is authorized to access all resources needed to run the request. A user can request IBM Z Workload Scheduler services from:

- An ISPF dialog session
- TSO commands
- The program interface (PIF)
- The application programming interface (API)
- Dynamic Workload Console

Any security software that interfaces with SAF also works with IBM Z Workload Scheduler. For this section, the security product is assumed to be RACF®.

The z/OS router service calls RACF® to perform authority checks. It provides an installation exit that you can use instead of, or in addition to, RACF® to perform resource control functions.

Use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler reserved resource class IBMOPC.

The default class for IBM Z Workload Scheduler is OPCCLASS. If you use a different class name, you must specify it in the AUTHDEF statement. Generally, this means specifying CLASS(IBMOPC) in the AUTHDEF statement. If you are running more than one IBM Z Workload Scheduler system, for example a test system and production system, you might want to define more than one RACF® class. By using different CLASS parameters in each AUTHDEF statement, you can specify a different authorization scheme for each system.

To control access to IBM Z Workload Scheduler functions, give at least one TSO user-class authority to the resource class. This TSO user can then allow other IBM Z Workload Scheduler users to access resources as needed.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler also uses the APPL resource class. Define the subsystem name as a resource in the APPL class. The easiest way to do this is to have the RACF® administrator give class authority to the APPL resource class to one TSO user. This TSO user defines the subsystem name (for example, OPCC) to the APPL resource class by entering:

```
/*Define subsystem resource*/
RDEFINE APPL OPCC UACC(NONE)
```

See *RACF® Command Reference* and *RACF® Administrator's Guide* if you are unfamiliar with this process.

When the subsystem name is defined to RACF®, you can give other TSO users access to IBM Z Workload Scheduler. For example, to allow the TSO user OPCUGRP to access OPCC with an update access authority by default, enter:

Example

```
/*Permit access to IBM Z Workload Scheduler*/
PERMIT OPCC ID(OPCUGRP) ACCESS(UPDATE) CLASS(APPL)
```

For remote dialog users and remotely run PIF applications, the server will do the authority checking; it will check both the APPL class subsystem name resource and the scheduler fixed resources. The user for which the server does authority checking is:

- For dialog users, the TSO user ID.
- For PIF applications, the user ID defined in the security environment of the PIF job.

Permitting access to the controller through the API

If you use the API, you can control access to the Z controller through the security functions of both APPC and IBM Z Workload Scheduler. Ensure that you consider both these environments when you update RACF®. For more information about controlling access to IBM Z Workload Scheduler through the API, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Controlling access to IBM Z Workload Scheduler resources when using the Dynamic Workload Console

The WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base performs a security check when a user tries to use Dynamic Workload Console, checking the user ID and password. The WebSphere® Application Server associates each user ID and password to an administrator.

The scheduler resources are currently protected by RACF®.

The Dynamic Workload Console user should only have to enter a single user ID and password combination, and not provide two levels of security checking (at the WebSphere® Application Server level and then again at the IBM Z Workload Scheduler level).

The security model is based on having the WebSphere® Application Server security handle the initial user verification, while at the same time obtaining a valid corresponding RACF® user ID. This makes it possible for the user to work with the security environment in z/OS®.

z/OS® security is based on a table mapping the administrator to a RACF® user ID. When a WebSphere® Application Server user tries to initiate an action on z/OS®, the administrator ID is used as a key to obtain the corresponding RACF® user ID.

The server uses the RACF® user ID to build the RACF® environment to access IBM Z Workload Scheduler services, so the administrator must relate, or map, to a corresponding RACF® user ID.

For information about how to get the RACF® user ID, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning*.

Permitting access to the controller through the Dynamic Workload Console

If you use the Dynamic Workload Console, you can control access to the Z controller through the security functions of both WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base and IBM Z Workload Scheduler. Ensure that you consider both these environments when you update RACF. For more information about controlling access to IBM Z Workload Scheduler through the Dynamic Workload Console, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Authorizing IBM Z Workload Scheduler as a job submitter

Consider the following resource classes when implementing security for IBM Z Workload Scheduler. The examples assume that the RACF® user for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space is OPCAPPL, which is the name specified in the started-procedure table.

JESJOBS

If your installation has activated the JESJOBS class, you must permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler to submit all jobs that are defined in the current plan. One way of doing this is to permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler to submit all jobs. You can do this by:

1. Defining the submit resource:

```
RDEFINE JESJOBS SUBMIT.*.*.* UACC(NONE) OWNER(OPCAPPL)
```

2. Authorizing IBM Z Workload Scheduler:

```
PERMIT SUBMIT.*.*.* CLASS(JESJOBS) ID(OPCAPPL) ACC(READ)
```

SURROGAT

A *surrogate job submission* occurs when all the following conditions are met:

1. USER=xxxx is specified on the job card of the submitted job.
2. The xxxx is not the same as the submitting (RACF®) user.
3. No password is specified on the job card.

You might use the job-submit exit (EQQUX001) to return a submitting user in the RUSER field. This is required if you want stand-alone cleanup jobs to be submitted with the same authority as the original job, otherwise you can replace it with surrogate job submission.

To permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler to submit this job, perform the following steps:

1. Activate the surrogate class:

```
SETROPTS CLASSACT(SURROGAT)
```

2. Define the submit resource:

```
RDEFINE SURROGAT APLUSER.SUBMIT UACC(NONE) OWNER(APLUSER)
```

3. Authorize IBM Z Workload Scheduler:

```
PERMIT APLUSER.SUBMIT CLASS(SURROGAT) ID(OPCAPPL) ACC(READ)
```

If the PRIVILEGED or TRUSTED attribute is set in the Started Procedure Table (SPT) entry, the IBM Z Workload Scheduler is authorized to submit jobs under any user regardless of what is defined in the resource rules.

For further information, see the *RACF® Administrator's Guide*.

Authorizing IBM Z Workload Scheduler to issue JES commands

Consider the following resource classes when implementing security for IBM Z Workload Scheduler. The examples assume that the RACF user for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space is OPCAPPL, which is the name specified in the started-procedure table.

OPERCMDS

If the OPERCMDS class is active and you have specified HOLDJOB(YES) or HOLDJOB(USER) for an event writer, the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space where the event writer is started must be authorized to issue the JES release command. One method is to permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler to issue all JES commands.

To permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler to issue JES commands on a JES2 system, perform the following steps:

1. Define the resource:

```
RDEFINE OPERCMDS JES2.* UACC(NONE)
```

2. Authorize IBM Z Workload Scheduler:

```
PERMIT JES2.* CLASS(OPERCMDS) ID(OPCAPPL) ACC(UPDATE)
```

On a JES3 system, replace JES2.* with JES3.* in the example. Alternatively, you could specify the JES%.* resource name for either a JES2 or JES3 system.

If you use IBM Z Workload Scheduler to schedule started tasks, the address space must be authorized to issue the z/OS start command. One way of doing this is to permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler to issue all z/OS commands. To do this, perform the following steps:

1. Define the resource:

```
RDEFINE OPERCMDS ZOS.* UACC(NONE)
```

2. Authorize IBM Z Workload Scheduler:

```
PERMIT ZOS.* CLASS(OPERCMDS) ID(OPCAPPL) ACC(UPDATE)
```

Authority to use the z/OS start command is also required if you use Hiperbatch™ support for IBM Z Workload Scheduler operations.

JESSPOOL

If the JESSPOOL class is active and you use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler JCC function, you must authorize IBM Z Workload Scheduler to access SYSOUT data sets for all jobs in the current plan. Also, the output collector and data store require the ALTER access for the JESSPOOL class. One way of doing this is to permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler to access all SYSOUT data sets. To permit IBM Z Workload Scheduler, output collector, and data store to access all SYSOUT data sets.

To access all SYSOUT data sets, perform the following steps on each system where the JCC, output collector, and data store are started:

1. Define the resource:

```
RDEFINE JESSPOOL *.* UACC(NONE)
```

2. Authorize IBM Z Workload Scheduler:

```
PERMIT *.* CLASS(JESSPOOL) ID(OPCAPPL) ACC(ALTER)
```

If the `PRIVILEGED` or `TRUSTED` attribute is set in the Started Procedure Table (SPT) entry for IBM Z Workload Scheduler, the address space is authorized to issue any commands and to process spool data sets regardless of what is defined in the resource rules.

For further information, see the *RACF® Security Administrator's Quick Reference*.

Authorizing IBM Z Workload Scheduler end-to-end and Dynamic Workload Console server tasks for security resource EZB.BINDDVIPARANGE

If you use the Dynamic Workload Console, you must give `UPDATE` authorization for the `EZB.BINDDVIPARANGE` to the user ID of the Dynamic Workload Console server when using DVIPA host names. If you specify the `TCPOPTS` statement for the server, the `HOSTNAME` parameter overrides the `JSCHOSTNAME` parameter of the `SERVOPTS` statement, if any.

Step 8. Securing communications

IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports authentication and cryptography by activating the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) transport protocol for transmitting and accepting secure information.

You can configure IBM Z Workload Scheduler to enable SSL communication in a TCP/IP network or, you can implement SSL security for HTTP connections as required.

Security for TCP/IP connections

The scheduler authentication mechanism uses the SSL services of z/OS®. For further details, see *z/OS® Cryptographic Services System Secure Sockets Layer Programming*.

To enable SSL authentication for your network, perform the following actions:

1. Create the SSL work directory by using the `EQQPCS10` sample JCL. You can use the same directory as the one used for SSL in end-to-end. In the following examples, the directory is `/u/tws/ssl`
2. From `/u/tws/ssl/` as current directory, open a shell prompt, start the **gskkyman** utility of z/OS® Cryptographic Services System SSL, and do the following:
 - a. Create the keystore database and consider protecting it from unauthorized access, because it has to contain private key and trusted certificates. For example, consider the database `/u/tws/ssl/tws1.kdb`.
 - b. Generate a password file and store it in the SSL directory defined in the previous step, for example `/u/tws/ssl/tws1.sth`.
 - c. At this point you can:

- Create a certificate request and send it to the Certificate Authority.
- Store the signed certificate in the database.
- Import the certificate of the Certification Authority which signed your certificate.

In this way you have a database containing both your certificate and Certification Authority's one.

The scheduler uses a default name to identify your certificate; therefore you are not required to set up a multiple database handling. If you need different certificates in order to partition your network from a security point of view, you need different databases. The advantage of this solution is that you can store each database in a different directory, with its own access list.

Alternatively, you can create your own custom self-signed certificates. For details, see the procedure described in the section about configuring TLS with custom self-signed certificates in *Customization and Tuning*.

3. Configure IBM Z Workload Scheduler, by specifying the TCPOPTS statement for each component of your network. Consider each component according a client-server model. Typically, a client-server group is composed by the trackers and data stores communicating with the corresponding controller, or by a remote interface communicating with the corresponding server.

When the controller or the server started task communicates with a partner component, the communication is always started by the partner component; therefore the partner acts as a client. Differently from the end-to-end communication, the communicating partners use the same port numbers for both non-SSL and SSL communications. Specify the same TCPOPTS parameters for all the components in a client-server group.

For a detailed description of the TCPOPTS statement, see *Customization and Tuning*. The following example shows a TCPOPTS definition to activate an SSL support that uses a SAF key ring.

TCPOPTS	
. . .	
SSLEVEL (FORCE)	1
SSLKEYSTORE (MYKEYRING)	2
SSLKEYSTORETYPE (SAF)	3
SSLAUTHSTRING ('OPCMaster')	4
SSLAUTHMODE (STRING)	5

In this example:

1

The FORCE keyword enables the SSL communication.

2

MYKEYRING is the SAF key ring used to connect the security certificates.

3

SAF is the type of key ring used.

4

OPCMaster is the string defined as Common Name (CN) in the certificate.

5

The STRING keyword enables the check on the CN string.

When designing your configuration from a security point of view, consider that:

- To enforce your security, you can use the SSLAUTHMODE(STRING), that requires to:
 - Create an SSL certificate for each controller started task. This certificate will be used by the controller and its remote partners. Define the certificate using as Common Name a unique string corresponding to the controller.
 - Create an SSL certificate for each server started task. This certificate will be used by the server and its remote partners. Define the certificate using as Common Name a unique string corresponding to the server.

The SSLAUTHSTRING must match the information contained in the certificate sent by the partner. To verify it, you can use the **gskkyman** utility that allows displaying the keys database and SSL certificate content. The certificate CN is returned by **gskkyman** as the first line of the "Subject".

- If you prefer to use SSLAUTHMODE(CAONLY), then you can use a single SSL certificate for all your network.

Security for HTTP connections

You can provide security for an HTTP connection between the following components:

- The Z controller and the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (z-centric agent).
- The Z controller and another Z controller (z/OS remote engine).
- The Z controller and the dynamic domain manager.
- The Z controller and the IBM Workload Scheduler master domain manager (distributed remote engine).

SSL-secure connections are implemented using specific settings in the statement, and the HTTPS keyword in the statement. For more information about these statements, see *Customization and Tuning*.

If you use the secure connection with the SSL protocol, you must import the security certificates into your security system.



Note: If you imported the default security certificates during the installation of the previous version of the product, you must remove them and run the EQQRCERT job to import the new certificates. If you already imported the new default security certificates during the installation of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent, then you must not perform this procedure again. Complete the procedure for creating a secure connection by configuring the SSLKEYRING keyword with the value used for installation of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent.

At installation time, the default security certificates are automatically stored into the SEQQDATA library:

EQQCERCL

The security certificate for the client.

EQQCERSR

The security certificate for the sever.

You can decide to use these default certificates or create your own. In both cases, you must import them into your security system. If you are using RACF®, you are provided with the sample job EQQRCERT to import the certificates. To run this job, ensure that you use the same user ID that RACF® associates with the controller started task.

If you create your own certificates for an HTTP connection with the master domain manager or with the dynamic domain manager, you must run the customizing steps described in the section about customizing SSL connection to the master domain manager and dynamic domain manager in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*. A procedure about creating your own custom self-signed certificates is described in the section about configuring TLS with custom self-signed certificates in *Customization and Tuning*.

If you are using SSL to communicate with a master domain manager, backup master domain manager, or dynamic domain manager, then the prefix of the common name of the controller certificate must be defined in the **Broker.AuthorizedCNs** option in the `BrokerWorkstation.properties` file located in the `TWA_home/TDWB/config` directory of the distributed engine.

The EQQRCERT job performs the following actions:

- Copies the EQQCERCL certificate to a temporary sequential data set
- Copies the EQQCERSR certificate to a temporary sequential data set
- Imports EQQCERCL to RACF®
- Imports EQQCERSR to RACF®
- Deletes the temporary sequential data sets
- Creates the SAF key ring that is used to connect the imported certificates
- Updates the RACF® database with the new certificates and key ring

Step 9. Allocating data sets



Note: A standby Z controller uses the same data sets as the Z controller.

At this stage of the installation of your IBM Z Workload Scheduler system, you allocate the data sets that your JCL procedures refer to. You can create the data sets by using the jobs created by the EQQJOBS installation aid.

If you are using the EQQJOBS installation aid, you will already have generated several members in the output library that you specified.

Consider carefully where IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets are allocated in your production environment. Some data sets can be highly active. Avoid placing these data sets on DASD volumes with high activity because this can result in poor performance due to contention. Also consider the ability to recover data sets if a DASD volume becomes unusable. If you place all your data sets on the same volume, you must recover many data sets before you can continue your IBM Z Workload Scheduler service. *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning* describes recovery of IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets in detail.

The space to allocate for your data sets depends upon the workload at your installation. It is difficult to give precise figures for the amount of space you will need. The space allocated by the sample JCL should give you enough space to at least get started. These amounts will be enough for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler service for many installations. For details about allocating space for VSAM data sets, see [Table 25: Calculations of VSAM data set size on page 120](#).

The following sections describe the IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets and include examples of the JCL needed to create them.

Allocating the VSAM data sets

Perform this task if you are installing a Z controller.

[Table 24: IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data sets on page 117](#) shows the VSAM data sets and their characteristics.

The JCL procedure for the Z controller uses all of these data sets except for EQQLDDS and EQQLTBKP, which are used only in the planning batch jobs. Allocate all these VSAM data sets for a Z controller.

Table 24. IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data sets

Sample	DD name	Record type	Attributes	Share option	Keys	Record size	Data set
EQQPCS09	N/A	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	19 0	200 32000	Archive of current plan
EQQPCS01	EQQADDs	KSDS	UNIQUE SPANNED	3	25 0	1000 131072*	Application description
EQQPCS01	EQQCP1DS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	19 0	200 32000	Current plan 1
EQQPCS01	EQQCP2DS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	19 0	200 32000	Current plan 2
EQQPCS01	EQQCXDS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	64 0	500 32000	Current plan extension
EQQPCS01	EQQXD1DS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	68 0	500 32000	Extended data 1
EQQPCS01	EQQXD2DS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	68 0	500 32000	Extended data 2
EQQPCS01	EQQNXDDS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	68 0	500 32000	New extended data
EQQPCS01	EQQJS1DS	KSDS	REUSE SPANNED	3	28 0	804 180004	JCL repository 1
EQQPCS01	EQQJS2DS	KSDS	REUSE SPANNED	3	28 0	804 180004	JCL repository 2

Table 24. IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data sets (continued)

Sample	DD name	Record type	Attributes	Share option	Keys	Record size	Data set
EQQPCS01	EQQLDDS	KSDS	REUSE SPANNED	2	28 0	440 131072	Long-term-plan work
EQQPCS01	EQQLTBKP	KSDS	REUSE SPANNED	3	28 0	200 131072	Long-term-plan backup
EQQPCS01	EQQLTDS	KSDS	REUSE SPANNED	3	28 0	200 131072	Long-term plan
EQQPCS01	EQQNCPDS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	19 0	200 32000	New current plan
EQQPCS01	EQQNCXDS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	64 0	500 32000	New current plan extension
EQQPCS01	EQQNSTDs	KSDS	UNIQUE SPANNED	3	68 0	500 32000	New step awareness
EQQPCS01	EQQOIDS	KSDS	UNIQUE NSPND	3	28 0	800 32000	Operator instruction
EQQPCS07	EQQPKlxx	KSDS	UNIQUE INDEXED	1,3	34 0	77 77	Primary Index
EQQPCS01	EQQRDDS	KSDS	UNIQUE NSPND	3	64 0	400 32000	Special resource descriptions
EQQPCS01	EQQSCPDS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	19 0	200 32000	Current plan backup copy for IBM® Tivoli® Monitoring integration
EQQPCS07	EQQSDFxx	LINEAR	N/A	2,3	N/A	N/A	Data files
EQQPCS01	EQQSIDS	KSDS	UNIQUE NSPND	3	64 0	110 220	Side information file: ETT and configuration information
EQQPCS07	EQQSKlxx	KSDS	UNIQUE INDEXED	1,3	38 0	76 32000	Secondary Index
EQQPCS01	EQQSTDS	KSDS	UNIQUE SPANNED	3	68 0	500 32000	Step awareness

Table 24. IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data sets (continued)

Sample	DD name	Record type	Attributes	Share option	Keys	Record size	Data set
EQQPCS01	EQQWSDS	KSDS	UNIQUE NSPND	3	10 0	100 32000	Workstation, calendar, and period descriptions.
EQQPCS01	EQQSCPDS	KSDS	REUSE NSPND	3	19 0	200 32000	Current plan backup copy for IBM® Tivoli® Monitoring integration

**Note:**

1. * The maximum record size for EQQPCS01 is the default maximum value. This can be increased as in the example that follows.
2. In specific situations where the size of the CP files (CP1, CP2, NCP, SCP) are large and the batch daily planning jobs cause a considerable number of updates to the NCP, it is possible for the NCP to become very large. This might require the allocation of additional extents (not additional volumes, because ADDVOL support is not available for the NCP file). Consider freespace allocation for the current plan, including NCP (EQQCP1DS, EQQCP2DS, EQQCXDS, EQQNCPDS and EQQSCPDS), application descriptions (EQQADDs), resource descriptions (EQQRDDs), and operator instructions (EQQOIDS) data sets.
3. The extended data sets XD1DS, XD2DS, NXDDS, OXDDS have a logical correspondence and use like the current plan data sets CP1DS, CP2DS, NCPDS, ONCPDS. As the old CP (OCP) can be either the CP1 or the CP2 according to which one is inactive and not current, with the same logic OXD can be either XD1 or XD2 according to which one is not currently active.
4. If you are upgrading from a previous IBM Z Workload Scheduler release, it is recommended to use the new samples shipped and set with EQQJOBS. The allocation samples like EQQPCS01 use variables. If you are customizing previous allocation JCLs, make sure you correctly position the changes and use the correct set of defined variables.
5. The IDCAMS ALTER ADDVOLUMES command is not supported for IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets because it requires that the data set be closed and reopened before the VSAM is updated with the new volumes added.

You can allocate the VSAM data sets by submitting the sample listed in [Table 24: IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM data sets on page 117](#). Alternatively, you can allocate one or more of the VSAM data sets by running a job like this:

```
Allocating a VSAM data set
//ALOCVSAM JOB STATEMENT PARAMETERS
//*-----*
//* ALLOCATE AN OPC VSAM DATA SET *
//*-----*
//ALLOC EXEC PGM=IDCAMS,REGION=512K
```

```
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=Q
//EQQVOL1 DD DISP=OLD,VOL=SER=volser,UNIT=3390
//SYSIN DD *
DEFINE +
  CLUSTER ( +
    NAME('OPC.INST.AD') UNIQUE +
    SPANNED +
    SHR(3) VOL(volser) CYLINDERS(2 2) +
  ) +
  DATA ( +
    NAME('OPC.INST.ADDATA') +
    KEYS(25 0) RECORDSIZE(1000 132072) +
  ) +
  INDEX ( +
    NAME('OPC.INST.ADINDEX') +
  )
/*
```

This example allocates the application description database.

You can allocate VSAM data sets on different device types.

Allocate enough space for your data sets, depending upon the amount of work IBM Z Workload Scheduler processes at your installation. For details about allocating space for VSAM data sets [Table 25: Calculations of VSAM data set size on page 120](#).

Table 25. Calculations of VSAM data set size

Data set	Size in bytes is total of:	
	Number of	Multiplied by
Application description (EQQADDS)	Application and group definitions	240
	Run cycles	160
	Positive run days	3
	Negative run days	3
	Rules definition segment (based on the combination specified)	Average is 96
	Application dependencies	100
	Operations	140
	Internal dependencies	16
	External dependencies	84
	Time interval to resolve ext. dep. (based on matching criteria)	40
	Special resources	64
	Operation Extended Info	200
	Operation System Automation Info	336
	Conditional dependency defined on the operation	32
	Conditional dependency details	56
	Time interval to resolve cond. dep. (based on match. criteria)	36
	Operation User fields	74
	Operation Remote Engine Info	200

Table 25. Calculations of VSAM data set size (continued)

Data set	Size in bytes is total of:	
	Number of	Multiplied by
	Operation variable duration/deadline (based on run cycle)	44
	Operation not started alert/action settings	20
	Additional AD info (adinfo)	360
	Tags	<160
	Variable tables	98
	Variables	476
	Variable dependencies	88
Current plan (EQQCPnDS)	Header record (one only)	188
	Workstations	212
	Workstation open intervals	48
	Workstation access method data	72
	Occurrences	302
	Operations	356
	Dependencies	14
	Special resource references	64
	Operation Extended Information	200
	Jobs	116
	Executed steps	20
	Print operations	20
	Unique application names	64
	Operations currently in error	264
	Reruns of an operation	264
	Potential predecessor occurrences	32
	Potential successor occurrences	24
	Operations for which job log information has been collected	111
	Stand-alone clean up	70
	Restart and clean up operinfo retrieved	44
	Number of occurrences	43
Extended data (EQQXDnDS and EQQNXDDS)	Header record (one only)	244
	Bind requests	565
JCL repository (EQQJSnDS)	Number of jobs and started tasks	80
	Total lines of JCL	80
	Operations for which job log information has been collected	107
	Total lines of job log information	143

Table 25. Calculations of VSAM data set size (continued)

Data set	Size in bytes is total of:	
	Number of	Multiplied by
 Note: As a base, calculate a figure for all your jobs and started tasks controlled by IBM Z Workload Scheduler. Add to this figure the expected space required for jobs and started tasks in the current plan.		
Long-term plan (EQQLTDS)	Header record (one only)	92
	Occurrences	160
	External dependencies	35
	Operations changed in the LTP dialog	58
Operator instruction (EQQOIDS)	Instructions	78
	Instruction lines	72
Special resource database (EQQRDDS)	Resource definitions	216
	Defined intervals	48
	Entries in the WS connect table	8
Side information file (EQQSIDS)	ETT requests	128
Workstation/calendar (EQQWSDS)	Calendars	96
	Calendar dates	52
	Periods	94
	Period origin dates	6
	Workstation closed dates	80
	Workstations	124
	Workstation access method data	72
	Interval dates	52
	Intervals	32
 Note: 1. Use the current plan data set calculation (EQQCPnDS) for the new current plan data sets (EQQNCPDS and EQQSCPDS). 2. Use the long-term-plan data set calculation (EQQLTDS) for the long-term-plan work data set (EQQLDDS) and the long-term-plan backup (EQQLTBKP). 3. Use the special resource database calculation (EQQRDDS) for the current plan extension data set (EQQCXDS) and the new current plan extension (EQQNCXDS).		

Consider the following information when allocating VSAM data sets.

Archive of current plan (EQQACPDS)

The ACP file is a copy of the old current plan that is created by the database archive job (EQQDBARC). The file name is passed to the job with the parameter VSAMBKP.

Application description data set (EQQADDS)

The application description data set contains application descriptions and JCL variable tables. This data set is allocated as a spanned data set by EQQPCS01. It has a default maximum record size of 131 072. This allocation limits the variable definitions in a variable table to 275 (131 072/476 = 275), provided there are no variable dependencies. If you also use variable dependencies, the number of variables in a JCL variable table is less than 275.

If you use a greater number of variable definitions in a variable table, allocate the application description data set with a greater record size. To calculate how great the record size should be, use this method:

$$\text{LRECL} = 86 + (\text{maximum number of variables in one table} * 476) + (\text{number of variable dependencies} * 88)$$

where 86 is the length of the header record, 476 is the length of each variable record and 88 is the length of each variable dependency record.

This VSAM data set must be allocated with share option set to 3 SHR(3). Do not use share option 2 or 1.



Note: IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports VSAM extended addressability for the AD data set, therefore its size can exceed 4 GB.

Current plan data sets (EQQCPnDS)

The current plan VSAM files are opened and closed many times by IBM Z Workload Scheduler during normal processing. If IBM Z Workload Scheduler is unable to open one of the files, for example if the file is already opened by another job or TSO user, the normal mode manager (NMM), is terminated. The NMM issues message EQQN027E which reports the reason for the unexpected termination. You can issue a `MODIFY` command to restart the NMM subtask.

It is recommended that you do not access the current plan files from outside the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space. Backups of current plan information should be taken from the new current plan (EQQNCPDS). Shut down the Z controller address space if full-pack backups are taken of the volumes where the data sets reside.



Note: IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports VSAM extended addressability for CPn and NCP data sets, therefore their size can exceed 4 GB.

JCL repository data sets (EQQJSnDS)

Take special care when allocating the JCL repository data sets. The following information describes the allocation and use of these data sets.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler maintains its own copy of JCL in the JCL repository data set for every job that it submits in the current plan. It uses a primary and alternate data set for the JCL repository, EQQJS1DS and EQQJS2DS. It reorganizes the JCL repository data set that is in use by copying it to the alternate data set and then switching over to use the newly copied data set. The value you specify on the MAXJSFILE keyword defines whether the JCL repository should be automatically copied and determines how often the automatic copy process should occur.

Use the EQQPCS01 sample job created by the EQQJOBS installation aid to allocate the JS data sets. This job allocates the JS data sets with the SPANNED attribute and maximum record size 180000. This limits the maximum number of JCL statements to 2249 for any one job. If you run jobs with a greater number of JCL statements, increase the record size. Calculate the required record size, in bytes, by multiplying the number of JCL statements in your largest job by 80, and add an extra 80 bytes for the header record. If you define your JS file without SPANNED, the greatest maximum record size that you can specify is 32760 bytes. This lets you store a job with up to 408 JCL records. If you define the JS data sets with SPANNED, the maximum record size you can specify is slightly less than a control area (CA). If you use the EQQUX002 exit, the largest job that can be returned by this exit is 7599 JCL records. Consider this, when you define the maximum record size of the JS data sets.



Note: IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports VSAM extended addressability for JS data sets, therefore their size can exceed 4 GB.

Operator Instruction data set (EQQOIDS)

The operator instruction (OI) database contains operator instructions, each of which corresponds to an operation in the AD database and provides specific instructions about how this operation has to be handled.

This VSAM data set must be allocated with share option set to 3 SHR(3). Do not use share option 2 or 1.

Current plan backup copy data set (EQQSCPDS)

During the creation of the current plan, the SCP data set is used as a CP backup copy for the integration with IBM® Tivoli® Monitoring.

This VSAM data set must be allocated with share option set to 3 SHR(3). Do not use share option 2 or 1.



Note: IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports VSAM extended addressability for SCP data sets, therefore their size can exceed 4 GB.

Data sets for step awareness (EQQSTDS and EQQNSTDS)

The EQQSTDS and EQQNSTDS data sets are used to enable the step awareness function. They are updated only by the controllers and appropriate cleanup actions are performed at the end of the CP turnover process. For details about the current plan turnover, see the *Diagnosis Guide and Reference*.

Data sets for extended data (EQQXDnDS)

The extended data VSAM files are opened and closed by IBM Z Workload Scheduler together with the current plan VSAM files. For this reason, the same considerations for the current plan data sets apply to the data sets for the extended data.

Allocating Restart and Cleanup VSAM data sets

Use the EQQPCS07 member generated by the EQQJOBS installation aid. It is contained in the output library specified on the CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL panel (EQQJOBS8). Submit the EQQPCS07 job to define and initialize the Restart and Clean Up of VSAM files.



Note: You can omit this step if you are migrating from a previous IBM Z Workload Scheduler version.

Restart and cleanup data sets (EQQPKlxx, EQQSKlxx, and EQQSDFxx)

Every IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space that uses the Restart and Cleanup function requires the allocation of a local VSAM repository for the structured information related to each job run.

These data sets have the same structure as the Data Store VSAM files and can be allocated by running the EQQPCS07 sample. Consider that every IBM Z Workload Scheduler requires the allocation of a unique local VSAM repository.

The set of data sets allocated by EQQPCS07 is used by the controller started tasks and it is different from the similar set allocated for the data store started task.

Allocating non-VSAM data sets

This section describes the physical sequential (PS) and partitioned (PDS) data sets. [Table 26: IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets on page 125](#) shows the non-VSAM data sets and their characteristics. Before you allocate the non-VSAM data sets, review the following sections, which contain important information about each of these data sets.

For all the sequential data sets listed below, the current version of IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports DSNTYPE LARGE, which allows allocation of sequential data sets larger than 65535 tracks.

Table 26. IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets

Sample	DD Name	RECFM	LRECL	BLKSIZE	DSORG	Data set
EQQPCS02	AUDITPRT	FBA	133	13300	PS	Input to EQQAUDIT
EQQPCS01	–	U	–	6300	PS	CLIST library (optional)
EQQPCS01	EQQCKPT	U	–	8200	PS	Checkpoint
EQQPCS01	EQQBKPT	U	–	8200	PS	Backup checkpoint
	EQQDLnn	U	–	6300	PS	Dual job-tracking-log
EQQPCS01	EQQDMSG	VBA	84	3120	PS	IBM Z Workload Scheduler diagnostic message and trace

Table 26. IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets (continued)

Sample	DD Name	RECFM	LRECL	BLKSIZE	DSORG	Data set
EQQPCS01	EQQEMAIL	FB	80	3120	PDS	IBM Z Workload Scheduler email
EQQPCS01	EQQINCID	FB	80	3120	PDS	IBM Z Workload Scheduler incident notification
EQQPCS01	EQQSMTP	FB	80	3120	PDS	SMTP data set (internal reader)
EQQPCS02	EQQDUMP	FB	80	3120	PS	IBM Z Workload Scheduler diagnostic
EQQPCS11	EQQDUMP	FB	80	3120	PS	Diagnostic for Output collector
EQQPCS02	EQQEVDS/ EQQEV D_{nn} / EQQHTTPO	F	100	100	PSU	Event
EQQPCS01	EQQEVLIB	FB	80	3120	PDS	Event-driven workload automation (EDWA) configuration file repository
EQQPCS02	EQQINCWK	FB	80	3120	PS	JCC incident work
EQQPCS01	EQQJBLIB	FB	80	3120	PDS	Job library
EQQPCS01	EQQJCLIB	FB	80	3120	PDS	JCC message table
EQQPCS01	EQQJTABL	F	240	240	PS	Critical job table log file
EQQPCS01	EQQJTARC	U	–	6300	PS	Job-tracking archive
EQQPCS01	EQQJT $_{nn}$	U	–	6300	PS	Job-tracking-log
EQQPCS14	EQQDBARC	U	–	6300	PS	Extended-auditing archive
EQQPCS14	EQQDB $_{nn}$	U	–	6300	PS	Extended-auditing log
EQQPCS01	EQQLOGRC	F	128	128	PS	Joblog and Restart Information pending requests Log data set
EQQPCS02	EQQLOOP	VBA	125	1632	PS	Loop analysis message log
EQQPCS02	EQQMLOG	VBA	125	1632	PS	Message log
EQQPCS11	EQQMLOG	VBA	125	1632	PS	Message log for Output collector started task
EQQPCS01	EQQMONDS	F	160	160	PSU	Monitoring task data set used to store events for IBM® Tivoli® Monitoring

Table 26. IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets (continued)

Sample	DD Name	RECFM	LRECL	BLKSIZE	DSORG	Data set
EQQPCS09	EQQOCPBK	–	–	–	–	Data set to allocate the GDG root. The GDG entry is allocated during DP batch run and contains a backup of the old current plan.
EQQPCS11	EQQOUCFV	F	160	160	PSU	Stores events used in the communication between the controller and Output collector for retrieving job logs from the z-centric environment.
EQQPCS11	EQQOUCKP	FB	80	3120	PDSE	Request checkpoint data set used by Output collector as it reads and processes events in the EQQOUCFV data set.
EQQPCS01	EQQPARM	FB	80	3120	PDS	Initialization-statement library
EQQPCS01	EQQPRLIB	FB	80	3120	PDS	Automatic-recovery-procedure library
EQQPCS01	EQQSTC	FB	80	3120	PDS	Started-task submit
EQQPCS02	EQQTROUT	VB	32756	32760	PS	Input to EQQAUDIT
–	EQQYPARM				PDS/PS	PIF
EQQPCS01 EQQPCS02	SYSMDUMP	F	4160	4160	PS	System dump data set
EQQPCS11	SYSMDUMP	F	4160	4160	PS	System dump data set for Output collector
–	–	FB	80	3120	PS	Job-completion-checker incident log

You can allocate these non-VSAM data sets by using the samples listed in [Table 26: IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets on page 125](#), which are generated by the EQQJOBS installation aid.



Note: The data sets cannot be defined as compressed SMS data sets. If you have not customized the members, as described in [Step 9. Allocating data sets on page 116](#), you can allocate a partitioned data set by running a job like the following example. In this example, a started-task-submit data set (EQQSTC) is allocated.

```
Allocating an IBM Z Workload Scheduler partitioned data set
//ALLOCPDS JOB STATEMENT PARAMETERS
//*-----*
//* ALLOCATE A PARTITIONED DATA SET *
```



```
//*-----*
//ALLOC    EXEC PGM=IEFBR14
//SYSUT1   DD DSN=OPCESA.INST.EQQSTC,
//          DISP=(,CATLG),
//          VOL=SER=volser,
//          SPACE=(TRK,(5,0,1)),
//          UNIT=3390,
//          DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3120)
```

To allocate an IBM Z Workload Scheduler sequential data set, you can run a job like the following example. In this example, an event data set (EQQEVDs) is allocated. The IEBGENER utility ensures that the allocated data set has an end-of-file marker in it.



Note: If you allocate IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets using your own jobs, ensure that they have an end-of-file marker in them.

Example

```
Allocating an IBM Z Workload Scheduler sequential data set
//ALLOCPs JOB STATEMENT PARAMETERS
//*-----*
//* ALLOCATE A SEQUENTIAL DATA SET *
//*-----*
//ALLOC    EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//SYSPRINT DD DUMMY
//SYSUT1   DD DUMMY,DCB=(RECFM=F,BLKSIZE=100,LRECL=100)
//SYSUT2   DD DSN=OPCESA.INST.EVENTS,
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG),
//          UNIT=3390,
//          VOL=SER=volser,
//          SPACE=(CYL,3,,CONTIG),
//          DCB=(RECFM=F,BLKSIZE=100,LRECL=100,DSORG=PS)
//SYSIN    DD DUMMY
```

The following sections describe the IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets. They provide you important information to be considered when allocating your data sets.

Internal reader data set (EQQBRDS)

When an IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem is used to submit work, specify the internal reader data set, EQQBRDS, in your started-task procedures. The DD statement must contain the external-writer-data set name, INTRDR, and the class of the internal reader. The class you specify is used as a default message class for jobs that do not have a MSGCLASS parameter specified on their job cards.

Example

```
Example internal reader DD statement
//EQQBRDS DD SYSOUT=(A,INTRDR)
```


Primary checkpoint data sets (EQQCKPT)

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the checkpoint data set to save the current status of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler system. If the Z controller is stopped and restarted, IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the checkpoint data set to return the system to the same state as when it was stopped, ready to continue processing.



Note: IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the backup checkpoint data set (EQQBKPT) only when a remote hot standby controller is being used.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler automatically formats the checkpoint data set the first time it is used. In its initial state, the checkpoint data set specifies that a new current plan exists. The new current plan is defined by DD name EQQNCPDS. IBM Z Workload Scheduler attempts to copy the new plan and make it the current plan. If the copy is successful, IBM Z Workload Scheduler is fully operational. If the copy is not successful, IBM Z Workload Scheduler has become active without a current plan.



Note:

1. A strong relationship exists between the IBM Z Workload Scheduler checkpoint data set and the current plan data set. There is also a strong relationship between the event positioning record (EPR) in the EQQCKPT data set and a specific destination and, therefore, also to a specific event data set. If this relationship is broken, the results of the synchronization processing at controller restart can be unpredictable. This is because events could be lost or reprocessed. Ensure that you do not accidentally delete or overwrite the checkpoint data set
2. To initialize the checkpoint data set, the OPCHOST keyword of the OPCOPTS initialization statement must be set to its default value, that is, OPCHOST(YES), the first time the scheduler is started. With OPCHOST(YES), the NMM initializes the checkpoint data set with FMID and LEVEL corresponding to SSX.

The OPCHOST value can then be changed. For example, you can change the value to OPCHOST(PLEX) when the subsystem is used as the controlling system in XCF.

The space allocation for the data set must be at least 15 tracks. This allocation can accommodate 1000 workstation destinations.

Backup checkpoint data set (EQQBKPT)

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the backup checkpoint data set only when a remote hot standby controller is being used. It is not possible to make a recovery.

Unless you have mistakenly mentioned that you are using a remote hot standby controller when running EQQJOBS, this data set must not be allocated and the related DD card must not be in the JCL.

Diagnostic data sets (EQQDMSG, EQQDUMP, and SYSMDUMP)

Allocate diagnostic data sets for IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces, dialog users, batch jobs, and server.

Diagnostic message and trace data set (EQQDMSG)

You should allocate EQQDMSG for each dialog user. You can allocate EQQDMSG either as a SYSOUT data set or as a DASD data set. If EQQDMSG is not defined, output is written to EQQDUMP.

Diagnostic data set (EQQDUMP)

The tracker, Z controller, and server write debugging information to diagnostic data sets when validity checking discovers internal error conditions. When diagnostic information is logged, a 3999 user abend normally accompanies it. For service purposes, always include an EQQDUMP DD statement for every IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space, dialog user, batch job, and server.

Diagnostic data sets are usually allocated as DASD data sets, but they can also be allocated to SYSOUT.

Dump data set (SYSMDUMP)

EQQPCS02 contains two allocations for the SYSMDUMP data set. For an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space, the data set is allocated with the low-level qualifier SYSDUMP. Allocate a unique SYSMDUMP data set for every IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space. For the scheduler server jobs, SYSMDUMP is allocated with the low-level qualifier SYSDUMPS. EQQPCS01 contains the allocation for the SYSMDUMP data set for IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch jobs; this data set is allocated with the low-level qualifier SYSDUMPB. The IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch jobs can use the same data set. It is allocated with a disposition of MOD in the JCL tailored by EQQJOBS.

Furthermore, SYSMDUMP data sets should be defined with a UACC of UPDATE, that is, WRITE-ENABLED to all user IDs under which a job scheduled by IBM Z Workload Scheduler might possibly be submitted. This is because the SUBMIT SUBTASK of the controller or of the tracker which is submitting a given job might abend while running under the user exit EQQUX001 supplied user ID (RUSER user ID) rather than under the user ID associated with the started task. If this occurs, DUMPTASK fails with an ABEND913 if the user ID in control does not have WRITE access to the SYSMDUMP data set.

The UACC of UPDATE access should be defined to all PIF, dialog, and Dynamic Workload Console servers. If a user is not authorized to update the SYSMDUMP data set, and a server failure occurs while running a request for that user, DUMPTASK fails with an ABEND 912. No diagnostic data will be captured.



Note: If you allocate the SYSMDUMP data set on your own, consider that the SYSMDUMP allocation can also be changed to use LRECL=4160,RECFM=FBS,BLKSIZE=n*4160 (where "n*4160" is a system-determined multiple block size) according to the new possibilities offered by IPCS and z/OS V1.6 or later. The EQQJOBS allocation has been left unchanged, for compatibility with previous allocated data sets.

Email data set (EQQEMAIL)

This data set includes the members that specify the rules for the emails that the Z controller sends when an alert occurs. The EQQEMAIL DD statement is required in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler JCL procedure.



Note:



1. Unlikely other statements, in the EQQEMAIL DD statement data can be in columns 1 through 80.
2. Variable names cannot be split in two lines.

The EQQEMAIL data set contains a member named RULES with the rules that apply to the emails to be sent, and the members with the emails' text. You can set the default values in the following statements:

MAILOPTS

You define the defaults for the RULES member

ALERTS

In the MAIL parameter you define the default members for the emails' text.

For more details about these statements, see *Customization and Tuning*

For details about the emailing feature, see the section about sending emails when an alert condition occurs in *Managing the Workload*.

Incident data set (EQQINCID)

This data set includes the members that specify the rules for the incidents that the Z controller notifies through ServiceNow or a chat tool, when an alert occurs. The EQQINCID DD statement is required in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler JCL procedure.



Note:

1. Unlikely other statements, in the EQQINCID DD statement data can be in columns 1 through 80.
2. Variable names cannot be split in two lines.

The EQQINCID data set contains the members with the incidents' text, and according to the incident notifying tool that you are using:

ServiceNow

A member named RULESTCK (with the rules that apply to the incidents to be opened)

A chat tool such as IBM Z ChatOps, Slack, Microsoft Teams, or Mattermost

A member named RULES (with the rules that apply to the incidents to be notified)

For details about how to have the Z controller:

- Open an incident through ServiceNow, see the section about opening incidents through a chat tool in *Managing the Workload*.
- Notify incidents through a chat tool, see the section about notifying incidents and sharing information through a chat tool in *Managing the Workload*.

Event data sets (EQQEVDS, EQQEV Dnn , and EQQHTTP0)

Every IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space requires a unique event data set. The data set is device-dependent and must have only a primary space allocation. Do *not* allocate any secondary space. The data set is formatted the first time it is used. Each time you use the data set, IBM Z Workload Scheduler keeps a record of where to start. When the last track of the data set is written, IBM Z Workload Scheduler starts writing on the first track again.



Note: The first time IBM Z Workload Scheduler is started with a newly allocated event data set, an SD37 error occurs when IBM Z Workload Scheduler formats the event data set. Do not treat this as an error.

The data set contains records that describe events created by IBM Z Workload Scheduler job-tracking functions. An event-writer task writes to this data set; an event-reader task reads from it. The job-submit task also uses the event data set to checkpoint its activities, using the first record in the data set (the header record). The submit task in a controller address space takes these checkpoints when the computer workstation is the same system (the workstation destination is blank), so the address space needs the EQQEVDS event data set allocated even if there is no event writer task. When an event writer task is started in the controller address space, it shares the data set with the submit task.

The header record contains checkpoint information for up to 13 workstations per destination. If you plan to have more than 13 workstations defined to use a single destination, you can allocate the event data set with a large logical record length to accommodate the required number. To calculate the record length required, use this formula:

$$\text{LRECL} = (\text{No-of-WS-with-this-destination} * 6) + 22$$

Because the event data set provides a record of each event, events will not be lost if an event-processing component of IBM Z Workload Scheduler must be restarted. The submit checkpointing process ensures that submit requests are synchronized with the Z controller, thereby preventing lost requests caused by communication failures.

Define enough space for a single extent data set so that it does not wrap around and write over itself before an event is processed. Two cylinders are enough at most installations. The space allocation must be at least 2 tracks when the record length is 100. There must be sufficient space in the event data set to accommodate 100 records. Consider this requirement if you will define the event data set with a record length greater than 100. For example if you define an LRECL of 15 000, the minimum space allocation is 34 tracks, which equates to 102 records and an event data set that would wrap around very quickly in most installations.

To aid performance, place the event data set on a device that has low activity. If you run programs that use the RESERVE macro, try to allocate the event data set on a device that is not reserved or where only short reserves are taken. The reserve period must be less than 5 minutes.

If you use the job log retrieval function, consider allocating the event data set with a greater LRECL value than that in [Table 26: IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets on page 125](#). This improves performance because input/output (I/O) operations will be reduced because fewer continuation (type NN) events will be created. You can specify 0, or a value from 100 to 32 000 bytes for LRECL. Any other value will cause the event writer to end, and message EQQW053E will be written to the message log. If you do not specify a value for LRECL or specify 0, the data set will be forced to have an LRECL of 100 when it is opened by IBM Z Workload Scheduler. However, the data set must be **unblocked**: the block size must be equal to

the logical record length. If you intend to activate job log retrieval function, use one of the these formulas to estimate the LRECL that you should specify:

Example

```
Calculating the optimum LRECL
LRECL=((NN/EV) * 20) + 100 OR LRECL=(4 * N) + 100
```

In the first formula, NN is the number of continuation events, and EV is the number of all other events. Event types are found in position 21 of the event records. In the second formula, N is the average number of NN events per job. If your calculation yields a value of less than 110, there will be little or no improvement in performance. In this case, you should specify an LRECL value of 100.

You will probably need to test your system first to get an idea of the number and event types that are created. You can then reallocate the event data set when you have gathered information about the events created at your installation. But, before you reallocate an event data set, ensure that the current plan is completely up-to-date. You must also stop the event writer, and any event reader, that uses the data set.



Note: Do not move IBM Z Workload Scheduler event data sets once they are allocated. They contain device-dependent information and cannot be copied from one device type to another, or moved on the same volume. An event data set that is moved will be reinitialized. This causes all events in the data set to be lost. If you have DFHSM or a similar product installed, you should specify that IBM Z Workload Scheduler event data sets are not migrated or moved.

Event-driven workload automation configuration file data set (EQQEVLIB)

This data set contains the configuration files required by the event-driven workload automation (EDWA) process. The configuration files, which are created by the EQQRXTRG program, are used by the trackers to monitor the event conditions. The event-driven workload automation configuration file data set is accessed by the controller, which, when configuration files are created or modified, deploy them to the trackers by storing the files into the data set identified by the EQQJCLIB DD card. This is the same data set to which the trackers' JCLs refer.

By using the event-driven workload automation configuration file data set, you can automate and centralize the deployment of configuration files to the trackers without having to use the EQQLSENT macro for each tracker.

Job library data set (EQQJBLIB)

The job library data set contains the JCL for the jobs and started tasks that IBM Z Workload Scheduler will submit. It is required by a Z controller. If you already have a job library that you will use for IBM Z Workload Scheduler purposes, specify this data set on the EQQJBLIB statement. If not, allocate one before you start the Z controller.



Note: Allocate the job library data set with a only primary space allocation. If a secondary allocation is defined and the library goes into an extent when IBM Z Workload Scheduler is active, you must stop and restart the controller.



Also, do not compress members in this PDS. For example, do not use the ISPF `PACK ON` command, because IBM Z Workload Scheduler does not use ISPF services to read it.

The limitation of allocating the job library data set with only a primary space allocation is not applicable for PDSE data sets.



Note: Each member in the EQQJBLIB must contain one job stream (only one job card), and the job name on the job card must match the job name in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler scheduled operation.

Job-completion-checker data sets

You can optionally use the job completion checker (JCC) to scan SYSOUT for jobs and started tasks. Depending on the JCC functions you want to use, allocate at least one of the three data sets associated with the JCC:

JCC-message-table library (EQQJCLIB)

If the success or failure of a job or started task cannot be determined by system completion codes, the JCC function can be used to scan the SYSOUT created and set an appropriate error code. You determine how the SYSOUT data is scanned by creating JCC message tables. A general message table (EQQGJCCT) must be defined. Job-specific message tables can be created to search for specific data strings in particular jobs. These tables are stored in the PDS with a member name that matches the job name.

Every IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem where you start the JCC task must have access to a message table library. If you want, you can use the same message table library for all IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems.

If you use the data set-triggering function, the data set-selection table (EQQEVLSST or EQQDSLST) must be stored in EQQJCLIB.



Note: Allocate the JCC message table data set with only primary space allocation. The limitation is not applicable for PDSE data sets.

JCC-incident-log data set

You can optionally use the JCC to write records to an incident log data set. This data set is defined by the INCDSN parameter of the JCCOPTS statement.

When scanning SYSOUT data sets, the JCC recognizes events that you define as unusual. If the EQQUX006 exit is loaded by IBM Z Workload Scheduler, the JCC records these events in the incident log data set. The incident log data set can be shared by several JCC tasks running on the same system or on different systems. The data set can also be updated manually or even reallocated while the JCC is active. If the JCC is unable to write to the incident log, the incident work data set is used instead.

JCC-incident work data set (EQQINCWK)

Occasionally, the JCC cannot allocate the incident log data set. This can happen if another subsystem or an IBM Z Workload Scheduler user has already accessed the data set. In this case, the JCC writes to the incident work file, EQQINCWK, instead. If it is not empty, the work file is copied and emptied each time the incident log data set is allocated.

Job-tracking data sets (EQQJTARC, EQQJTnn, EQQDLnn)

Job-tracking data sets are a log of updates to the current plan. They optionally contain audit trail records. Job-tracking data sets comprise:

- Job-tracking logs (EQQJTnn)
- Dual job-tracking logs (EQQDLnn)
- Job-tracking archive (EQQJTARC)

You must allocate EQQJTARC and at least two job-tracking logs (EQQJT01 and EQQJT02) for a Z controller. The actual number of JT logs that you should allocate is determined by the value that you specify on the JTLOGS keyword of the JTOPTS initialization statement. If you decide to allocate three job-tracking logs, specify the DD names EQQJT01, EQQJT02, and EQQJT03. If you specified EQQJT01, EQQJT02, and EQQJT04, an error occurs and IBM Z Workload Scheduler terminates. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the job-tracking logs in turn. When a current plan backup is performed, the active log is appended to EQQJTARC data set.

The size of the CP files, JT and JTARC, can become large, but with appropriate tuning of the size and of the DP frequency, they will not allocate additional extents. If necessary, use the allocation of additional extents (not additional volumes, because only extent allocation is supported in the shipped JT allocation samples). The JTLOG keyword default defines five job-tracking logs. It is recommended that you specify at least three job-tracking logs. Job-tracking logs are switched at every current plan backup. If the interval between backups is very low and JTLOGS(2) is specified, the previously used job-tracking log might not have been archived before IBM Z Workload Scheduler must switch again. If it cannot switch successfully, the normal-mode-manager (NMM) subtask is automatically shut down, preventing further updates to the current plan.

You can optionally allocate dual JT logs. These logs are identified by the EQQDLnn DD names in the Z controller started-task JCL. Allocate the same number of dual JT logs as JT logs. The numeric suffixes, *nn*, must be the same as for the JT logs, because IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the logs with the same number: EQQJT01 and EQQDL01, EQQJT02 and EQQDL02, and so on. IBM Z Workload Scheduler writes job-tracking information to both logs, so that if the active JT log is lost it can be restored from the dual log, and IBM Z Workload Scheduler can be restarted without losing any events. To achieve the maximum benefit from dual JT logs, you should allocate them:

- With the same attributes as the JT logs
- With at least the same amount of space as the JT logs
- On alternate I/O paths and physical volumes than their corresponding JT logs

IBM Z Workload Scheduler tries to use dual JT logs if you specify DUAL(YES) on the JTOPTS initialization statement of a Z controller.

The job-tracking-archive data set accumulates all job-tracking data between successive creations of a new current plan (NCP). Therefore, allocate EQQJTARC with enough space for all job-tracking records that are created between daily planning jobs; that is, extend or replan of the current plan. In other words, be sure that you allocate for EQQJTARC an equal or greater amount of space than the total of the space you allocate for the JT files, or you will get a system error. When the daily planning batch job is run, the active job-tracking log is appended to EQQJTARC, and the JT log is switched. The archive log, EQQJTARC, is then copied to the track log data set referenced by the EQQTROUT DD name during the daily planning process. When IBM Z Workload Scheduler takes over the NCP, the archive data set is emptied.

For a detailed description of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler recovery procedures that use the job-tracking data sets, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Extended-auditing data sets (EQQDBARC, EQQDBnn)

If you have set AUDIT AMOUNT(EXTENDED), extended-auditing data sets are a log of records that show the values that were set before and after the database was changed. They comprise:

- Extended-auditing logs (EQQDBnn)
- Extended-auditing archive (EQQDBARC)

You can control the level of information to be logged by editing the SYSIN card in the EQQAUDIB sample, as follows:

1. Set the input file to use:

DBX

For EQQDBnn

DBR

For EQQDROUT

2. Specify the level of information to log in the report (this applies only to the delete or add action):

K

Only the key is reported.

S

Summary information is reported (default).

F

Complete information is reported.

3. Set the database to audit. If you do not specify any value, all the databases are audited.

AD

Application Description

CAL

Calendar

JV

Job Variable Table

OI

Operator Instructions

PER

Period

RD

Special Resource

RUN

Run cycle group

WS

Workstation

4. Specify the database key to audit. If you did not set a database, this value is ignored.

ad_name

For the AD database.

calendar_name

For the CAL database.

jv_table_name

For the Job Variable Table database.

oi_ad_name oi_op_num

For the Operator Instructions database.

period_name

For the Period database

special_resource_name

Special Resource

run_cycle_group_name

Run cycle group

ws_name

For the WS database

For example, a SYSIN card to audit the EQQDBnn database by logging the complete information about the workstation named CPU1 in the WS database, looks like the following:

```
//SYSIN      DD *
DBXFWS  CPU1
/*
```

You must allocate EQQDBARC and at least two extended-auditing logs (EQQDB01 and EQQDB02) for a Z controller. The actual number of DB logs that you should allocate is determined by the value that you specify on the JTLOGS keyword of the JTOPTS initialization statement. If you decide to allocate three extended-auditing logs, specify the DD names EQQDB01, EQQDB02, and EQQDB03. If you specified EQQDB01, EQQDB02, and EQQDB04, an error occurs and IBM Z Workload Scheduler terminates. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the extended-auditing logs in turn. When a current plan backup is performed, the active log is appended to EQQDBARC data set.

The size of the DB and DBARC data sets can become large, but with appropriate tuning of the size and of the DP frequency, they will not allocate additional extents. If necessary, use the allocation of additional extents (not additional volumes, because only extent allocation is supported in the shipped DB allocation samples).

The extended-auditing-archive data set accumulates all extended-auditing data between successive creations of a new current plan (NCP). Therefore, allocate EQQDBARC with enough space for all extended-auditing records that are created between daily planning jobs; that is, extend or replan of the current plan. In other words, ensure that you allocate for EQQDBARC an equal or greater amount of space than the total of the space you allocate for the DB files, or you will get a system error. When the daily planning batch job is run, the active extended-auditing log is appended to EQQDBARC, and the DB log is switched. The archive log, EQQDBARC, is then copied to the extended-auditing log data set referenced by the EQQDBOUT DD name during the daily planning process. When IBM Z Workload Scheduler takes over the NCP, the EQQDBARC data set is emptied.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler recovery procedures that use the extended-auditing data sets are described in *Customization and Tuning*.

Message log data set (EQQMLOG)

The message log data set can be written to SYSOUT or a data set. The data control block (DCB) for this data set is defined by IBM Z Workload Scheduler as follows:

Example

```
EQQMLOG DCB attributes
DCB=(RECFM=VBA,LRECL=125,BLKSIZE=1632)
```

If the message log data set becomes full during initialization, or when a subtask is restarted, IBM Z Workload Scheduler will abend with error code SD37. In either case, you must stop IBM Z Workload Scheduler and reallocate the message log data set with more space. In all other circumstances, if the data set fills up, IBM Z Workload Scheduler redirects messages to the system log instead.



Note: The scheduler ABENDs with error code sb37 or sd37 if the message log data set becomes full under any of the following circumstances:



- During initialization
- When a subtask is restarted
- While processing any modify command which requires parsing of initialization parameters or specifies the newnoerr, noerrmem(member), or lstnoerr options

In the last case, the ABEND also occurs if the EQQMLOG is already full when any such command is issued. In all these cases you must reallocate more space to the message log data set. In all the other cases, if the data set fills up, the scheduler redirects messages to the system log instead.

EQQPCS02 contains two allocations for the EQQMLOG data set. For an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space, the data set is allocated with the low-level qualifier MLOG. For the scheduler server jobs, the data set is allocated with the low-level qualifier MLOGS.



Note: If you allocate the message log data set on DASD, define a different data set for IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch program. The data set must also be different from the one used by each IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space (controller, standby controller, tracker, and server). The data set cannot be shared.

See also [Using two message log \(MLOG\) data sets on page 49](#).

Loop analysis log data set (EQQLOOP)

The loop analysis log data set can be written to SYSOUT or a data set. The data control block (DCB) for this data set is defined by IBM Z Workload Scheduler as follows:

Example

```
EQQLOOP DCB attributes
DCB=(RECFM=VBA,LRECL=125,BLKSIZE=1632)
```

This data set is defined the same way as for EQQMLOG, but it is specific for loop analysis and is populated only if a loop condition occurs. It is required by daily planning batch programs (extend, replan, and trial).

SMTP data set (EQQSMTP)

This data set is needed only if you have set `ALERTS MAIL` to have the Z controller send an email when a specific event occurs.

Specify the EQQSMTP DD statement in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler JCL procedure, to indicate the internal reader data set used for sending the email via z/OS. The DD statement must contain the external-writer-data set name, INTRDR, and the class of the internal reader. The class you specify is used as a default message class for jobs that send the email.

For details about the ALERTS statement, see *Customization and Tuning*

Example

```
Example internal reader DD statement
//EQQSMTP DD SYSOUT=(B,INTRDR)
```

Controller and Output collector communication data sets

The EQQOUCV and EQQOUCKP data sets are used for the communication that takes place between the controller and Output collector in the retrieval process of the job logs produced in the z-centric environment. The communication process is based upon events. Every time a job in the z-centric environment completes or terminates, the controller queues an event for the output collector with the information necessary to identify the job and the agent that run it.

The communication process is as follows:

1. The Event Manager task of the controller writes an event in EQQOUCV every time a job completes or terminates and updates the next-to-write counter.
2. The Output collector started task reads an event from this data set, checkpoints it in EQQOUCKP, dispatches it to the proper thread, and marks the event as processed moving to the next-to-read index in the data set header.

EQQOUCV is a sequential data set organized in records. Includes a header pointing to the next-to-read and next-to-write records.

EQQOUCKP is a partitioned data set. It is used to checkpoint the incoming requests to prevent their loss in case of unplanned closures. The EQQOUCV queue manager writes the request in EQQOUCKP before placing it in the destination queue in memory while the thread that collects the log from the agent deletes the request after it is satisfied. The member name must be unique but not necessarily meaningful (for example J0000001 or J0000002).

Parameter library (EQQPARM)

Each IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem reads members of a parameter library when it is started. Parameter library members (residing in library extent), that have been created, cannot be accessed after they have been opened. To avoid this problem, the data set that defines the EQQPARM library should be allocated without any secondary extents. The limitation is not applicable for PDSE data sets. The library contains initialization statements that define runtime options for the subsystem. Allocate at least one parameter library for your IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems. You can keep the parameters for all your subsystems in one library, as long as it resides on a DASD volume that is accessible by all systems.

PIF parameter data set (EQQYPARM)

Allocate the PIF parameter data set if you intend to use a programming interface to IBM Z Workload Scheduler. The data set can be sequential or partitioned. In the PIF parameter file you specify how requests from the programming interface should be processed by IBM Z Workload Scheduler. By defining an INIT initialization statement in the PIF parameter data set, you override the global settings of the INTFOPTS statement.

For a detailed description of the initialization statements, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Automatic-recovery-procedure library (EQQPRLIB)

Allocate a data set for the automatic-recovery-procedure library if you intend to use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler automatic-recovery function. The library is used by the `ADDPROC` JCL rebuild parameter of the JCL recovery statement. This parameter lets you include JCL procedures in a failing job or started task before it is restarted.

Started-task-submit data set (EQQSTC)

The started-task-submit data set is used by IBM Z Workload Scheduler to temporarily store JCL when a started task is to be started. Use these attributes for this data set:

Example

```
EQQSTC attributes
SPACE=(TRK,(5,0,1)),
DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3120)
```

Include an EQQSTC in the JES PROCLIB concatenation on each system where IBM Z Workload Scheduler schedules started-task operations. The data set is used as a temporary staging area for the started-task JCL procedure. When the start command has been issued for the task and control for the task has passed to JES, IBM Z Workload Scheduler deletes the JCL by resetting the PDS. This means that you never need to compress the data set. For more information, see [Implementing support for started-task operations on page 145](#).



Note: IBM Z Workload Scheduler does not support partitioned data set extended (PDSE) libraries for a started-task-submit data set.

Allocating Data Store data sets

At this stage of your installation, use the EQQPCS04 member generated by the EQQJOBS installation aid. It is contained in the output library specified on the CREATE DATA STORE SAMPLES panel (EQQJOBS5). Submit the EQQPCS04 job to define and initialize the Data Store VSAM files.



Note: You can omit this step if you are migrating from a previous IBM Z Workload Scheduler version.

The Data Store VSAM files can be of three types:

Unstructured

The type associated to EQQUDFxx; used to save joblogs. These files are allocated only when the Joblog Retrieval option in panel EQQJOBS7 is set to Y. The UDF data sets (DDNAME EQQUDFNN) are used only by the data store started task.

Structured

The type associated to EQQSDFxx; used to save structured joblog information. These files are required. The EQQSDFXX data sets allocated for the data store have the same structure as the EQQSDFXX data sets used by the controller but they are a different set.

KSDS

The type used for EQQPKlxx and EQQSKlxx. The EQQPKlXX and EQQSKlXX data sets allocated for the data store have the same structure as the structure of the EQQPKlXX and EQQSKlXX data sets used by the controller but they are a different set.

They are listed and described in [Table 27: Data Store VSAM data sets on page 142](#):

Table 27. Data Store VSAM data sets

Sample	DD Name	Rec. Type	Attributes	Share Option	Keys	Record Size	data set
EQQPCS04	EQQPKIxx	KSDS	UNIQUE INDEXED	1, 3	34 0	77 77	Primary Index
EQQPCS04	EQQSDFxx	LINEAR	N/A	2, 3	N/A	N/A	Data files
EQQPCS04	EQQSKIxx	KSDS	UNIQUE INDEXED	1, 3	38 0	76 32000	Secondary Index
EQQPCS04	EQQUDFxx	LINEAR	N/A	2, 3	N/A	N/A	Data files

For information about how to estimate the size of the Data Store VSAM files, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning*.

Allocating data sets for the Dynamic Workload Console reporting feature

Use the EQQPCS09 member generated by the EQQJOBS installation aid and contained in the output library specified on the CREATE SAMPLE JOB JCL panel (EQQJOBS3) to define and allocate:

- The GDG base entry used for old current plan backup which is created during the daily plan batch process, when you specify the BATCHOPTS statement with the JRUNHISTORY parameter set to YES. The GDG data set is identified in the daily planning EXTEND or REPLAN batch job by the EQQOCPBK ddname.
- The VSAM data set where the archiving process copies each generation data set. Allocate the VSAM data set with the same characteristics as the current plan VSAM data set, because it is used to store the old current plan.

For detailed information about the archiving process, see *Managing the Workload*.

Allocating the files and directories

The following features use files on UNIX™ System Services (USS):

- End-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities, if SSLKEYRINGTYPE is set to USS in the HTTPOPTS statement.
- Features running Java™ utilities:
 - Historical run data archiving for Dynamic Workload Console reporting
 - Event-driven workload automation for data set triggering
 - License computation for submitting jobs on z-centric and dynamic agents.

By default, the EQQJOBS installation aid sets the following paths for the following directories:

JAVA utilities enablement work directory (EQQJOBS9)

```
/var/TWS/inst
```

SSL for TCP/IP connection work directory (EQQJOBSC)

```
/var/TWS/inst/ssl
```

By keeping the default directories, if the end-to-end work directory is deleted, the Java™ and SSL work directories are also deleted. To avoid this problem, set different paths for the different work directories. For example:

JAVA utilities enablement work directory (EQQJOBS9)

```
/var/TWS/JAVAUTL
```

SSL for TCP/IP connection work directory (EQQJOBSC)

```
/var/TWS/SSL
```

To create the correct directories and files, run the following sample jobs for each controller that supports the specific feature:

- The EQQPCS08 sample, for the:
 - Historical run data archiving.
 - Event-driven workload automation.
 - Jobs submission on z-centric and dynamic agents.

To run the previous samples, you must have one of the following permissions:

- UNIX™ System Services (USS) user ID (UID) equal to 0
- BPX.SUPERUSER FACILITY class profile in RACF®
- UID specified in the JCL in eqqUID and belonging to the group (GID) specified in the JCL in eqqGID

The user must also have the `/bin/sh` login shell defined in his OMVS section of the RACF® profile. Make sure that the login shell is set as a system default or use the following TSO command to define it:

```
ALTUSER username OMVS(PROGRAM('/bin/sh'))
```

To check the current settings:

1. Run the following TSO command:

```
LISTUSER username OMVS
```

2. Look in the PROGRAM line of the OMVS section.

After running EQQPCS08, you find the following file in the work directory:

java/env.profile

Defines the environmental variable required by the Java™ utilities.

You can customize this file and enable the use of the DB2 installed on the host for running IBM Z Workload Scheduler reports from the Dynamic Workload Console by following the procedure described in [Setting up to use the DB2 on z/OS for reports on Dynamic Workload Console on page 143](#) to

Setting up to use the DB2 on z/OS for reports on Dynamic Workload Console

Customize the `env.profile` file, unloaded in the work directory by EQQPCS08, to use a DB2 on z/OS to run reports from the Dynamic Workload Console without having to install another DB2 on the distributed side.

To use the DB2 on z/OS to run IBM Z Workload Scheduler reports on the Dynamic Workload Console:

1. Open the [env.profile on page 143](#) file and uncomment and customize the following rows:

```
#export DB2_JDBC_PATH=/usr/lpp/db2910_jdbc/classes
#export CLASSPATH="$DB2_JDBC_PATH"/db2jcc.jar:"$DB2_JDBC_PATH"/db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar:
"$CLASSPATH":
```

where the path specified in the `DB2_JDBC_PATH` is the path where the `db2jcc.jar` and `db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar` files are stored on the z/OS system.

These rows are preceded by the comment:

```
#If DB2 is on z/OS, customize and uncomment the following line
```

2. To continue the setup, see the section about how to create the database in the z/OS environment in *Managing the Workload*.

Setting up the Workload Automation Programming Language environment

To create the correct environment to use the Workload Automation Programming Language, ensure that you run the EQQWPLCO sample job.

Step 10. Creating JCL procedures for address spaces

Perform this task for a tracker, Data Store, Z controller or standby Z controller, output collector.

You must define a JCL procedure or batch job for each IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space.

For details, see [Defining subsystems on page 94](#).

The EQQJOBS dialog generates several members in the output library that you specified. The following table lists the members that provide samples for the scheduler's address spaces:

Table 28. Started task JCL samples for IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces

Address Space for:	Member
Controller and tracker	EQQCON (sample started task) EQQCONP (sample started task parameters)
Controller	EQQCONO (sample started task) EQQCONOP (sample started task parameters)
Tracker	EQQTRA (sample started task) EQQTRAP (sample started task parameters)
Server	EQQSER (sample started task) EQQSERP (sample started task parameters)
Data Store	EQQDST (sample started task) EQQDSTP (sample started task parameters)

Table 28. Started task JCL samples for IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces (continued)

Address Space for:	Member
Output collector	EQQOUC (sample started task) EQQOUCP (sample started task parameters)

These members contain started task JCL that is tailored with the values you entered in the dialog. Tailor these members further, according to the data sets you require. Alternatively, you can copy a member from the SEQQSAMP library to one of your own libraries, and tailor it manually.

If you create a new library for your IBM Z Workload Scheduler started-task procedures, remember to specify the library in the JES PROCLIB concatenation. Then you must restart JES to include the new library.

If you prefer, you can run IBM Z Workload Scheduler as a batch job rather than as a started task. Here, the JCL can reside in any library and will require a job card, besides the JCL requirements in [Table 29: IBM Z Workload Scheduler required data sets on page 146](#).

Implementing support for started-task operations

The JCL procedures for started-task operations started by IBM Z Workload Scheduler must be stored in a PDS concatenated on the EQQJBLIB DD name. You can include existing data sets, such as SYS1.PROCLIB, if you prefer. Preparation, tailoring, and variable substitution are handled the same way as for batch job operations. When a started-task operation is started by IBM Z Workload Scheduler, the JCL procedure is written to the started-task-submit data set (EQQSTC) on the system where the operation is to be run. IBM Z Workload Scheduler issues a START command for this procedure and then removes the JCL procedure from the EQQSTC data set.

JES2 users should specify the started-task-submit data set on the PROC*nn* DD statement of the JES2 JCL procedure on each z/OS system. The suffix *nn* is the value specified for the PROCLIB parameter of the STCCLASS statement in JES2PARM. To ensure that the correct version of the JCL procedure is started, place the EQQSTC data set first in the concatenation.

JES3 users should specify the started-task-submit data set on the IATPLB*nn* DD statement of the JES3 global system. The suffix *nn* is the value specified in the JES3 standards parameter STCPROC. To ensure that the correct JCL procedure will be started, place the EQQSTC data set first in the concatenation. For each submit task that is running on a JES3 local system in the JES3 complex, also include that data set in the JES3 global concatenation.

If you do not use the Restart and Cleanup function, you must follow the previous instructions to work with started-task operations. Otherwise, because the Restart and Cleanup function adds a job card to the procedures for scheduled STC workstation operations at the same time that it adds the //TIVDSTxx output JCL statements, there are some exceptions to the previous instructions if you want to use the Restart and Cleanup function. The JCL for a started task can contain a job card *only* if the JCL is in a data set in the IEFPDSI or IEFJOBS concatenations of MSTJCLxx when the start command is issued.

You must add the EQQSTC data set to the IEFPDSI DD statement in MSTJCLxx instead of to the JES2 PROC*nn* or the JES3 global IATPLB*nn* DD statement as mentioned above.

In addition, all data sets listed in IEFPSI must be included in the system master catalog.



Note:

1. To include EQQSTC, you must restart JES.
2. Do not use the BLDL parameter of the JES3 PROC statement to specify the procedure name of a started task that is to be scheduled by IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

The EQQSTC data set can be shared by IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystems that run on the same z/OS® image. If you use *global resource serialization* (GRS), the EQQSTC data set can be shared by all z/OS® systems defined in the GRS ring if you propagate requests for the resource. To propagate the resource requests to all systems in the ring, define the resource SYSZDRK data set name in the SYSTEM inclusion RNL of the GRSRNLnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. For more information about defining the GRS resource name list, see *z/OS® Initialization and Tuning Reference*.

Required data sets

Table 29: IBM Z Workload Scheduler required data sets on page 146 shows the data sets required by an IBM Z Workload Scheduler started task. Include the data sets in your JCL procedures as indicated in this table.

Table 29. IBM Z Workload Scheduler required data sets

DD Name	Required by				Defines
	Controller	Tracker	Server	Data Store	
EQQADDS	✓				Application descriptions and JCL variable tables
EQQBRDS	✓	✓			A JES internal-reader
EQQCKPT	✓				Checkpoint data set
EQQCP1DS	✓				Primary current plan
EQQCP2DS	✓				Alternate current plan
EQQCXDS	✓				Current plan extension
EQQEVDS	✓	✓			Event data set for the submit checkpointing function and for the event-writer task
EQQEVLIB	✓				Configuration file repository for event-triggered resource handling
EQQJBLIB	✓				JCL PDS libraries
EQQLOGRC	✓				Joblog and Restart Information pending requests log data set

Table 29. IBM Z Workload Scheduler required data sets (continued)

DD Name	Required by				Defines
	Controller	Tracker	Server	Data Store	
EQQJS1DS	✓				Primary JCL repository
EQQJS2DS	✓				Alternate JCL repository
EQQJTABL	✓				Job table log file. The scheduler considers this data set as required only if you defined at least one critical job. Allocate it with the same size as EQQJTARC.
EQQJTARC	✓				Job-tracking archive
EQQJTnn	✓				Job-tracking logs
EQQLTDS	✓				Long-term plan
EQQMLIB	✓	✓	✓	✓	Message library
EQQMLOG	✓	✓	✓	✓	Output message log
EQQNCPDS	✓				New current plan
EQQNCXDS	✓				New current plan extension
EQQNXDDS	✓				NCP extension
EQQOIDS	✓				Operator instructions
EQQPARM	✓	✓	✓	✓	Parameter library
EQQRDDS	✓				Special resource descriptions
EQQSCPDS	✓				Current plan backup copy data set. Needed for integration with IBM® Tivoli® Monitoring.
EQQSIDS	✓				Side information; ETT criteria and configuration data
EQQWSDS	✓				Workstation, calendar and period descriptions
EQQXD1DS	✓				CP1 extension
EQQXD2DS	✓				CP2 extension

**Note:**



1. The data sets that are required for a Z controller are also required for a standby Z controller.
2. The number of job-tracking-log data sets to include depends on the value that you specify in the JTLOGS keyword of the JTOPTS initialization statement. Specify at least 3 job-tracking logs. The default value is 5.
3. You must specify EQQEVDS for a Z controller even if an event writer is not started in the Z controller address space. The EQQEVDS data set is used for submit checkpointing. It can be the same data set that is used by an event-writer function. Use a unique EQQEVDS for each address space.
4. In order to set the TCP/IP task up correctly, you need to change the scheduler start procedure to include the C runtime libraries (CEE.SCEERUN in the STEPLIB DD statement).

If you have multiple TCP/IP stacks, or if the name you used for the procedure that started the TCPIP address space was not the default (TCPIP), then you must change the start procedure to include the SYSTCPD DD card to point to a data set containing the TCPIPJOBNAME parameter.

The standard method to determine the connecting TCP/IP image is:

- Connect the TCP/IP specified by TCPIPJOBNAME in the active TCPIP.DATA
- Locate TCPIP.DATA using the SYSTCPD DD card.

Optional data sets

[Table 30: IBM Z Workload Scheduler optional data sets on page 148](#) shows the data sets that you can optionally include in your JCL procedures. Specify these data sets only if you want to use the function with which they are associated.

Table 30. IBM Z Workload Scheduler optional data sets

DD Name	Can be used by					Defines
	Controller	Tracker	Server	Data Store	Output collector	
AUDITPRT	✓					Input to EQQAUDIT
EQQDLnn	✓					Dual job-tracking logs
EQQDUMP	✓	✓	✓			Diagnostic dump output
EQQEVDDnn		✓				Event data set for an event-reader task
EQQINCWK		✓				JCC incident work file
EQQJCLIB		✓				JCC library for message tables and for data set triggering selection table
EQQMONDS	✓					Data set used by monitoring task to store events for IBM® Tivoli® Monitoring.
EQQOUCEV	✓				✓	Data set used for the communication that takes place between the controller and Output collector in the retrieval process

Table 30. IBM Z Workload Scheduler optional data sets (continued)

DD Name	Can be used by					Defines
	Controller	Tracker	Server	Data Store	Output collector	
						of the job logs produced in the z-centric environment.
EQQOUCKP	✓				✓	Data set used for the communication that takes place between the controller and Output collector in the retrieval process of the job logs produced in the z-centric environment.
EQQPKlxx	✓					Primary index
EQQRLIB	✓	✓				Automatic-recovery procedures
EQQSDFnn	✓					Structured data files
EQQSKlxx	✓					Secondary index
EQQSTC	✓	✓				Started-task-submit data set
EQQTROUT	✓					Input to EQQAUDIT
EQQUDFnn				✓		Unstructured data files
STEPLIB	✓	✓	✓			Load-module library
SYSMDUMP	✓	✓	✓			Dump data set

**Note:**

1. The optional data sets that you specify for a Z controller must also be specified for a standby Z controller.
2. If you use dual job-tracking, the number of dual job-tracking logs (EQQDLnn) must be the same as the number of job-tracking logs (EQQJTnn).
3. Include EQQDUMP and SYSMDUMP for diagnostic purposes.
4. The EQQEVDnn DD name identifies the event data set for an event-reader task. The nn value is the sequence number specified in the ERSEQNO keyword of the event reader that will process this data set. It is always a 2-digit number. That is, if the sequence number is less than 10, a leading 0 must be added.
5. Specify the EQQSTC data set if you use IBM Z Workload Scheduler to schedule started-task operations.
6. Use the standard JCL naming conventions for each user-defined DD name; that is, 1-8 alphanumeric or national characters, of which the first character must be alphabetic or national.
7. The STDENV DD name can point to a sequential DS or a PDS member (for example, a member of the PARMLIB) in which the user can define environment variables to initialize Language Environment®. STDENV must have a F or FB format with a record length equal or greater than 80. In this data set/member you can



put your environment variables specifying VARNAME=value. On each row you can specify only 1 variable, characters after column 71 are ignored. If you need more than 71 characters, you can add any character in column 72 and continue on the next row (the character in column 72 is ignored).

8. THE EQQTROUT DD card must point to a data set or be dummy, but it cannot be removed from the daily plan JCL. In particular if a CP extend or replan job is submitted with the EQQTROUT DD deleted or commented out, the DRTOP/DNTOP JOBSTEP can end with RC08, even if a new plan is created and taken over, because EQQTROUT could not be opened. Also the data set pointed by the EQQTROUT DD must be allocated by using the DCB values provided in the allocation JCL sample: RECFM=VB,LRECL=32756,BLKSIZE=32760 otherwise the contents of the data set will be unreadable.
9. Data sets EQQOUCV and EQQOUCKP are required if you activate the Output collector started task.

Step 11. Defining the initialization statements

The initialization statements that you need to define depend on the functions of IBM Z Workload Scheduler that you want to use. For details about how to define initialization statements, see *Customization and Tuning*.

When IBM Z Workload Scheduler starts running, it reads the parameter library to determine initialization options and parameters. The parameter library is specified by the PARM parameter of the EXEC statement for the tracker and controller started-task procedures, and by the EQQPARM DD statement for all the other started tasks and EQQBATCH jobs. If the PARM parameter is not specified, the default member name STDPARMS is used; if the name does not exist, message EQQZ010E is issued.

Step 12. Setting up the ISPF environment

Perform this task if you are installing the scheduler dialogs.

Because IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialogs run under ISPF, you must set up an ISPF environment. If you are not familiar with ISPF dialogs, see *ISPF Guide and Reference* and *ISPF Examples*.

To set up your ISPF environment, perform the steps described in the following topics:

1. [Setting up the CLIST library on page 150](#)
2. [Setting up the ISPF tables on page 151](#)
3. [Allocating dialog data sets to your TSO session on page 153](#)
4. [Invoking the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog on page 155](#)

Setting up the CLIST library

When you ran the SMP/E apply job, the scheduler CLIST library was copied to a data set allocated to DD name SEQQCLIB. Allocate this data set to the SYSPROC DD name of the TSO logon procedure JCL. This library includes the EQQXSUBC CLIST, which is used by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog when a user requests an IBM Z Workload Scheduler background batch job to be submitted.

For the online EQQAUDIT to work, either copy EQQAUDNS into a library that is part of the TSO SYSPROC concatenation or add the batch-job skeleton library, which is created by EQQJOBS, into the SYSPROC concatenation.

Setting up the ISPF tables

Allocate to the ISPF table library (ISPTLIB) the following tables located in the SEQQTBL0 library:

EQQACMDS

ISPF command table

EQQAEDIT

Default ISPF edit profile

EQQELDEF

Default ended-in-error-list layouts

EQQEVERT

Ended-in-error-list variable-entity read table

EQQLUDEF

Default dialog connect table

EQQRLDEF

Default ready-list layouts

EQQXVART

Dialog field definitions

If you use the ISPF command table EQQACMDS, invoke IBM Z Workload Scheduler as a separate ISPF application with the name EQQA. [Invoking the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog on page 155](#) describes this in more detail. If you want to use a different ISPF application name, for example EQQB, create a command table with the name EQQBCMDS.

The customization of the ISPF Dialog is affected and depends on the ISPF application names. This makes necessary that you create copies of the EQQACMDS and EQQAEDIT members of SEQQBTL0 for each ISPF application and locate these copies in ISPTLIB. For example, for the ISPF application names EQQX and EQQY you need to create the ISPTLIB members EQQXCMDS, EQQYCMDS, EQQXEDIT, and EQQYEDIT.

If necessary, you can modify or create an ISPF command table, using ISPF/PDF option 3.9. Note that ISPF/PDF option 3.9 writes the created or modified table to the data set allocated to the ISPTABL.

Setting up the default dialog-controller connection table

Table EQQLUDEF contains values used when establishing the connection between the scheduler dialog user and the controller. These are default values set initially for your installation by the system programmer. Individual users can then modify the values to suit their requirements. Modify the table, adding the following information:

- The names of the controllers in your installation
- When a controller is accessed remotely, the combination of the controller name and the LU name of a server set up to communicate with it
- The set of dialog-controller connections that are to be available to all dialog users

When a user opens the scheduler dialog 0.1, the scheduler first tries to read the connection table `EQQALTCP` in the ISPF profile library `ISPPROF`. The connection table name begins with the `NEWAPPL` ID specified when invoking the scheduler dialog. For example, if the ISPF application name is `EQQB`, the connection table name is `EQQBLTCP`. If you used a different ISPF application name `xxxx`, the connection table name is `xxxxLTCP` (if the application name is shorter than four characters, it is filled with `x` up to length 4). If it cannot find the table, it reads the default connection table `EQQLUDEF` from the `ISPTLIB` allocation.

When a user modifies the connection table (through the scheduler dialog option 0.1), the changes are written to the `EQQALTCP` (or `xxxxLTCP`) table of `ISPPROF`.

To change the distributed `EQQLUDEF` table:

1. Choose the scheduler dialog option 0.1.
2. Set up the dialog-controller connections for the installation.
3. Copy the connection table `EQQALTCP` (or `xxxxLTCP`) from your ISPF profile library to the scheduler table library allocated to `ISPTLIB`, renaming the copy to the default connection table name `EQQLUDEF`.
4. Optionally, to change the default subsystem name value shown on the `EQQOPCAP` panel, you need to change the default setting of the `&xopcnm` variable (currently set to `OPCC`) in the `EQQXINIP` dummy panel. You must do this before the 0.1 dialog option is selected for the first time, so that your customized value is used when the `EQQLUDEF` profile is read and the `EQQxLTCP` profile is created upon the first access to dialog option 0.1.

You can access and work with different controllers from the same TSO session, using `ISPF SPLIT` to start different IBM Z Workload Scheduler instances with different ISPF application names. In this case you might want to add more than one option to invoke IBM Z Workload Scheduler from the ISPF master application menu, as in the following example:

```
BODY
.
.
.
1 ..... - .....
2 ..... - .....
. .... - .....
OA OPC - Operations Planning and Control A <==
OB OPC - Operations Planning and Control B <==
. .... - .....
PROC
.
.
.
1, ....
2, ....
., ....
OA, 'PANEL(EQQOPCAP) NEWAPPL(EQQA)
OB, 'PANEL(EQQOPCAP) NEWAPPL(EQQB)
```



```

.
.
.
END

```



Note: Because the value of the ISPF variable &XOPCNM. (displayed in the EQQOPCAP dialog as "You are communicating with xxxx") and the default controller selected in the 0.1 dialog (EQQXLUSL) are stored, respectively, in members xxxxPROF and xxxxLOUT, make sure that any changes you make to these ISPF profile members are made consistently. For example, if you modify or delete xxxxPROF, you must also modify or delete xxxLOUT.

Setting up list tables and graphical attribute tables

The ISPF tables for list layouts, EQQRLDEF and EQQELDEF, are the default tables displayed for all IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog users in your installation. They can be modified to suit an individual user's requirements or you can create new defaults for all users in your installation. Modified tables are stored in the user's ISPF profile library under another member name. *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning* describes how to modify the default tables for your installation.

GDDM® default values are used for graphical attributes. The defaults can be modified to suit the requirements of an individual user or you can create default values for all users. Modified defaults are stored in the EQQAXGRC member of the ISPF profile data set.

When setting up these tables for dialog users, keep the following points in mind:

- When a user requests a graphical display using the GRAPH command, IBM Z Workload Scheduler first searches through the ISPPROF library for the EQQAXGRC ISPF table. If it cannot find the table there, the product searches the ISPTLIB library for the table.
- When a user modifies the graphical display attributes (using the ATTR command from within an IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog), the EQQAXGRC ISPF table is written to the ISPPROF library.
- When a user displays an ended-in-error list, IBM Z Workload Scheduler first searches for the layout in the EQQELOUT table on ISPPROF. If it cannot find the layout there, the product uses the layout from the EQQELDEF table on ISPTLIB.
- When a user modifies an ended-in-error list layout, the changes are written to the EQQELOUT table.
- When a user displays a ready list, IBM Z Workload Scheduler first searches for the layout in the EQQRLOUT table of ISPPROF. If it cannot find the layout there, the product uses the layout from the EQQRLDEF table on ISPTLIB.
- When a user modifies a ready list layout, the changes are written to the EQQRLOUT table.

Allocating dialog data sets to your TSO session

[Table 31: ISPF and IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog data sets on page 153](#) describes the ISPF and IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets that you must allocate to the TSO session to run the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog.

Table 31. ISPF and IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog data sets

DD Name	IBM Z Workload Scheduler use	Created by
SYSPROC	CLIST library	SMP/E run (SEQQCLIB)

Table 31. ISPF and IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog data sets (continued)

DD Name	IBM Z Workload Scheduler use	Created by
ISPPROF	User-session defaults, read/write tables	Your existing ISPPROF data set
ISPLLIB	Panel library	SMP/E run (SEQQPxxx, SEQQGxxx)
ISPLLIB	Message library	SMP/E run (SEQQMxxx)
ISPSLIB	Skeleton JCL library	EQQJOBS option 2
ISPTLIB	Read tables (default)	SMP/E run (SEQQTBL0)
EQQMLIB	Message library	SMP/E run (SEQQMxxx)
EQQM LOG	Message log	TSO logon procedure
EQQTMPL	Advanced ISPF panel templates	SMP/E run (SEQQLxxx)

**Note:**

1. The xxx suffix represents the national language version supplied with your distribution media.
2. If you did not install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load modules in a library defined in the LNKLSTnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB, also allocate the load-module library to either the STEPLIB or ISPLLIB DD statements. Except for the EQQMINOP module, the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog modules need not run APF-authorized. So if EQQMINOP is not in the LNKLSTnn concatenation, you must copy it to another library so that it can be loaded APF-authorized. The product dialog loads EQQMINOP through IKJEFTSR, therefore you cannot use LIBDEF to add the library containing EQQMINOP to your STEPLIB or ISPLLIB concatenations.
3. Consider allocating EQQDMSG and EQQDUMP to the TSO session for diagnostic purposes.
4. Ensure that the library containing IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch job skeletons, generated by EQQJOBS, is allocated to the ISPSLIB DD statement.
5. You need the EQQMLIB library to run the IBM Z Workload Scheduler TSO commands or to use a TCP/IP connected dialog server..
6. The EQQMLOG data set must be allocated to the TSO session of ISPF dialog users to ensure catching all the AUDIT related error messages when the interactive invocation of the audit is used.
7. For the online EQQAUDIT to work, either copy EQQAUDNS into a library that is part of the TSO SYSPROC concatenation or add the batch-job skeleton library, which is created by EQQJOBS, into the SYSPROC concatenation.
8. EQQTMPL identifies the libraries where the Advanced ISPF panel templates are loaded. The templates are the predefined layouts available for the advanced ISPF panels.

More views are provided for the same panel; for example, for the EQQMOPRV panel (list of operations in the plan), the templates provided are:



View	Description
EQQMO PRT	Compact
EQQMOPLT	Full
EQQMOPJT	Job Detail

Invoking the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog

You can invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog in the following ways:

- [Using the EQQOPCAC sample CLIST on page 155](#)
- [Modifying an existing ISPF selection menu on page 155](#)
- [Selecting the main menu directly from TSO on page 156](#)
- [Using the ISPF select service on page 156](#)

To switch to the advanced style, see [Switching to the advanced style for ISPF panels on page 156](#).

Using the EQQOPCAC sample CLIST

You can invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog by using the sample CLIST EQQOPCAC. When you run the sample CLIST in TSO READY mode, EQQOPCAC allocates the dialog data sets and invokes ISPF with the initial master panel EQQ@MSTR. The EQQ@MSTR panel, which is in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler panel library, lets you select the applications ISPF/PDF or IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

Modifying an existing ISPF selection menu

You can invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog by including IBM Z Workload Scheduler as an option on your existing ISPF master application menu, or on any other selection menu. The following example shows how to do this. The statements that you insert are marked on the right with an arrow (<====).

```
ISPF-selection-menu modification for IBM Z Workload Scheduler
)BODY
:
  1 ..... - .....
  2 ..... - .....
  . ..... - .....
  0 OPC - Operations Planning and Control <====
  . ..... - .....
)PROC
:REQCLEANUP - Created by ActiveSystems 12/14/99 Entity not
defined.
  = TRANS(TRUNC(REQCLEANUP - Created by ActiveSystems 12/14/99 Entity not
defined.,'.')
```

```

1 , ....
2 , ....
. , ....
0 , 'PANEL(EQQOPCAP) NEWAPPL(EQQA)' <====
. , ....
:
)END

```

Before you can invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog, allocate the data sets. You can allocate these data sets through the TSO logon procedure, or by running a CLIST after TSO logon.

Although you can use any name that follows the guidelines already established at your installation, the sample ISPF command table, EQQACMDS, is valid only if you use the ISPF application name EQQA. If you change the application name on the ISPSTART command, remember to create the corresponding ISPF command table in the table library.

Selecting the main menu directly from TSO

You can invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog by selecting the main menu directly from TSO. You do this from TSO by entering this TSO command:

```

/*Invoking the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog directly from TSO*/
ISPSTART PANEL(EQQOPCAP) NEWAPPL(EQQA)

```

Using this method to invoke the dialog means that the main menu, panel EQQOPCAP, is the first ISPF panel displayed. If you enter the ISPF command SPLIT, EQQOPCAP is displayed on the alternate screen. With this method, you cannot use ISPF/PDF and IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialogs at the same time. This method is therefore suitable for users who require *only* IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

Using the ISPF select service

You can invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog by using the SELECT command from a CLIST or from a program. See your ISPF publications to review these procedures.

Switching to the advanced style for ISPF panels

To use the advanced style for ISPF panels, you need to specify Y in the 0.8 option, SETTING PANEL STYLE. The advanced ISPF panels enable you to get a quick, at-a-glance scrollable view of the AD and CP operations, with color-coded fields that represent application and operation status, as well as the addition of an Action menu from where you can select administrative tasks to perform. They are provided for the AD application to enable you to list and browse a single AD and also for the CP operation to list and browse a single operation in the plan. All of the commands available for an operation in the current plan are concentrated in the new operation list panel (EQQSOPRV, EQQMOPRV).

Step 13. Using XCF for communication

Include this task when installing a tracker, Z controller, standby Z controller, or Data Store that will use XCF for communication.

To use the cross-system coupling facility (XCF) for communication between IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems, you must:

- Ensure that XCF startup options are suitable for your IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration
- Include the necessary initialization-statement options for each IBM Z Workload Scheduler started task.

XCF groups

An IBM Z Workload Scheduler XCF system consists of one Z controller and one or more trackers defined as members in the XCF group. You can include one or more standby Z controllers in the group. If you want to connect the Data Store to the controller via XCF, you need to define a specific XCF group for them, different to the one defined to connect the controller to the z/OS® tracker. You can also specify more than one IBM Z Workload Scheduler group in a sysplex. For example, you might want to have a test and production IBM Z Workload Scheduler group in your sysplex.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler supports these sysplex configurations:

MULTISYSTEM

XCF services are available to IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks residing on different z/OS systems.

MONOPLEX

XCF services are available only to IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks residing on a single z/OS system.



Note: Because IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses XCF signaling services, group services, and status monitoring services with permanent status recording, a *couple* data set is required. IBM Z Workload Scheduler does not support a *local sysplex*.

With XCF communication links, the controller can submit workload and control information to trackers that use XCF signaling services. The trackers use XCF services to transmit events to the Z controller. IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems are either ACTIVE, FAILED, or NOT-DEFINED for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler XCF complex.

Each active member tracks the state of all other members in the group. If an IBM Z Workload Scheduler group member becomes active, stops, or terminates abnormally, the other active members are notified. This list describes the actions taken by each started task in the group:

Z controller

When the Z controller detects that a tracker member changes to failed state, it stops sending work to the tracker. When it detects that a tracker has become active, it sends work to the tracker system and instructs the tracker to start transmitting event information.

Standby

When a standby Z controller that is enabled for takeover detects that the Z controller has changed to failed state, it attempts to become the new Z controller. If there is more than one standby Z controller in the group, the first one to detect failure of the Z controller attempts to take over the Z controller functions.

tracker

When a tracker member detects that the Z controller or standby Z controller has failed, it stops sending event information. The tracker member continues to collect events and writes them to the event data set. When the Z controller or standby Z controller becomes active again it informs the tracker that it is ready to receive events.

XCF runtime options

You specify XCF runtime options in the `COUPLEnn` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB` and change them using `SETXCF` operator commands. For a description about how to change the options in the `COUPLEnn` member, see [Updating XCF initialization options on page 102](#).

Initialization statements used for XCF

IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks use the following initialization statements for XCF connections between controller and tracker:

XCFOPTS

Identifies the XCF group and member name for the started task. Include `XCFOPTS` for each started task that should join an XCF group.

ROUTOPTS

Identifies all XCF destinations to the Z controller or standby Z controller. Specify `ROUTOPTS` for each Z controller and standby Z controller.

TRROPTS

Identifies the Z controller for a tracker. `TRROPTS` is required for each tracker on a controlled system. On a controlling system, `TRROPTS` is not required if the tracker and the Z controller are started in the same address space.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks use these initialization statements for XCF for controller/Data Store connections:

CTLMEM

Defines the XCF member name identifying the controller in the XCF connection between controller and Data Store.

DSTGROUP

It defines the XCF group name identifying the Data Store in the XCF connection with the controller.

DSTMEM

XCF member name, identifying the Data Store in the XCF connection between controller and Data Store.

DSTOPTS

Defines the runtime options for the Data Store.

FLOPTS

Defines the options for Fetch Job Log (FL) task.

XCFDEST

It is used by the FL (Fetch Job Log) task to decide from which Data Store the Job Log will be retrieved.

If you did not include these runtime options when you defined the initialization statements, do this now. [Step 11. Defining the initialization statements on page 150](#) and *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning* describe the initialization statements.

Step 14. Activating the network communication function

Include this task when installing a tracker, Z controller, or standby Z controller that will use NCF for communication.

If you want to use a VTAM® link to connect a tracker to the Z controller, activate NCF. The Z controller can then send work to the tracker and receive event information back, using the VTAM® link. To achieve this connection, activate NCF in both the Z controller and the tracker. To do this:

- Add NCF to the VTAM® network definitions.
- Add NCF session parameters.
- Activate network resources.

If you want to connect a controller and Data Store using SNA you need different VTAM® definitions. NCF is involved only in the tracker connection; the equivalent task in the Data Store connection is the FN task.

Adding NCF to the VTAM® network definitions

You must define NCF as a VTAM® application on both the controlling system and each controlled system. Before defining NCF, select names for the NCF applications that are unique within the VTAM® network.

To define NCF as an application to VTAM®:

1. Add the NCF applications to the application node definitions, using APPL statements.
2. Add the application names that NCF is known by, in any partner systems, to the cross-domain resource definitions. Use cross-domain resource (CDRSC) statements to do this.

You must do this for all systems that are linked by NCF.

The application node and the cross-domain resource definitions are stored in the SYS1.VTAMLST data set, or in members of a data set that is in the same concatenation as SYS1.VTAMLST. For a detailed description of defining application program major nodes and cross-domain resources, see *VTAM® Resource Definition Reference*.

The following example illustrates the definitions needed for a cross-domain setup between a Z controller and a tracker.



Note:

1. IBM Z Workload Scheduler requires that the application name and the ACBNAME are the same.
2. IS1ZOS1 and IS1ZOS2 are only sample names.

At the Z controller:

1. Define the NCF Z controller application. Add a VTAM® APPL statement like this to the application node definitions:

```
Z controller VTAM applications
VBUILD TYPE=APPL
OPCCONTR APPL VPACING=10, C
ACBNAME=OPCCONTR
```

2. Define the NCF tracker application. Add a definition like this to the cross-domain resource definitions:

```
Z controller VTAM cross-domain resources
VBUILD TYPE=CDRSC
OPCTRK1 CDRSC CDRM=IS1ZOS2
```

At the *tracker*:

1. Define the NCF tracker application. Add a VTAM® APPL statement like this to the application node definitions:

```
tracker VTAM applications
VBUILD TYPE=APPL
OPCTRK1 APPL ACBNAME=OPCTRK1, C
MODETAB=EQQLMTAB, C
DLOGMOD=NCFSPARM
```

2. Define the NCF Z controller application. Add a CDRSC statement like this to the cross-domain resource definitions:

```
tracker VTAM cross-domain resources
VBUILD TYPE=CDRSC
OPCCONTR CDRSC CDRM=IS1ZOS1
```

IS1ZOS1 and IS1ZOS2 are the cross-domain resource managers for the Z controller and the tracker, respectively.

At the *Datastore*:

1. Define the NCF Datastore application. Add a VTAM® APPL statement like this to the application node definitions:

```
Datastore VTAM applications
VBUILD TYPE=APPL
OPCDST1 APPL ACBNAME=OPCDST1, C
MODETAB=EQQLMTAB, C
DLOGMOD=NCFSPARM
```

2. Define the NCF controller application. Add a CDRSC statement like this to the cross-domain resource definitions:

```
Datastore VTAM cross-domain resources
VBUILD TYPE=CDRSC
OPCCONTR CDRSC CDRM=IS1ZOS1
```

Adding NCF session parameters

You can define the session parameters for NCF either by adding the sample EQQLMTAB logon-mode table or by using your own table. If you use the sample table, assemble and link-edit the EQQLMTAB table into the SYS1.VTAMLIB library concatenation for all trackers where an NCF transmitter application is defined.

Note that the APPL statement that defines an NCF application at a tracker must contain the logon-mode-table information in the MODETAB and DLOGMOD parameters.

The EQQLMTAB member of the SEQQSKL0 library contains this logon table definition plus the JCL necessary to assemble and link-edit the table:

```
EQQLMTAB
//LOGON JOB STATEMENT PARAMETERS
//ASM EXEC PGM=ASMA90,PARM='OBJ,NODECK'
//SYSLIB DD DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//          DD DSN=SYS1.SISTMAC1,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(1700,(400,50))
//SYSLIN DD DSN=&LOADSET,UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(80,(250,50)),
// DISP=(,PASS)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
EQQLMTAB MODETAB
        MODEENT LOGMODE=NCFSPARM,                      C
                FMPROF=X'04',                            C
                TSPROF=X'04',                            C
                PRIPROT=X'F3',                            C
                SECPROT=X'F3',                            C
                COMPROT=X'0000',                          C
                PSERVIC=X'00000000000000000000000000',    C
                RUSIZES=X'8787'
        MODEEND
        END
//LINK EXEC PGM=IEWL,PARM='XREF,LIST,LET,CALL'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSLMOD DD DSN=SYS1.VTAMLIB(EQQLMTAB),DISP=SHR
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(1700,(400,50))
//SYSLIN DD DSN=&LOADSET,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
```

If you choose to provide session parameters in another table or entry, modify the APPL definitions for the transmitter applications accordingly. Note that NCF uses an LU-type 0 protocol with a recommended minimum RU-size of 500 bytes. Do *not* specify an RU-size smaller than 32 bytes. NCF does not modify the session parameter specified in the LOGMODE table entry in any way.

For a complete description of logon mode tables and the macros that define them, see *VTAM® Customization*.

COS table

No class of service (COS) table entry is specified for EQQLMTAB in the sample. Specify a COS entry that is valid in your VTAM® environment unless you intend to use the default provided by VTAM®.

The routing you specify in the COS entry should be fast and reliable so that unnecessary delays are not introduced in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler remote job-tracking function.

Activating network resources

The VTAM® network must be active when the NCF application is started so that network resources are available for the NCF sessions. All participating NCF-application minor nodes must be activated before the NCF application is started by the tracker.

You activate VTAM® resources by entering the `VARY NET` command or by specifying automatic activation in the VTAM® network-definition procedure used during VTAM® startup. You can activate NCF-application minor nodes and CDRSC minor nodes directly, using the `VARY ACT` command. You can also activate them indirectly by activating their major nodes. For further information, see *VTAM® Operation*.

Diagnostic data set

If you have not already allocated the EQQDUMP diagnostic data set for the tracker or Z controller, do this now. NCF writes debugging information to this diagnostic data set when internal error conditions are detected. When diagnostic information is logged, the information is normally accompanied by a user abend.



Note: Update the IBM Z Workload Scheduler started-task procedure with DD name EQQDUMP if this DD name is not already defined.

Step 15. Using TCP/IP for communication

Include this task when installing a scheduler component that will use TCP/IP for communication.

To use the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) for communication among IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems:

- Ensure that TCP/IP protocol is available and the relative started task is started on your z/OS® configuration.
- Include the necessary initialization statement options for each product component.

Initialization statements used for TCP/IP

IBM Z Workload Scheduler started tasks use the following initialization statements for connecting the scheduler started tasks through TCP/IP:

ROUTOPTS

To identify all the TCP/IP remote destinations for the controller or standby controller. A ROUTOPTS statement is required for each controller and standby controller.

TRROPTS

To identify the controller for a tracker. A TRROPTS statement is required for each tracker on a controlled system.

FLOPTS

To identify all the TCP/IP data store remote destinations for the controller.

DSTOPTS

To identify the controller for a Data Store.

TCPOPTS

An optional statement to specify the TCP/IP options for the local component. To identify the remote partner, use one of the previous statements.

Step 16. Activating support for the API

Include this task when installing a Z controller, or standby Z controller that you want to communicate with through the IBM Z Workload Scheduler API.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses LU to LU communication to pass data between an ATP and a subsystem through the API. To use API requests GET, PUT, and DELETE, the LU that the ATP sends requests to (the target LU) must be owned by the Z controller. For CREATE requests, if the target LU is not owned by an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space where an event-writer task is started, the ATP must send requests so that the events are broadcast on the target z/OS system. *Tivoli® Workload Automation: Developer's Guide: Driving Tivoli® IBM Z Workload Scheduler* and *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning* describe when a request is broadcast.

To activate support for the API, perform these actions in the order shown:

1. Define VTAM® resources.
2. Update APPC options.
3. Activate IBM Z Workload Scheduler support for APPC.

If you are installing a standby Z controller, perform corresponding actions on the standby system.

You might need to refer to one or more of these publications:

- *VTAM® Resource Definition Reference*
- *APPC Management*
- *z/OS Initialization and Tuning Reference*
- *Tivoli® Workload Automation: Developer's Guide: Driving Tivoli® IBM Z Workload Scheduler*, which documents the API

The actions described here are based on z/OS systems. If you use a later z/OS release, check for enhancements that might make some actions unnecessary.

Defining VTAM resources

Start by defining the associated VTAM® resources:

- [Defining a local LU on page 163](#)
- [Defining logon modes on page 164](#)
- [Defining cross-domain resources on page 165](#)

Then follow the instructions provided in [Updating APPC options on page 165](#) and [Activating support for APPC on page 166](#).

Defining a local LU

Define a local LU in a member in the SYS1.VTAMLST concatenation on the system where you are installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler. This example shows how a VTAM® APPL statement might be defined:

```

Local LU definition
VBUILD TYPE=APPL
  IS4MEOP4 APPL ACBNAME=IS4MEOP4,          C
                APPC=YES,                  C
                AUTOSSES=5,                C
                DMINWNL=3,                 C
                DMINWNR=6,                 C
                DSESLIM=9,                 C
                MODETAB=APPCMODE,          C
                SECACPT=CONV,              C
                SRBEXIT=YES,              C
                VERIFY=OPTIONAL,          C
                VPACING=2

```

The LU is called IS4MEOP4 and uses the logon-mode table APPCMODE.

Before you can establish a session with v, a partner LU must be defined. If a partner TP is run at a different node, ensure that an LU is defined at that node.

The controller subsystem currently has tasks that use APPC. The subsystem is defined as one LU node to APPC and VTAM®.

Defining logon modes

The logon-mode table, which you specify in the LU APPL definition statement, must be in the SYS1.VTAMLIB concatenation. To enable LU 6.2 communication for z/OS, you need the VTAM® logon-mode SNASVCMG. For applications, APPC also requires at least one logon-mode entry other than SNASVCMG. You can create a new logon-mode table or add logon modes to an existing table. The name of the logon-mode table that is used by the LU and the partner LU need not be the same, but both LUs must use the same logon-mode names. That is, the logon modes used by these LUs must appear in each table, and they must have the same names. This example of an uncompiled logon-mode table contains three logon modes:

```

Example logon-mode table
APPCMODE MODETAB
  EJECT
  *-----*
  * Logmode table entry for resources capable of acting as LU 6.2      *
  * devices required for LU management.                                *
  *-----*
  SNASVCMG MODEENT
                LOGMODE=SNASVCMG,          C
                FMPROF=X'13',              C
                TSPROF=X'07',              C
                PRIPROT=X'B0',             C
                SECPROT=X'B0',             C
                COMPROT=X'D0B1',           C
                RUSIZES=X'8585',           C
                ENCR=B'0000',              C
                PSERVIC=X'0602000000000000000000000300'
  *-----*
  * Logmode table entry for resources capable of acting as LU 6.2      *
  * devices for PC target.                                              *
  *-----*
  LU62SYS1 MODEENT
                LOGMODE=LU62SYS1,          C

```

```

        RUSIZES=X'8989',          C
        SRCVPAC=X'00',            C
        SSNDPAC=X'01'
*-----*
* Logmode table entry for resources capable of acting as LU 6.2 *
* devices for host target.                                         *
*-----*
APPCHOST MODEENT                C
        LOGMODE=APPCHOST,      C
        RUSIZES=X'8F8F',       C
        SRCVPAC=X'00',         C
        SSNDPAC=X'01'
MODEEND
END

```

Defining cross-domain resources

If the IBM Z Workload Scheduler TP and the partner TP are not running in the same VTAM domain, ensure that their respective LUs can communicate by defining cross-domain resources. In this example, LU name IS1ZOS1 is used for the system where the Z controller is activated, and IS1MVS2 for the system that the partner TP is running on.

On the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlling system:

```

Partner LU cross-domain resources
VBUILD TYPE=CDRSC
LUZOS2 CDRSC CDRM=IS1ZOS2

```

On the partner system:

```

&opc LU cross-domain resources
VBUILD TYPE=CDRSC
LUOPC CDRSC CDRM=IS1ZOS1

```

Updating APPC options

To associate the IBM Z Workload Scheduler scheduler (the subsystem) with the local LU that you defined earlier, modify the APPC options by updating the APPCPMnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. The following example shows an APPCPMnn member:

```

APPCPMnn example
LUADD          /* Add local LU to APPC config. */
  ACBNAME(IS4MEOP4) /* Name of LU */
  SCHED(EOP4)      /* Scheduler name/OPC subsys name */
  TPDATA(SYS1.APPCTP) /* Profile data set for this LU */
  TPLEVEL(SYSTEM)  /* TP level for which LU searches */

```

Ensure that the scheduler name is the same as the IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem name. In this example, the subsystem name is EOP4. A side information file is not used by IBM Z Workload Scheduler. However, the LU must be associated with a TP profile data set; you need not specify a profile for IBM Z Workload Scheduler in the data set because IBM Z Workload Scheduler does not use TP profiles.

To allocate a TP profile data set, you can run a job such as:

```
//ALTPDSET JOB STATEMENT PARAMETERS
//TPSAMPLE EXEC PGM=IDCAMS
//VOLOUT DD DISP=OLD,UNIT=3380,VOL=SER=volser
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
        DEFINE CLUSTER (NAME(SYS1.APPCTP) -
            VOLUMES(volser) -
            INDEXED REUSE -
            SHAREOPTIONS(3 3) -
            RECORDSIZE(3824 7024) -
            KEYS(112 0) -
            RECORDS(300 150)) -
        DATA -
            (NAME(SYS1.APPCTP.DATA)) -
        INDEX -
            (NAME(SYS1.APPCTP.INDEX))
```

TP profile data sets are VSAM KSDS data sets.

Activating support for APPC

When you have defined the necessary VTAM® resources and updated APPC options, you can activate IBM Z Workload Scheduler support for APPC. Do this by specifying APPCTASK(YES) on the OPCOPTS statement. Perform this action when you have completed all other actions and before you start to use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler API.

Step 17. Activating support for the product dialog and programming interface using the server

Include this task when activating an IBM Z Workload Scheduler server. To use the Dynamic Workload Console, see [Step 19. Activating support for Dynamic Workload Console on page 170](#).

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialogs and programming interface can be used on a z/OS® system other than the system where the controller is running. A server is required, running on the same z/OS® system as the controller.

The dialogs and the programming interface on the remote z/OS® system communicate with the server using APPC or TCP/IP. The EQQXLUSL help panels flow describes how to activate the communication with the server using the dialog.

The APPC communication requires also the VTAM® and APPC definitions that are described in the following sections.

For further information, see the following publications:

- *VTAM® Resource Definition Reference*
- *APPC Management*
- *MVS™ Initialization and Tuning Reference*

See also member EQQVTAMS in the EQQJOBS output library or SEQQSAMP library.

To activate the APPC communication, perform the following steps:

1. The server tasks run on the same system as the controller.
2. On the system where the servers and the controller run, you must define the following LUs:
 - One LU for the server 'without' the BASE keyword, and specifying the server started task as SCHEDULER.
3. On the system where you want to enable TSO users to communicate with IBM Z Workload Scheduler via the server interface, you must define one LU with the keywords BASE and SCHED; that is:
 - An APPC MASTER LU 'with' the BASE keyword, and specifying SCHED(ASCH). This LU is not for IBM Z Workload Scheduler; it is an APPC requirement that there be a BASE LU with SCHED(ASCH) on every system where APPC is used.
4. When the servers and the APPC address space are all started, you will see messages in the SYSLOG and server EQQMLOGs, stating that communication has been established between the server and APPC. These messages are displayed during the first start and after an IPL.
5. The dialog user then selects option 0.1 and specifies the name of the controller subsystem with which he wants to communicate, and the LUNAME of the server via which that communication is to be routed. For more information on specifying these values, press the PF1 (help) on panel EQQXLUSL.

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog code in the TSO logon address space then sends an APPC request which is picked up by the APPC BASE LU on that system and routed to the (server) LU specified in the request. The server then passes the dialog data to the controller across the z/OS® subsystem interface, serving as a local proxy for the dialog user. The controller cannot tell whether it is talking to a local ISPF dialog user, or to a remote user via a server.

Defining VTAM resources for the product dialog and program interface using the server

To use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler programming interface or dialog from a remote system, you need to activate the APPC support on the remote system.

Assure that there is a LU defined as default LU for the APPC communication (BASE LU) in the APPCPMnn parmlib member. If none is defined, add it as follows:

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog and programming interface use the default APPC support defined on the system on which the functions are used. To activate this support:

1. Define a default VTAM® APPL supporting APPC:

```
VBUILD TYPE=APPL
APPCOUT APPL APPC=YES
        ACBNAME=APPCOUT
...
```

2. Update the APPCPMnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB for the default VTAM® APPL defined above:

```
LUADD                                /* Add local LU to APPC config. */
ACBNAME(APPCOUT) /* Name of LU */
SCHED(ASCH)      /* No scheduler associated */
BASE             /* default LU for the system */
TPDATA(SYS1.APPCTP) /* Profile data set for this LU */
TPLEVEL(SYSTEM)  /* TP level for which LU search */
```

3. Add any cross-domain resource definition needed to resolve VTAM® addressing.

Defining VTAM® resources for the server

Start by defining the associated VTAM resources for the server:

- [Defining a local LU for the server on page 168](#)
- [Defining logon modes for the server on page 168](#)

Then follow the instructions provided in [Updating APPC options for the server on page 169](#) and [Defining VTAM resources in a parallel sysplex on page 169](#).

Defining a local LU for the server

Define a local LU in a member in the SYS1.VTAMLST concatenation on the system where you are installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler. This example shows how a VTAM® APPL statement might be defined:

```
Local LU for the server definition
VBUILD TYPE=APPL
  IS4MEOP5 APPL APPC=YES,          C
              AUTOSSES=5,         C
              DMINWNL=3,          C
              DMINWNR=6,          C
              DSESLIM=20,         C
              MODETAB=APPCMODE,   C
              SECACPT=ALREADYV,   C
              SRBEXIT=YES,        C
              VERIFY=OPTIONAL,    C
              VPACING=2
```

The LU is called IS4MEOP5 and uses the logon-mode table APPCMODE.

The maximum number of TSO dialog users and PIF programs that can simultaneously access an IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller via a single server depends on the DSESLIM parameter of the VTAM® LU for that server. Once the specified number of sessions has been established, all subsequent users and PIF programs that try to use that server will hang until one of the existing sessions ends.

The number of servers required by an installation depends on how extensive PIF applications are used. While it can be sufficient with one server for the dialogs, a number of servers can be required for the PIF applications. PIF applications that are frequently used and with long execution time might need separate servers.

Defining logon modes for the server

The logon-mode table, which you specify in the LU APPL definition statement, must be in the SYS1.VTAMLIB concatenation.

The server support requires logon-mode table entries as specified in the following uncompiled example:

Example

```
APPCDIA logon-mode table for server
*-----*
* Logmode table entry for the dialogs and the programming interface *
*-----*
APPCDIA MODEENT                                C
```



```

LOGMODE=APPCDIA,          C
RUSIZE=X'8888',           C
SRCVPAC=X'00',            C
SSNDPAC=X'01',           C
MODEENT                   C
APPCFIF MODEENT           C
LOGMODE=APPCFIF,          C
RUSIZE=X'8888',           C
SRCVPAC=X'00',            C
SSNDPAC=X'01',           C
MODEENT                   C

```

The RUSIZE gives a user size for sending buffer of 2048 bytes and a receiving buffer of 4096 bytes.

Updating APPC options for the server

To associate the server (and controller) with the scheduler that you defined earlier, modify the APPC options by updating the LUADD statement in the APPCPMnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB. The following example shows an APPCPMnn member:

Example

```

APPCPMnn example
LUADD                /* Add local LU to APPC config. */
  ACBNAME(IS4MEOP5)  /* Name of LU */
  SCHED(EOP5)        /* Scheduler name/OPC subsys name */
  TPDATA(SYS1.APPCTP) /* Profile data set for this LU */
  TPLEVEL(SYSTEM)    /* TP level for which LU searches */

```

Ensure that the scheduler name in LUADD is the same of the scheduler server (in this example is EOP5).

Each server identifies itself to APPC as an APPC scheduler with the same name as the started task name. If you specified the SCHEDULER parameter in the SERVOPTS statement, this name is used instead of the started task name.

Defining VTAM® resources in a parallel sysplex

In an installation with a Parallel Sysplex® where the scheduler can start on any of a number of z/OS® images, each z/OS® image within the parallel sysplex should have the same local LU name for a given server. The same LU name must not exist in any other network interconnected to the parallel sysplex network; identical LU names within network, unique LU names across networks.

For details on the parallel sysplex installation, see [Step 13. Using XCF for communication on page 156](#).

The LU name (the APPL statement name) should be given with a wildcard character, in case the scheduler works in a parallel sysplex and is not set up to run on a specific z/OS® image. The APPL statement will then become a Model Application Program Definition, for the identically named LUs on the z/OS® images where the scheduler might start. The wildcard character should be chosen such that one model definition is set up for the controller and one model definition for each of the servers. The optional ACBNAME parameter must be omitted, the name of the APPL statement is then used as the ACBNAME.

For example, say the scheduler can start on z/OS® images ZOS1 and ZOS2 in a parallel sysplex. The LU name for controller OPCB is IS4MOPCB, and there are three servers to handle the communication to OPCB, OPCBCOM1, OPCBCOM2 and

OPBCOM3, with LU names IS4MSV1B, IS4MSV2B and IS4MSV3B. VTAM® Version 4 Release 3 is available. The following model definitions could then be used (a '?' in the APPL statement name represents a single unspecified character):

```
IS4MOP?B  APPL  APPC=YES,...
IS4MS?1B  APPL  APPC=YES,...
IS4MS?2B  APPL  APPC=YES,...
IS4MS?3B  APPL  APPC=YES,...
```

Note that the wildcard character must be chosen such that the no other VTAM® LU name than the intended LU name matches the model definition.

Starting the server

You can start the server by using the z/OS® START command, or you can have the controller start and stop the server automatically. In the latter case, include the servers (srv1, srv2, ...) in the OPCOPTS statement in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler parameter library.

A SERVOPTS statement is required in the parameters file. All SERVOPTS parameters can be left out and defaulted.

Step 18. Activating support for end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities

To schedule jobs on IBM Workload Scheduler distributed z-centric agents, activate the end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities. Perform the following steps:

1. Define the z-centric agent destinations in the ROUTOPTS initialization statement.
2. Customize the connection parameters in the HTTPOPTS initialization statement.



Note: Use this statement to activate or disable the SSL connection protocol . If you want to disable the SSL connection, you can either:

- Specify neither SSLKEYRING nor SSLPORT parameters.
- Specify SSLPORT(0).

3. Optionally, activate the [output collector on page 73](#) started task to retrieve job logs and copy them to a JES SYSOUT for processing by an external output management product. Customize the HTTPOPTS (OUTPUTCOLLECTOR and JLOGHDRTEMPL parameters), OPCOPTS (OUTCOL parameters), and OUCOPTS initialization statements.

For the user ID running the output collector started task, ensure that you defined a HOME directory in the OMVS segment. For details, see [HOME directory requirements for started tasks on page 201](#).

For details about the configuration steps, see *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.

Step 19. Activating support for Dynamic Workload Console

Perform this step if you want to use the Dynamic Workload Console to design and run your workload.

Before using the Dynamic Workload Console, you need to install the console, which also includes the installation of the Z connector. The Z connector forms the bridge between the console and IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

To produce a dynamic report that lists the supported operating systems, click [Supported operating systems](#).

After having installed the Dynamic Workload Console, you can define a z/OS engine to connect to one IBM Z Workload Scheduler. To add more z/OS engine definitions after the installation process, see [Defining a z/OS engine in the Z connector on page 265](#).

The console communicates with the product through the Z connector and the scheduler server by using the TCP/IP protocol. The console needs the server to run as a started task in a separate address space. The server communicates with IBM Z Workload Scheduler and passes the data and return codes back to the Z connector.

Perform the following task:

- Install and configure the Dynamic Workload Console as described in the sections included in [Installing Dynamic Workload Console and Z connector on page 217](#).

Dynamic Workload Console considerations

Dynamic Workload Console V9.5 or later uses WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base to handle the initial user verification. In all cases, however, it is necessary to obtain a valid corresponding RACF® user ID to be able to work with the security environment in z/OS®.



Note: You cannot control the port from which the Dynamic Workload Console server started task replies to a request from the Z connector. The response ports are randomly selected.

To optimize the thread handling between Z connector and the scheduler server, you can group console users by RACF® user ID. To define this grouping, associate a list of console users to the same RACF® user ID, by editing the `TWSZOSConnConfig.properties` file located in:

```
DWC_DATA_DIR\usr\servers\dwcsServer\resources\properties
```

Where `DWC_DATA_DIR` is, by default, `%Program Files%\wa\DWc\` on Windows, and `/opt/wa/DWC` on UNIX.

In `TWSZOSConnConfig.properties` set the last two properties as follows:

```
com.ibm.tws.zconn.usr.mapping.enable=true
com.ibm.tws.zconn.usr.mapping.file=mapping_file_path\mapping_file
```

where `mapping_file` is the name of the file that contains the mapping between console user and RACF® user ID, as in the following example:

```
engine=zos1919 user=twuser1,twuser2 zosuser=zos1919user1
          user=twuser3,twuser4 zosuser=zos1919user2
```

Activating server support for the Dynamic Workload Console

To set up the required server environment, customize the INIT and SERVOPTS initialization statements. For example:

```
SERVOPTS SUBSYS (OPCX)
          USERMAP (USERS)
          PROTOCOL (TCP)
```

	PORTNUMBER (425)
	CODEPAGE (IBM-037)
INIT	CALENDAR (DEFAULT)

For more information about the INIT and SERVOPTS statements, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Customization and Tuning*.

You can start the server by using the z/OS® START command, or you can have the controller start and stop the server automatically. In the latter case, include the servers (srv1, srv2, ...) on the OPCOPTS statement in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler parameter library. The server with TCP/IP support requires access to the C language runtime library (either as STEPLIB or as LINKLIST). If you have multiple TCP/IP stacks, or a TCP/IP started task with a name different from `TCPIP`, then a SYSTCPD DD card is required pointing to a TCP/IP data set containing the TCPIPJOBNAME parameter.

You are always required to define OMVS segments for server started tasks and ensure that a HOME directory is defined in the OMVS segment. For details, see [HOME directory requirements for started tasks on page 201](#).

Step 20. Activating support for the Java™ utilities

This step describes the required actions to use one of the following features (for detailed information about the features, see *Managing the Workload*):

- Dynamic Workload Console reporting
- Event-driven workload automation for data set triggering, with centralized deploy process

As installation actions, perform the following steps:

1. Install IBM® Semeru Runtime Certified Edition (formerly known as IBM® 64-bit SDK for z/OS®, Java Technology Edition). For information about how to install it, see the related IBM documentation.
2. Copy the JZOS Java™ Launcher load module (JVMLDMnn) from the JAVA_HOME directory to the SYS1.SIEALNKE system data set. For details about customizing the JZOS Java™ Launcher, see the related IBM documentation.
3. Make sure that you applied the appropriate FMID (for details about FMIDs, see the Program Directory).
4. Run EQQJOBS with the option to enable JAVA utilities, to create the EQQPCS08 sample JCL.
5. Customize EQQPCS08 and submit it.
6. Define the TRGOPT initialization statement in a member of the EQPPARM library.
7. Define the event rule in XML format. You can use a partitioned data set member to be used as input for the following step. The SEQQSAMP library contains EQQXML01 member as sample of event rule definition.
8. Select option 1.7.3 from the main menu, edit and submit the job to produce the configuration files.

Step 21. Activating support for FIPS standard over SSL secured connections

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is a communications protocol that provides secure communications over an open communications network (for example, the Internet).

Federal Information Processing Standard Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules, referred to as FIPS 140-2, is a standard published by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). Organizations can require compliance to the FIPS 140-2 standard to provide protection for sensitive or valuable data to cryptographic-based security systems.

System SSL was designed to meet the Federal Information Processing Standard - FIPS 140-2 Level 1 criteria.

System SSL can run in either "FIPS mode" or "non-FIPS mode". By default, System SSL runs in "non-FIPS" mode.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses the System SSL configuration. To run IBM Z Workload Scheduler in "FIPS mode", you must enable FIPS compliance over System SSL connections.

For more information about the following topics, see *IBM z/OS Cryptographic Services System Secure Sockets Layer Programming manual, Chapter 4. System SSL and FIPS 140-2*:

- How to enable FIPS compliance over System SSL connections
- System prerequisites
- Differences between FIPS mode and non-FIPS mode algorithm support and keys sizes



Note: Algorithm support and key sizes are different when FIPS-mode is set.

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler communications that can implement FIPS 140-2 Level 1 standards over a secured SSL connection are:

Backup Controller Communication task for communication between the controller and backup controller

To enable FIPS 140-2 compliance for this communication, set ENABLEFIPS to YES in the BKPTOPTS initialization statement.

For more information about BKPTOPTS, see *Customization and Tuning*.

HTTP client and server and output collector for communication with the z-centric agents

For information about how to enable FIPS 140-2 compliance over IBM Z Workload Scheduler server SSL secured connection, see *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.

IP task for communication between the controller and tracker, server, datastore, remote ISPF dialog

To enable FIPS 140-2 compliance for this communication, set ENABLEFIPS to YES in the TCPOPTS initialization statement.

For more information about TCPOPTS, see *Customization and Tuning*.



Note: Ensure that you run the initialization statements before starting IBM Z Workload Scheduler to ensure the use of FIPS standards over that specific SSL secured connection.

You do not need to apply FIPS compliance to all communications; you can decide which communications run in "FIPS-mode" and which run in "non-FIPS mode".

If FIPS compliance is not required by your organization, you can continue to use SSL for secure connections across your network.

Chapter 5. Verifying your installation

Perform this task for a tracker Z controller or standby Z controller.

When you have installed a tracker, Z controller, standby Z controller, or server, start it and perform initial verification procedures. To completely verify IBM Z Workload Scheduler, start all the address spaces in your configuration, and create database entries, a long-term plan, and a current plan. This is required to verify job submission and connections between systems, and requires some knowledge of the product. Therefore, verification is divided into two parts:

- Initial verification of individual IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces.
- Verification of your configuration.

You can therefore perform some verification tasks that do not require the knowledge of detailed aspects of IBM Z Workload Scheduler. When you are more familiar with the product components and functions, you can perform further testing.

The following topics are described:

- [Verifying installation of a tracker on page 175](#)
- [Verifying installation of a controller and dialogs on page 181](#)
- [Verifying installation of a standby controller on page 185](#)
- [Verifying installation of the Restart and Cleanup function on page 185](#)
- [Verifying configuration on page 187](#)

If you are installing a tracker and Z controller in the same address space, review the initial verification procedures for both a tracker and a Z controller.

Verifying installation of a tracker

When you have completed the installation tasks for a tracker, perform its initial verification. Because connections and submission of work cannot be verified in isolation, you can perform further verification of the tracker after you have installed the controlling system, established connections between IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems, and created a current plan. For a detailed description of these verification tasks, see [Verifying configuration on page 187](#).

To initially verify the tracker, perform the following tasks:

1. Follow the appropriate procedures for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem that you are installing.
2. Ensure that you have completed all the necessary installation tasks.
3. Start the tracker and check the message log (EQQMLOG).
4. Verify that tracking events are created in the event data set (EQQEVDS).
5. Perform problem determination for tracking events if events are missing from the event data set.

For TCP/IP connections only, ensure that a valid current plan exists before verifying the tracker.

Ensuring that all installation tasks are complete

Ensure that you have performed all the installation tasks that are needed for your IBM Z Workload Scheduler service. That is, you should have:

- Followed the appropriate procedures for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem that you are installing
- Installed the required JES and SMF exits, and verified that they are active
- Created a JCL procedure for the tracker
- Allocated required data sets
- Given the security access for the subsystem to access the data sets
- Specified the initialization statements in the parameter library (EQQPARM)
- Included the tracker in the same XCF group as the Z controller, if the tracker uses an XCF connection
- Defined a VTAM® LU name for the tracker and activated the VTAM® resources, if the tracker uses an NCF connection.

Checking the message log (EQQMLOG)

Start the tracker.

When the tracker is started, check the message log:

- Check that the return code for all initialization options is 0 (message EQQZ016I).
- Ensure that all required subtasks are active.
 - The data-router and submit tasks are always started. You should see these messages:

```

EQQZ005I SUBTASK DATA ROUTER TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQF001I DATA ROUTER TASK INITIALIZATION IS COMPLETE

EQQZ005I SUBTASK JOB SUBMIT TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQSU01I THE SUBMIT TASK HAS STARTED

```

- Also, verify that the tracker has started an event writer. You should see these messages:
- ```

EQQZ005I SUBTASK EVENT WRITER IS BEING STARTED
EQQW065I EVENT WRITER STARTED

```
- Examine error messages.



**Note:** The first time the event writer is started, it formats the event data set. Ignore the SD37 abend code that is issued during the formatting process.

If you see error messages in the message log for an NCF connection, this is because you cannot fully verify an NCF connection until the Z controller is active and a current plan exists. Active tracker-connection messages for XCF connections are written to the Z controller message log when the Z controller is started. If you have specified any of these functions, follow the procedures in [Verifying configuration on page 187](#) when you have completed initial verification procedures.



- Check that your log is complete.

If your log seems to be incomplete, information might be in a buffer. If you are unsure whether the log is complete, issue a dummy modify command like this: `F ssname,xx`. Message EQQZ049E is written to the log when the command is processed. This message will be the last entry in the log.

## Verifying tracking events

The next verification phase is to check that the tracker is collecting tracking-event information and writing it to the event data set (EQQEVDS).

IBM Z Workload Scheduler job tracking works correctly only if it receives information about status changes for all jobs or started tasks to be tracked. Job tracking gets this information from SMF and JES exits. These exits gather the necessary information, and an exit record is added to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler event-writer queue via ECSA buffers.

## The event writer

The event writer removes the event from its queue and creates an event record that is written to an event data set. The event writer also forwards the event if it has been started with an event-reader function. If a separate event reader is used, the event is read from the event data set. In either case, the reader task uses the connection with the Z controller to transfer the event to a queue at the Z controller. The event-manager subtask then processes the event and the current plan is updated.

## The event data set

The event data set is needed to even out any difference in the rate that events are being generated and processed, and to prevent events from being lost if the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space or a subtask must be restarted. The first byte in an exit record is A if the event is created on a JES2 system, or B if the event is created on a JES3 system. This byte is found in position 21 of a standard event record, or position 47 of a continuation (type N) event. Bytes 2 and 3 in the exit record define the event type. These event types are generated by IBM Z Workload Scheduler for jobs and started tasks:

**1**

Reader event. A job has entered the JES system.

**2**

Job-start event. A job has started to execute.

**3S**

Step-end event. A job step has finished executing.

**3J**

Job-end event. A job has finished executing.

**3P**

Job-termination event. A job has been added to the JES output queues.

**4**

Print event. An output group has been printed.

## 5

Purge event. All output for a job has been purged from the JES system.

If any of these event types are not being created in the event data set (EQQEVDS), a problem must be corrected before IBM Z Workload Scheduler is started in production mode.

**Note:**

1. The creation of step-end events (3S) depends on the value you specify in the STEPEVENTS keyword of the EWTROPTS statement. The default is to create a step-end event only for abending steps in a job or started task.
2. The creation of print events depends on the value you specify in the PRINTEVENTS keyword of the EWTROPTS statement. By default, print events are created.

Perform these actions to verify that events are being created on your system:

## 1. Run a job:

- a. Submit a job like the following, ensuring that the output is written to a non-held output class:

## Test job

```
//VERIFY1 JOB STATEMENT PARAMETERS

//VERIFY EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//*
//SYSPRINT DD DUMMY
//SYSUT2 DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
//SYSUT1 DD *
 SAMPLE TEST OUTPUT STATEMENT 1
/*
```

- b. Verify that the job has executed, printed, and purged.
- c. Browse the EQQEVDS data set using the ISPF/PDF browse facility. You should find these events on the event data set:
  - Type 1 event
  - Type 2 event
  - Type 3J event
  - Type 3P event
  - Type 4 event
  - Type 5 event.

The events are prefixed with A for JES2 or B for JES3. You might also find type 3S as events, depending on the value specified on the STEPEVENTS keyword of the EWTROPTS initialization statement.

## 2. Repeat step 1 for a started task.

## Performing problem determination for tracking events

Problem determination depends on which event is missing and whether the events are created on a JES2 or JES3 system. In [Table 32: Problem determination for missing tracking events on page 179](#), the first column refers to the event type that is missing, and the second column tells you what action to perform. Events created on a JES2 system are prefixed with A, and events created on a JES3 system with B. The first entry in the table applies when all event types are missing (when the event data set does not contain any tracking events).

**Table 32. Problem determination for missing tracking events**

| Type         | Problem determination actions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>All</b>   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify in the EQQMLOG data set that the event writer has started successfully.</li> <li>2. Verify that the definition of the EQQEVDs ddname in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler started-task procedure is correct (that is, events are written to the correct data set).</li> <li>3. Verify that the required exits have been installed.</li> <li>4. Verify that the IEFSSNnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB has been updated correctly, and that an IPL of the z/OS system has been performed since the update.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>A1</b>    | <p>If both A3P and A5 events are also missing:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that the IBM Z Workload Scheduler version of the JES2 exits 7 and 51 routines have been correctly installed. Use the JES commands <code>\$T EXIT(7)</code> and <code>\$T EXIT(51)</code> or <code>\$DMODULE(OPCAXIT7)</code> and <code>\$DMODULE(TWSXIT51)</code>.</li> <li>2. Verify that the JES2 initialization data set contains a LOAD statement and an EXIT7 statement for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler version of JES2 exit 7 (OPCAXIT7).</li> </ol> <p>Verify also that the JES2 initialization data set contains a LOAD statement and an EXIT51 statement for the version of JES2 exit 51 (TWSXIT51)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Verify that the exit has been added to a load module library reachable by JES2 and that JES2 has been restarted since this was done.</li> </ol> <p>If either A3P or A5 events are present in the event data set, call an IBM® service representative for programming assistance.</p> |
| <b>B1</b>    | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that the IBM Z Workload Scheduler version of the JES3 exit IATUX29 routine has been correctly installed.</li> <li>2. Verify that the exit has been added to a load-module library that JES3 can access.</li> <li>3. Verify that JES3 has been restarted.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>A2/B2</b> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that the job for which no type 2 event was created has started to execute. A type 2 event will not be created for a job that is flushed from the system because of JCL errors.</li> <li>2. Verify that the IEFUJI exit has been correctly installed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify that the SMF parameter member SMFPRMnn in the SYS1.PARMLIB data set specifies that the IEFUJI exit should be called.</li> <li>b. Verify that the IEFUJI exit has not been disabled by an operator command.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**Table 32. Problem determination for missing tracking events (continued)**

| Type           | Problem determination actions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                | <p>c. Verify that the correct version of IEFUJI is active. If SYS1.PARMLIB defines LPALIB as a concatenation of several libraries, z/OS uses the first IEFUJI module found.</p> <p>d. Verify that the library containing this module was updated by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler version of IEFUJI and that z/OS has been IPLed since the change was made.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>A3S/B3S</b> | <p>If type 3J events are also missing:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that the IEFACTRT exit has been correctly installed.</li> <li>2. Verify that the SMF parameter member SMFPRMnn in the SYS1.PARMLIB data set specifies that the IEFACTRT exit should be called.</li> <li>3. Verify that the IEFACTRT exit has not been disabled by an operator command.</li> <li>4. Verify that the correct version of IEFACTRT is active. If SYS1.PARMLIB defines LPALIB as a concatenation of several libraries, z/OS uses the first IEFACTRT module found.</li> <li>5. Verify that this library was updated by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler version of IEFACTRT and that z/OS has been IPLed since the change was made.</li> </ol> <p>If type 3J events are not missing, verify, in the EQQMLOG data set, that the event writer has been requested to generate step-end events. Step-end events are created only if the EWTROPTS statement specifies STEPEVENTS(ALL) or STEPEVENTS(NZERO) or if the job step abended.</p> |
| <b>A3J/B3J</b> | <p>If type 3S events are also missing, follow the procedures described for type 3S events.</p> <p>If type 3S events are not missing, call an IBM® service representative for programming assistance.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>A3P</b>     | <p>If A1 events are also missing, follow the procedures described for A1 events.</p> <p>If A1 events are not missing, call an IBM® service representative for programming assistance.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>B3P</b>     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that the IBM Z Workload Scheduler version of the JES3 exit IATUX19 routine has been correctly installed.</li> <li>2. Verify that the exit has been added to a load-module library that JES3 can access.</li> <li>3. Verify that JES3 has been restarted.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>A4/B4</b>   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If you have specified PRINTEVENTS(NO) on the EWTROPTS initialization statement, no type 4 events are created.</li> <li>2. Verify that JES has printed the job for which no type 4 event was created. Type 4 events will not be created for a job that creates only held SYSOUT data sets.</li> <li>3. Verify that the IEFU83 exit has been correctly installed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify that the SMF parameter member SMFPRMnn in the SYS1.PARMLIB data set specifies that the IEFU83 exit should be called.</li> <li>b. Verify that the IEFU83 exit has not been disabled by an operator command.</li> <li>c. Verify that the correct version of IEFU83 is active. If SYS1.PARMLIB defines LPALIB as a concatenation of several libraries, z/OS uses the first IEFU83 module found.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                          |

**Table 32. Problem determination for missing tracking events (continued)**

| Type      | Problem determination actions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | <p>d. Verify that the library containing this module was updated by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler version of IEFU83 and that z/OS has been IPLed since the change was made.</p> <p>e. For JES2 users (A4 event), ensure that you have not specified TYPE6=NO on the JOBCLASS and STCCLASS statements of the JES2 initialization parameters.</p>                                                                                                                          |
| <b>A5</b> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that JES2 has purged the job for which no A5 event was created.</li> <li>2. Ensure that you have not specified TYPE26=NO on the JOBCLASS and STCCLASS statements of the JES2 initialization parameters.</li> <li>3. If A1 events are also missing, follow the procedures described for A1 events.</li> <li>4. If A1 events are not missing, call an IBM® service representative for programming assistance.</li> </ol> |
| <b>B5</b> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that JES3 has purged the job for which no B5 event was created.</li> <li>2. If B4 events are also missing, follow the procedures described for B4 events.</li> <li>3. If B4 events are not missing, call an IBM® service representative for programming assistance.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                         |

## Verifying installation of a controller and dialogs

When you have completed the installation tasks for a Z controller, perform its initial verification. Because connections and submission of work cannot be verified in isolation, you can perform further verification of the Z controller after you have installed the controlling system, established connections between IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems, and created a current plan. For a detailed description of these verification tasks, see [Verifying configuration on page 187](#).

To initially verify the Z controller, perform the following steps:

1. Ensure that you have completed the installation tasks.
2. Start the Z controller, and check the message log (EQQMLOG).
3. Check that you can access IBM Z Workload Scheduler data via the dialogs, and that authority checking is functioning as required.

If you encounter an error during verification, see [Performing problem determination on page 183](#).

## Ensuring that all installation tasks are complete

Make sure that you have:

- Created a started-task procedure for the Z controller
- Allocated data sets
- Given security authority to the started task to access its data sets
- Specified the initialization statements in the parameter library (EQPPARM)
- Included the Z controller in an XCF group, if it uses an XCF connection
- Defined a VTAM® application ID for the Z controller and activated the VTAM® resources, if it uses an NCF connection

- Updated SYS1.PARMLIB and defined VTAM® resources, if users communicate with the Z controller through the IBM Z Workload Scheduler API or if the IBM Z Workload Scheduler server is used.
- Set up the ISPF environment for IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog users.

## Checking the message log (EQQMLOG)

Start the Z controller (for detailed information about starting and stopping IBM Z Workload Scheduler, see *Managing the Workload*).

When the Z controller is started, check the message log:

- Ensure that the return code for all initialization options is 0 (message EQQZ016I).
- Check that all required subtasks are active.

Look for the following messages when the Z controller is started:

### Active general-service messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK GENERAL SERVICE IS BEING STARTED
EQQZ085I SUBTASK GS EXECUTOR 01 IS BEING STARTED
EQQG001I SUBTASK GS EXECUTOR 01 HAS STARTED
EQQG001I SUBTASK GENERAL SERVICE HAS STARTED
```



**Note:** The preceding messages, EQQZ085I and EQQG001I, are repeated for each general service executor that is started. The number of executors started depends on the value you specified on the GSTASK keyword of the OPCOPTS initialization statement. The default is to start all five executors.

### Active data-router-task messages

```
EQQZ005I OPC SUBTASK DATA ROUTER TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQF001I DATA ROUTER TASK INITIALIZATION IS COMPLETE
```

When you start a Z controller and no current plan exists, you will still see a number of EQQZ005I messages each indicating that a subtask is being started. But these subtasks will not start until a current plan is created. You will also see this message:

### Current plan message

```
EQQN105W NO VALID CURRENT PLAN EXISTS. CURRENT PLAN VSAM I/O IS NOT
POSSIBLE
```

If you have specified an event-reader function or NCF connections, these tasks will end if no current plan exists. You can verify the remaining tasks when you have created a current plan and connections can be established. [Verifying configuration on page 187](#) describes these tasks.

- Check that the log is complete.



**Note:** If your log seems incomplete, information might be in a buffer. If you are unsure whether the log is complete, issue a dummy modify command like `F ssname,xx`. Message EQQZ049E is written to the log when the command is processed. This message will be the last entry in the log.

## Checking the server message log

After the controller is started, it starts the servers automatically if you specified the `SERVERS` parameter in the `OPCOPTS` statement. Otherwise, you must start them using the `z/OS® START` command. When the server is started, check the message log:

- Ensure that the return code for all the initialization options is 0 (message EQQZ016I)
- Look for the following messages when the server is started:

### Active server messages

```
EQQZ0051 SUBTASK SERVER IS BEING STARTED
EQQPH001 SERVER TASK HAS STARTED
```

## Checking dialog functions

Before invoking the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog, ensure that you have set up the ISPF environment as described in [The ISPF environment on page 196](#). Then invoke the IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog, and select an option from 0 to 10 on the main menu. If a new panel appears, you have established communication with the IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystem. You can further test the dialogs by performing functions, such as creating an application description. For more information on specific dialog functions, see *Managing the Workload*.

If you have used RACF® to protect Z controller resources from unauthorized access, verify that the protection mechanism works as expected.

## Performing problem determination

If you encounter problems during the verification of IBM Z Workload Scheduler, correct the errors and verify that the problem has been fixed. For more information on problem analysis, see the *Diagnosis Guide and Reference*.

## Dialog problems

Various errors can occur when you are running IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialogs. These errors cause the terminal alarm to sound and a short message to appear in the upper-right corner of your terminal screen. The message text for errors that cause the terminal alarm to sound usually contains the `ALARM=YES` flag. If this happens when you are trying to verify that IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialogs are correctly installed, press the Help key (usually PF1) in ISPF. ISPF then displays a more complete error message in the long message area on your terminal. The following examples show two dialog error messages. The message number in each example is followed by the long message text and an explanation of the error. The examples highlight two errors. They are related to the dialog interface module, `EQQMINOx`.

**EQQX115**

EQQX115E TSO Service Facility RC: 20, RSNC: 40

The EQQMINOx load module is not installed in a library that can be reached by TSO. EQQMINOx must be present either in the STEPLIB library of the current TSO session or in a library in the current LINKLIB LNKLIST concatenation. If EQQMINOx has been installed in a LINKLIB library, either an LLA refresh process or an IPL is required to make the module accessible by z/OS users.

**EQQX120**

The EQQMINOx program can only be called by an APF-authorized task

The EQQMINOx load module must be APF authorized. It must reside in a data set that is defined in SYS1.PARMLIB as being an APF-authorized library. Also, EQQMINOx must be defined to TSO as being an APF-authorized program. Ensure that you have followed the instructions described in [Modifying TSO parameters on page 103](#).

**Authority problems**

It is easiest to verify that the Z controller has been correctly installed without activating authority checking. Then, when authority checking is activated, some TSO users should no longer be able to do what they could do before. An IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog message should be issued, specifying that they are not authorized to perform a particular dialog function, or that they are not authorized to use any IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog.

If the Z controller authority functions have not been correctly installed, this will usually enable TSO users to use dialog functions that they are not authorized to use. The symptom of this problem is the absence of an expected error message. If this happens, follow this procedure which assumes the security monitor being used is RACF®.

1. Verify the APPL class. If the user should not be able to use any IBM Z Workload Scheduler dialog, verify that the APPL class is active and that the Z controller is defined as a resource in the APPL class. Also, verify that the user is not present in the access list to any of these resources and that universal access NONE has been specified. Use the `SETR LIST` command to display active classes, and use the `RLIST` command to display access lists in the APPL resource class.
2. Verify that the name of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler RACF® resource class has been defined to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler started task in the AUTHDEF statement. You can check this by browsing the Z controller message log (EQQMLOG).
3. Verify the definition of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler resource class. Check the source of the RACF® class descriptor table, and compare this with the definition supplied by the ICHRRCDE sample in the SEQQSAMP library (see [Sample library \(SEQQSAMP\) on page 347](#)).
4. Verify fixed resources. If the user should not be able to use a specific dialog, such as the Calendar dialog, verify that the IBM Z Workload Scheduler RACF® resource class is active and that CL is defined as a resource in this class. Also, verify that the user is not present in the access list to the CL resource and that universal access NONE has been specified.
5. Verify subresources. If, for example, the user should be able to update only a subset of all applications in the Application Description dialog, but is instead able to update all applications, verify that the SUBRESOURCES keyword



has been correctly specified for the Z controller in the AUTHDEF statement. Also verify that the Z controller has been restarted since the AUTHDEF statement was changed, and that IBM Z Workload Scheduler RACF® profiles have been refreshed since the IBM Z Workload Scheduler subresource profiles were updated.

## Verifying installation of a standby controller

When you have completed the installation tasks for a standby Z controller, perform initial verification. Because connections cannot be verified in isolation, you can perform further verification of the standby Z controller after you have installed the controlling system, established connections between IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems, and created a current plan. For a detailed description of these verification tasks, see [Verifying configuration on page 187](#).

To initially verify the standby Z controller, perform these tasks:

1. Ensure that you have completed all the necessary installation tasks.
2. Start the standby Z controller, and check the message log (EQQMLOG).

## Ensuring that all installation tasks are complete

Make sure that you have performed the following actions:

- Created a JCL procedure for the standby Z controller
- Given the security authority for the address space to access the same data sets as the Z controller
- Specified the initialization statements in the parameter library (EQQPARM)
- Included the standby Z controller in the same XCF group as the Z controller
- Defined a VTAM® application ID for the standby Z controller, and activated the VTAM® resources, if the standby Z controller uses NCF connections
- Assigned an IP address to the tracker, if the tracker uses a TCP/IP connection.
- Updated SYS1.PARMLIB and defined VTAM® resources, if the IBM Z Workload Scheduler API or the IBM Z Workload Scheduler server is used.

## Checking the message log (EQQMLOG)

Start the standby Z controller and browse the message log to:

- Ensure that the return code for all initialization options is 0 (message EQQZ016I).
- Check that the following message appears:

Standby Z controller message

```
EQQZ128I SCHEDULER ACTIVE IN STANDBY MODE
```

## Verifying installation of the Restart and Cleanup function

To verify that the Restart and Cleanup function was installed and configured correctly, perform the following tasks:

- Verify that for each spool a Data Store was installed and started correctly (verify the message log EQQMLOG).
- Verify that the controller was started with the correct parameters (for a sample configuration, see [SNA-only connection on page 33](#)).

## Checking the message log (EQQMLOG)

After the Z controller has been started, ensure that the following messages appear in the message log (this example shows messages for an SNA connection):

```
02/07 12.11.39 EQQZ015I INIT STATEMENT: RCLOPTS CLNJ0BPX(EQQCL)
02/07 12.11.39 EQQZ015I INIT STATEMENT: DSTDEST(TWSFDEST)
02/07 12.11.43 EQQPS01I PRE SUBMITTER TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETE
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF01 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF02 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF03 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFSI1I SECONDARY KEY FILE INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFSD5I SYSOUT DATABASE INITIALIZATION COMPLETE
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFL01I JOBL0G FETCH TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETE
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFSD1I SYSOUT DATABASE ERROR HANDLER TASK STARTED
02/07 12.11.46 EQQFV36I SESSION I9PC33A3-I9PC33Z3 ESTABLISHED
```



### Note:

1. There should be an EQQFSF1I message for each EQQSDFxx file specified in the startup procedure.
2. There should be an EQQFV36I message for each SNA connection.
3. Verify that the DSTDEST for message EQQZ015I matches the SYSDEST in the Data Store message log.

After the server has been started, ensure that the following messages appear in the message log:

```
02/07 20.16.10 EQQZ015I INIT STATEMENT: SYSDEST(TWSFDEST)
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSK1I PRIMARY KEY FILE INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFCM2I Data Store COMMAND TASK IS BEING STARTED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFCC1I Data Store COMMUNICATION TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFV01I FN APPLICATION STARTED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFV24I ACB SUCCESSFULLY OPENED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF01 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFV36I SESSION I9PC33Z3-I9PC33A3 ESTABLISHED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF02 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF03 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQUDF01 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQUDF02 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQUDF03 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSI1I SECONDARY KEY FILE INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSD5I SYSOUT DATABASE INITIALIZATION COMPLETE
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSD1I SYSOUT DATABASE ERROR HANDLER TASK STARTED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFCU1I CLEAN UP TASK STARTED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSW1I Data Store WRITER TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSW1I Data Store WRITER TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFSW1I Data Store WRITER TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.16 EQQFJK3I Data Store JESQUEUE TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
02/07 20.16.21 EQQFSR1I Data Store READER TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
```

**Note:**

1. There should be an EQQFSF1I message for each EQQSDFxx file specified in the startup procedure.
2. Verify that the SYSDEST for message EQQZ015I matches the DSTDEST in the controller message log.
3. There should be an EQQFSW1I message for every writer task.
4. There should be an EQQFCC1I message to indicate that the communication completed successfully.

## Verifying configuration

When you have installed your IBM Z Workload Scheduler controlling system, or when you install a controlled system, review this section to complete the verification of IBM Z Workload Scheduler. The following topics are described:

- Creating entries in the databases
- Running IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch jobs
- Checking the message logs (EQQMLOG)
- Verifying workload submission
- Verifying takeover by a standby Z controller

## Creating entries in the databases

You can completely verify IBM Z Workload Scheduler *only* when you have created a current plan. Before creating a CP, you must create entries in the databases and produce a long-term plan. If you are not familiar with IBM Z Workload Scheduler, see *Managing the Workload* for information about updating the databases and producing a long-term plan and current plan.

Sample IBM Z Workload Scheduler databases come with IBM Z Workload Scheduler. They are loaded into the SMP/E target library with ddname SEQQDATA when the tracker software CD is processed. You can load the sample databases by submitting the EQQSAMPI JCL, which is generated by EQQJOBS.

## Running batch jobs

When you have created database entries, invoke the LTP dialog and create a long-term plan. Check that the batch job completed successfully, and browse the long-term plan to check that the entries are correct. Next, use the Daily Planning dialog to create a current plan. When this job has ended, browse the current plan to check that the expected application occurrences are present.

You can further test IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch jobs by, for example, printing information about the entries you have created in the databases. For a list of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler batch jobs, see [Table 19: Controller skeleton JCL generated by the EQQJOBS dialog on page 84](#).

## Checking the message logs (EQQMLOG)

When you have created a current plan and have started all IBM Z Workload Scheduler address spaces in your configuration, check the message log of the Z controller and of all trackers.

## Controller message log

Look for the following messages in the message log of the Z controller:

### Active normal-mode manager messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK NORMAL MODE MGR IS BEING STARTED
EQQN013I NOW PROCESSING PARAMETER LIBRARY MEMBER EQQCP1DS
```



**Note:** Active job-tracking log archiver messages. In the preceding message, the active current plan ddname is either EQQCP1DS or EQQCP2DS.

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK JT LOG ARCHIVER IS BEING STARTED
EQQN080I THE LOG ARCHIVER TASK HAS STARTED
```

### Active job-tracking log archiver messages



**Note:** The preceding messages, EQQZ085I and EQQG001I, are repeated for each general service executor that is started. The number of executors started depends on the value you specified on the GSTASK keyword of the OPCOPTS initialization statement. The default is to start all five executors.

### Active data-router-task messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK DATA ROUTER TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQF001I DATA ROUTER TASK INITIALIZATION IS COMPLETE
```

If you have specified that APPC support should be started, check that these messages appear:

### Active APPC-task messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK APPC TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQO001I APPC TASK INITIALIZATION IS COMPLETE
```

This message must be issued for the first Z controller or server start after APPC starts; it is issued by APPC to the system log:

### APPC scheduler active - system log messages

```
ATB050I LOGICAL UNIT IS4MEOP4 FOR TRANSACTION SCHEDULER EOP4 HAS BEEN
ADDED TO THE APPC CONFIGURATION.
```

If you have specified an event-reader function, check that these messages appear:

### Active event-reader messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK EVENT READER IS BEING STARTED
EQQR025I ERDR 01 STARTED
```

The numeric value on message EQQR025I indicates which event reader is started. The same value cannot be specified on more than one ERSEQNO keyword at the same node.

If the Z controller uses XCF connections, the XCF group is activated when the Z controller is started. Several messages can appear in the message log, indicating that a tracker or standby Z controller has started and that it has joined the group. If the Z controller communicates with a tracker using XCF, check for this message to verify the connection:

#### Active tracker-connection message

```
EQQF007I XCF MEMBER TRACK2 HAS JOINED THE GROUP. THE DESTINATION WILL BE
EQQF007I REPORTED ACTIVE
```

If a standby Z controller is started, check for this message:

#### Active standby-Z controller-connection message

```
EQQF008I XCF MEMBER CTRSTBY1 HAS JOINED THE GROUP AS STANDBY FOR THE
EQQF008I CONTROLLER
```

If the Z controller uses an NCF connection, check that these messages appear (where NCFCON01 is the VTAM® application ID of the Z controller, and NCFTRK01 is the VTAM® application ID of the tracker):

#### Active NCF-connection messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK VTAM I/O TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQV001I NCF APPLICATION STARTED
EQQV024I ACB SUCCESSFULLY OPENED
EQQV036I SESSION NCFCON01-NCFTRK01 ESTABLISHED
```

If the controller uses the Restart and Clean Up functionality check that the following messages appear in the Z controller MLOG:

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK FL TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQZ005I SUBTASK PRE-SUBMIT IS BEING STARTED
EQQFSD1I SYSOUT DATABASE ERROR HANDLER TASK STARTED
EQQFSK1I PRIMARY KEY FILE INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF01 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDF02 INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
...
EQQFSF1I DATA FILE EQQSDFnn INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
EQQFSI1I SECONDARY KEY FILE INITIALIZATION COMPLETED
EQQFSD5I SYSOUT DATABASE INITIALIZATION COMPLETE
EQQPS01I PRE SUBMITTER TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETE
EQQFL01I JOBL0G FETCH TASK INITIALIZATION COMPLETE
```

If the XCF is used to connect with Data Store Following messages should occur:

```
EQQFCCAI XCF JOIN STARTED
EQQFCC9I XCF XCFCLC02 HAS JOINED XCF GROUP OPCGRPQ
```

If the SNA is used to connect with Data Store following messages should occur:

```
EQQFV01I FN APPLICATION STARTED
```

```
EQQFV24I ACB SUCCESSFULLY OPENED
```

```
EQQFV36I SESSION I9PC45RA-I9PC45AA ESTABLISHED
```

[Sample Message Log for a controller on page 190](#) shows an example of the MLOG for a Z controller. The Z controller is connected to three trackers through XCF and NCF. A standby Z controller is also started in this configuration.

## Tracker message log

Look for the following messages in the log of each tracker:

### Active data-router-task messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK DATA ROUTER TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQF001I DATA ROUTER TASK INITIALIZATION IS COMPLETE
```

### Active submit-task messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK JOB SUBMIT TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQS001I THE SUBMIT TASK HAS STARTED
```

Also, verify that the tracker has started an event writer. You should see these messages:

### Active event-writer messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK EVENT WRITER IS BEING STARTED
EQQW065I EVENT WRITER STARTED
```

If the tracker forwards events to the Z controller, ensure that an event-reader function is specified. This can be a separate event-reader task or an event writer that has been started with the EWSEQNO keyword. In some configurations, both functions can be started in a tracker.

- Although no messages are issued if you use EWSEQNO to start the reader function, check that EWSEQNO appears on the EWTROPTS statement and that the return code for this statement is 0.
- If you have specified a separate event-reader function, check that these messages appear:

### Active event-reader messages

```
EQQZ005I SUBTASK EVENT READER IS BEING STARTED
EQQR025I ERDR 01 STARTED
```

The numeric value on message EQQR025I indicates which event reader is being started. The same value cannot be specified on EWSEQNO and ERSEQNO keywords at the same node, and no more than 16 reader tasks can be specified at this node.



**Note:** If the tracker uses an XCF connection, no messages appear in the tracker message log unless an error has occurred. To verify XCF connection messages, check the message log of the Z controller.

If the tracker uses an NCF connection, check that these messages appear (where NCFTRK01 and NCFCON01 represent the VTAM® application IDs of the tracker and Z controller):

### Active NCF-connection messages

```

EQQZ005I SUBTASK VTAM I/O TASK IS BEING STARTED
EQQV001I NCF APPLICATION STARTED
EQQV024I ACB SUCCESSFULLY OPENED
EQQV036I SESSION NCFTRK01-NCFC0N01 ESTABLISHED
EQQV040I CURRENTLY RUNNING WITH 'NCFC0N01' AS CONTROLLER

```

[Sample message log for a tracker on page 191](#) shows an example of the MLOG for a tracker. The tracker is connected to the Z controller via a VTAM® link. The VTAM® application IDs are NCFTRK01 for the tracker and NCFC0N01 for the Z controller. The Z controller is active.

## Verifying workload submission

Now verify that IBM Z Workload Scheduler can submit work and that the work is sent to the correct destination.

Use the following procedure for the controlling system:

1. Create a workstation description, leave the destination field blank. This means that operations will be submitted to the system where the Z controller is started.
2. Create an application description. Define at least one operation on the workstation you have created. Submit a daily planning extend or replan batch job to include the new workstation in the current plan.

Add an occurrence of this application to the current plan.

3. Verify that the operations run successfully on this system and that they are reported as complete in the current plan.
4. Check that submit events are created in the event data set for the controlling system (for details, see [Verifying job submission on page 191](#)).

If you have controlled IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems in your configuration, use the following procedure to check that work is sent to these destinations, is submitted, and that events are returned to the Z controller:

1. Create a workstation description for each destination. In the destination field, specify the XCF member name of the tracker, the tracker VTAM® application ID, or the tracker TCP/IP destination name, depending on the type of connection.
2. Add an application occurrence to the current plan with operations defined on each of the workstations.
3. Verify that the operations run successfully on the correct system and that they are reported as complete in the current plan.
4. Check that submit events are created in the event data set for each controlled system (see [Verifying job submission on page 191](#)).

## Verifying job submission

When IBM Z Workload Scheduler submits work, a submit event is written to the event data set. A submit event is prefixed with an I, and can be one of these:

### IJ1

Job JCL. A job has been submitted.

**IJ2**

Started-task JCL. A started task has been started.

**IWTO**

An operation has been initiated for a general workstation with the WTO option. The submit task causes message EQQW775I to be issued.

Check each system on which IBM Z Workload Scheduler is installed to ensure that the destination can be reached by the Z controller and that the relevant submit events are being created in the event data set. That is, if IBM Z Workload Scheduler will submit jobs, start started tasks, and initiate WTO operations, verify that all the event types are created in the event data set. You need not test all these functions if IBM Z Workload Scheduler will not be used for a particular operation.

To perform this test for all type I events, start an operation on each of three workstations, all of which specify the destination of the system you are testing. The workstations must be a computer automatic workstation for IJ1 events, a computer automatic workstation with the started-task option for IJ2 events, and a general WTO workstation for IWTO events. Follow this procedure to verify workload submission:

1. Ensure that you have the correct workstations specified in the workstation description database.
2. Create a test application with an operation for each workstation you want to test, and add it to the current plan.
3. When the application has completed, browse the event data set, and verify that the required type I events have been created.
4. If the operations are not started, check that the workstation status is ACTIVE and that the workstation is not WAITING FOR CONNECTION, which means that the Z controller is waiting for the corresponding tracker to communicate.

## Verifying takeover by a standby controller

To verify that a standby Z controller can take over the functions of the Z controller, perform these actions:

1. Stop the Z controller.
2. Issue the following command:

```
MODIFY ssname,TAKEOVER
```

For a description about how to set up automatic takeover as a runtime option, see the XCFOPTS statement in *Customization and Tuning*.

3. Check that the following message appears in the message log:

Standby Z controller message

```
EQQZ129I TAKEOVER IN PROGRESS
```

When the standby Z controller has taken over the functions of the Z controller, more messages will appear in the message log. These are the same messages that appear when a Z controller is started. Verify that the takeover was successful by following the procedures used in the verification of the Z controller.



## Chapter 6. Migrating

This topic provides information to help you plan your migration from IBM Z Workload Scheduler versions 9.5 and 10.1 to version 10.2.

Before migrating, ensure that you have:

- Modified all your fault-tolerant agents to z-centric agents, as described in the section about modifying the workstation from fault-tolerant agent to z-centric agent in *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.
- Modified any shared DASD tracker-to-controller connection to a supported connection, as described in [Changing a shared DASD tracker-to-controller connection to an NCF, XCF, or TCP/IP connection on page 198](#).
- Installed the required PTFs, which are listed in the EQQICNVS sample job.

### Planning for migration

Before attempting to perform a migration, develop a migration plan to ensure a smooth and orderly transition. A well thought-out and documented migration plan can help minimize any interruption of service. Your migration plan should address topics such as:

- Identifying which required and optional products are needed.
- Evaluating new, changed, and deleted functions.
- Defining which IBM Z Workload Scheduler functions you want to add, delete, or modify.
- Defining necessary changes to:
  - The configuration
  - The initialization statements
  - Installation modifications
  - Operational procedures
  - Other related products
- Determining any restrictions during the conversion period.
- Estimating the amount of time the conversion will take.
- Defining education requirements for operators and users.
- Preparing your staff and users for migration.

The content and extent of a migration plan can vary significantly from installation to installation. For example, installations that have many installation-specific modifications might require extensive planning due to the added complexity.

### Migration considerations and strategies

Initially, you should install IBM Z Workload Scheduler without taking any customization actions in order to achieve a stable environment.

For instructions about using System Modification Program/Extended (SMP/E) to install IBM Z Workload Scheduler, see the *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Program Directory*.

Before migrating to the current release and to ensure that a proper fallback migration can be performed, consider that:

- You can migrate from or fall back to previous releases *without* IPLing z/OS.
- If you are performing a fallback because of problems experienced on IBM Z Workload Scheduler, be sure to keep the IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets for diagnostic purposes.
- If you migrate to and fallback from IBM Z Workload Scheduler to test the environment before your *official* migration, ensure that you reallocate all IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets before the next migration exercise.
- It might occur that in the Application Description database, an application shows a timestamp for its Last Update that corresponds to a date when no changes were made. This can occur when you migrate to a recent version of IBM Z Workload Scheduler, because for the new fields introduced, the database conversion program adds them as blank fields; when you access a panel, *every displayed field* is verified and if a field is blank or null, the verification program initializes the field to its default. This is considered a change because different from the original record content. For this reason, the record changed message is issued, and the Last Update date is modified.
- Ensure that the Dynamic Workload Console is migrated to a new release before migrating the Z controller, because the Dynamic Workload Console must always be at a version later than the Z controller.

## Customization considerations

IBM Z Workload Scheduler is designed as a general-purpose workload automation subsystem. As such, it might not meet all the requirements for your specific installation. IBM® allows installations to implement installation exits and provides many callable services that can be used to supplement IBM Z Workload Scheduler processing.

Carefully examine any customization that your site has installed. Determine whether the function is now provided in the product or if you need to modify the logic based on changes made to IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

When new functions are added to IBM Z Workload Scheduler, installation exits and macros used within installation exits can change. New installation exits or macros might also be introduced in an IBM Z Workload Scheduler release. If a release provides a new installation exit, determine if your installation needs to implement the exit. A release can change an existing exit by modifying:

- What the installation exit expects on entry.
- Return codes IBM Z Workload Scheduler expects when the exit returns control to IBM Z Workload Scheduler.
- The function that the installation exit performs.
- The processing that is performed before or after the exit.

## Establishing the required environment

You use SMP/E to install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler software. For detailed instructions, see the *Program Directory*.

### JES and SMF exits

JES and SMF exits supplied with IBM Z Workload Scheduler can also track work for previous releases. The exits are *always downward compatible*.

Consider installing JES and SMF exits in your current production environment at least a week before you plan to migrate any of the address spaces to IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

## Migrating to existing subsystem definitions

You can migrate from or fall back to your current subsystems *without having to IPL the z/OS system*.

By continuing to use your current subsystem names, you do not need to consider the effect of migration on these users of IBM Z Workload Scheduler services:

- Host dialog users
- PIF programs
- API programs
- Callable services
- Dynamic Workload Console

Keeping the same subsystem names reduces the installation effort of a new level of IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

## Migrating to new subsystem definitions

To parallel-test the new level of IBM Z Workload Scheduler with your current level, you must create new subsystems for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space.

## Getting the correct software parts

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler load modules, panels, messages, and other software parts have the same name as they had in previous IBM Z Workload Scheduler releases. Make sure that the users of IBM Z Workload Scheduler services run the same level of software as the subsystem address space.

## Load modules

Decide if you want to use the same data set name for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load modules as your previous environment. However, consider the additional effort required on your part to coordinate the JCL changes required for callers of IBM Z Workload Scheduler services such as:

```

EQQEVPGM
EQQUSINx
EQQYCOM
EQQYLTOP

```

If the IBM Z Workload Scheduler load library is not referenced in the STEPLIB DD statement, ensure that the IBM Z Workload Scheduler library is listed first in the LNKLIST concatenation *and* that the library remains empty until you are ready to cut over to IBM Z Workload Scheduler on the production system. Then copy the load modules into the library and perform an LLA refresh.

Two IBM Z Workload Scheduler load modules *must always* be in a LNKLIST library:

**EQQINITx**

The subsystem initialization module

## EQQSSCMx

The subsystem communication module.

However, this does not mean that you must reinitialize the subsystem to cut over IBM Z Workload Scheduler to production. The module names defined for EQQINITx and EQQSSCMx in the SYS1.PARMLIB subsystem name table (IEFSSNnn) can be overridden when an IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space is created.

The EQQMINOx load module requires special attention. EQQMINOx is the scheduler's dialog interface module, is invoked by TSO SERVICES, and passes dialog requests and data to the controller. EQQMINOx must run APF authorized, therefore it must reside in an authorized library. By this token, keep in mind that any unauthorized library in a STEPLIB or LIBDEF concatenation makes the entire concatenation unauthorized. So remember to identify the library where EQQMINOx resides.

Use the BUILDSSX parameter of the OPCOPTS initialization statement to rebuild the environment created during subsystem initialization at the new software level. When the address space is terminated, the previous environment is reinstated, thereby ensuring fallback to a previous release of IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

SSCMNAME keyword of the OPCOPTS initialization statement can be used to permanently, or temporarily, replace the EQQSSCMx module that was loaded into common storage at IPL. When the TEMPORARY value is defined, the named module is loaded into private storage of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space, therefore events created while the address space is not active will use the EQQSSCMx from the previous IPL. When PERMANENT is specified, the old EQQSSCMx in common storage is replaced.



**Note:** Create backup copies of the old load module library before you replace the objects.

## The ISPF environment

IBM Z Workload Scheduler ISPF dialog users must run software parts that are at the same level as the Z controller address space. Again, using the same data set names for software parts libraries, such as messages and panels, negates the requirement to change TSO logon procedures.

If you use the same data set names, instruct dialog users to return to the TSO `READY` prompt after you have replaced the software parts and before they try to communicate with an IBM Z Workload Scheduler Z controller.

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler ISPF profile is automatically reinitialized when the EQQOPCAP panel (the IBM Z Workload Scheduler main menu) is first displayed for a new release. Dialog users must enter the IBM Z Workload Scheduler options dialog and redefine required values, such as the subsystem name.

*Be sure to create backup copies of the old libraries before you replace the objects.*

When migrating from one release of IBM Z Workload Scheduler to the next, the LOADLIB, PANELLIB, MSGLIB, CLIB, and SKELLIB for the right IBM Z Workload Scheduler release must be invoked from the TSO ISPF dialogs. Remember to identify the library where EQQMINOx resides.

## Installation and verification

If you are migrating to existing subsystem definitions, it is required that you perform the following installation tasks:

1. Load the tracker software ([Step 1. Loading tracker software on page 64](#)).
2. Load the Z controller software ([Step 2. Loading controller software on page 65](#)).
3. Load the NLS software ([Step 3. Loading national language support software on page 66](#)).
4. Run the EQQJOBS CLIST ([Step 4. Using the EQQJOBS installation aid on page 66](#)).
5. Install JES and SMF exits at IBM Z Workload Scheduler level ([Step 5. Adding SMF and JES exits for event tracking on page 91](#)).
6. Update PARMLIB ([Step 6. Updating SYS1.PARMLIB on page 94](#)).
7. Import the new default security certificates for HTTP connections ([Step 8. Securing communications on page 113](#)).
8. Allocate VSAM and non-VSAM data sets ([Step 9. Allocating data sets on page 116](#)).
9. Update the JCL procedure for the IBM Z Workload Scheduler address space ([Step 10. Creating JCL procedures for address spaces on page 144](#)).
10. Update the initialization statements ([Step 11. Defining the initialization statements on page 150](#)).
11. Update the ISPF environment ([The ISPF environment on page 196](#)).

Ensure that you follow the subsystem verification procedures described in [Verifying your installation on page 175](#).

You can use the conversion program for both migration and fallback. You should consider testing your installation by migrating in the production environment and then falling back.



**Note:** Verify that all the IBM Z Workload Scheduler parameters defined in the previous release are still valid in the current release.

## Parallel testing

If you want to perform the migration and then continue immediately into parallel testing in a job-tracking environment, you can use the following procedure as a guide. However, you should carefully consider the applicability of this procedure in your own IBM Z Workload Scheduler configuration.

1. Stop your production system.
2. Perform data set conversion and copying.
3. Start your production system.
4. Start IBM Z Workload Scheduler, Version 10.2 SPE (Revised July 2025).

You should also consider:

- If you start the JCC in both the production system and IBM Z Workload Scheduler, the two JCCs cannot delete or requeue SYSOUT from the same SYSOUT class.
- Do not specify HOLDJOB(YES) or HOLDJOB(USER) for more than one of the two systems. If you do, one system might incorrectly release jobs that are held by the other system.
- When you convert the VSAM data sets, it is recommended that you run the conversion of the JS file to verify that conversion has been done correctly. Then, before running the parallel test, reallocate empty JS files. (Otherwise, the test system might find valid production JCL on the active JS file and submit it to the JES subsystem.)

- You should start with an empty JCL library data set (EQQJBLIB). Otherwise, the test system might submit production JCL incorrectly. To test that IBM Z Workload Scheduler submits jobs correctly, you should create test applications with job names that are not known to the production system. JCL for those jobs could then safely be inserted into EQQJBLIB.
- On the test system you should specify TRACK(ALL) and SUBFAILACTION(R) on the JTOPTS initialization statement.
- TSO commands or subroutines that have a specific name for the subsystem parameter will not report events to the test system. You should update any procedures, which are dependent on TSO commands or subroutines, if events should also be reported to the test system.
- If you are migrating from a previous release of IBM Z Workload Scheduler and you use NetView® or a similar product to intercept messages, make sure that WTO (write-to-operator) messages are not issued by the test system. Otherwise, the test system might trigger some processing that impacts the production system. You should not use alert WTOs, deadline WTOs, or WTO operations on the test system.
- If you want to use Restart and Cleanup when the old subsystem is running a JCC task, you must set the DSTCLASS parameter in the RCLOPTS statement of the new controller. The class specified in DSTCLASS must not be one of the classes specified in the JCC parameter CHKCLASS. This will prevent the JCC task from deleting the duplicate SYSOUT copy created for the Data Store before it has been successfully stored. For further details about the RCLOPTS statement, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Using the preceding notes as a guide, you will be able to run one production system and one IBM Z Workload Scheduler test system in parallel. The work with the database dialogs and the long-term-planning functions can be fully tested this way. The job-tracking functions of the test system will be incomplete because only the specially created test jobs will be submitted by the test system. However, the tracking of work, including the tracking of applications and jobs in the production area, will be done normally.

## Migrating the backup controller

After you migrated the primary controller, you can migrate the backup controller by completing the following procedure:

1. Allocate the VSAM clusters and non-VSAM data sets by running EQQPCS01 and EQQPCS02 jobs, respectively.
2. When the backup controller starts and establishes the connection with the primary controller, the primary controller sends all the required plans.
3. As soon as the backup controller receives the plans, it performs the corresponding restore.
4. To check that the restore process for all the plans has completed, look for the following message in EQQMLOG:

```
EQQN134I RE-SYNCHRONIZATION PLANS RESTORE COMPLETED
```

## Changing a shared DASD tracker-to-controller connection to an NCF, XCF, or TCP/IP connection

To change a shared DASD tracker connection to an NCF (VTAM®), XCF (SYSPLEX), or TCP/IP connection, perform the following steps.

1. Delete the DASD connection as follows:

- a. In the controller started task procedure:
  - i. Delete the `EQQEVDDnn` DD statement pointing to the event data set of the specific tracker.
  - ii. Delete the DD statement pointing to the Submit/Release data set of the tracker. Not every DASD-connected tracker has a Submit/Release data set, but if one exists, its DDNAME in the controller procedure is the same as the destination listed under the `DASD` keyword in the `ROUTOPTS` initialization statement of the controller.
- b. In the controller initialization parameters:
  - i. Decrease the value of the `OPCOPTS ERDRTASK()` keyword by the number of DASD-connected trackers being removed. If there are no DASD-connected trackers, `ERDRTASK()` is 0.
  - ii. Remove from the `ERDRPARM()` keyword the name of the `PARMLIB` member containing the parameters for the Event Reader task being deleted.
  - iii. Remove from the `DASD` keyword in the `ROUTOPTS` initialization statement the DDNAME of the Submit/Release data set of the tracker.
- c. In the controller ISPF dialogs:
  - i. Remove the DDNAME of the Submit/Release data set of the tracker from the workstation destination under dialog option 1.1.2, using the `M` (modify) row command.
  - ii. Remove the workstation destination from `ROUTOPTS` and from the workstation definition.
- d. In the tracker started task procedure, remove the `EQQSUDS` DD statement.
- e. In the tracker initialization parameters:
  - i. In the `EWTROPTS` statement, set the `SUREL()` keyword to `NO`.
  - ii. In the `TRROPTS` statement, remove the `HOSTCON(DASD)` keyword.

2. To add an NCF connection:

- a. Define the VTAM® LUs for the controller and the tracker. If necessary, create cross-domain definitions. IBM Z Workload Scheduler requires that the LU name be the same as the `ACBNAME` in the `APPL`. For details, refer to [Step 14. Activating the network communication function on page 159](#).
- b. In the controller initialization parameters:
  - i. In the `OPCOPTS` statement, set the `NCFTASK()` keyword to `YES` and write the LU name of the controller in the `NCFAPPL()` keyword.
  - ii. In the `ROUTOPTS` statement, write the LU name of the tracker in the `SNA()` keyword.
- c. In the controller ISPF dialogs, write the LU name of the tracker in the workstation destination under dialog option 1.1.2, using the `M` (modify) row command.
- d. In the tracker initialization parameters:
  - i. In the `OPCOPTS` statement, set the `NCFTASK()` keyword to `YES` and write the LU name of the tracker in the `NCFAPPL()` keyword.
  - ii. In the `TRROPTS` statement, set the `HOSTCON()` keyword to `SNA` and write the LU name of the controller in the `SNAHOST()` keyword.
  - iii. In the `EWTROPTS` statement, set the `EWSEQNO()` keyword to 1.

3. To add an XCF connection:

- a. In the `SYS1.PARMLIB(COUPLEnn)` member:
    - i. Define the IBM Z Workload Scheduler XCF transport class, as described in [Updating XCF initialization options on page 102](#).
    - ii. Define the XCF group that is to enable the controller to communicate with the trackers.
  - b. In the controller initialization parameters:
    - i. In the `XCFOPTS` statement, code the `GROUP()`, `MEMBER()`, and `TAKEOVER()` keywords.
    - ii. In the `ROUTOPTS` statement, write the `XCFC MEMBERNAME` of the tracker in the `XCFC()` keyword.
  - c. In the controller ISPF dialogs, write the `XCFC MEMBERNAME` of the tracker in the workstation destination under dialog option 1.1.2, using the `M` (modify) row command.
  - d. In the tracker initialization parameters:
    - i. In the `XCFOPTS` statement, code the `GROUP()` and `MEMBER()` keywords.
    - ii. In the `TRROPTS` statement, set the `HOSTCON()` keyword to `XCFC`.
    - iii. In the `EWTRROPTS` statement, set the `EWSEQNO()` keyword to 1.
4. To add a TCP/IP connection:
- a. Define the IP addresses for the controller and tracker. For details, see [Step 15. Using TCP/IP for communication on page 162](#).
  - b. In the controller initialization parameters:
    - i. In the `TCPOPTS` statement, set the values to define the details of the local controller. This statement is optional; if you do not specify it, the default values are taken.
    - ii. In the `ROUTOPTS` statement, write the TCP/IP destination name and IP address of the remote tracker in the `TCPIP` keyword.
  - c. In the controller ISPF dialogs, write the TCP/IP destination name of the tracker in the workstation destination under dialog option 1.1.2, using the `M` (modify) row command.
  - d. In the tracker initialization parameters:
    - i. In the `TCPOPTS` statement, set the values to define the details of the local tracker or leave the default values.
    - ii. In the `TRROPTS` statement, set the `HOSTCON()` keyword to `TCPIP` and write the IP address of the controller in the `TCPHOSTNAME()` keyword.
    - iii. In the `EWTRROPTS` statement, set the `EWSEQNO()` keyword to 1.
5. Stop and restart the controller and tracker for the parmlib changes to take effect, and run the `CP extend` or the `CP replan` command to update the current plan with the changed workstation destinations.

## Running on upgraded operating systems

To run the scheduler on a new version of the z/OS® operating system, you must reassemble the SMF and JES exits mentioned in [Step 5. Adding SMF and JES exits for event tracking on page 91](#) with the libraries of the new operating system.

If you upgrade the SMP/E environment to a later version of z/OS® by using the SMP/E function `BUILDMCS`, the relink occurs automatically (ensure that the `DDDEF` entries for the new operating system are set up correctly by specifying the latest `SEZACMTX` and `SCEELKED` libraries). If you do not use `BUILDMCS`, relink the load modules by using the SMP/E function `LINK LMODSCALLLIBS`. With this function, all the IBM Z Workload Scheduler modules are relinked to the latest `SEZACMTX` and `SCEELKED` libraries.



## HOME directory requirements for started tasks

For any user IDs running the controller, server, output collector, or TCP connected tracker started task, you are required to define a HOME directory in their OMVS segment. The HOME directory must exist, be mounted, and the user ID must be assigned write permission to it.

To ensure that a HOME directory is defined for the user ID running the started task, issue the following RACF command:

```
LU <started_task_userID> OMVS NORACF
```

The output must return a row as in the following example:

```
HOME= /u/<started_task_userID>
```

## Migrating actions

The following topics describe the procedures for:

- [Migrating data sets on page 201](#)
- [Migrating the production environment on page 208](#)

To migrate the controller by using the job stream provided with the product, see [Migrating the controller with the IWSZSELFUPGRADE application on page 211](#).

If after migrating you need to return to the previous version, follow the procedure described in [Performing fallback on page 215](#).

## Migrating data sets

For migration purposes, data sets fall into three categories:

- VSAM data sets that are copied and converted by the EQQICTOP migration program
- Non-VSAM data set that you can copy, or use unchanged, in the new version
- VSAM and non-VSAM data sets that must be empty when you migrate to IBM Z Workload Scheduler

Each of these categories is described in the following topics.

## EQQICTOP VSAM data set conversion program

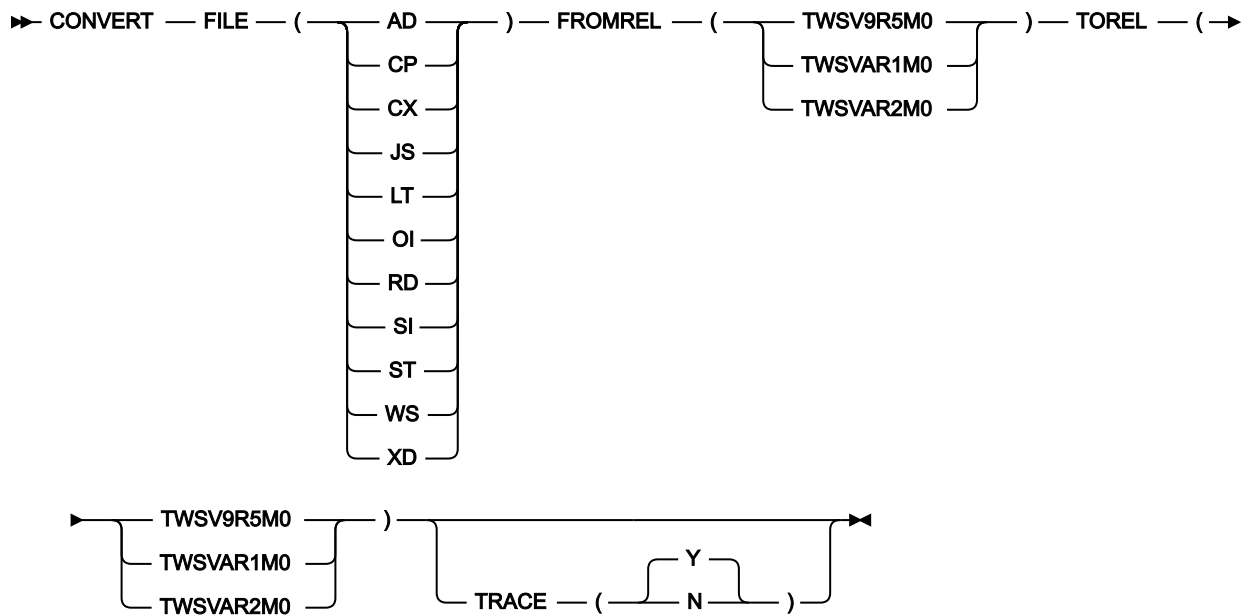
### Purpose

With the EQQICTOP conversion program, you can migrate VSAM data sets from earlier releases of IBM Z Workload Scheduler. You can also use the program to reverse the procedure in case you need to fall back to your old system.

The EQQJOBS program creates JCL tailored to your installation specifications in the EQQICNVS member.

EQQICTOP is controlled by CONVERT statements in the SYSIN file. You can supply any number of these statements to EQQICTOP.

## Syntax



## Parameters

### FILE(*file identifier*)

Defines the data set to be converted. You can specify one of the following file identifiers on each CONVERT statement:

#### AD

Application descriptions and JCL variable tables

#### CP

The current plans, EQQCPnDS and EQQNCPDS

#### CX

The current plan extension, EQQCXDS and EQQNCXDS

#### JS

JCL repository and retrieved job logs

#### LT

Long-term plan

#### OI

Operator instructions

#### RD

Special resource definitions

**SI**

Side information file, ETT criteria and configuration information

**ST**

Step awareness (only if the Step Awareness feature is active on the primary controller)

**WS**

Workstation descriptions, calendars, and periods

**XD**

Extended dependencies

Your conversion JCL should contain DD names `EQQxxIN` and `EQQxxOUT` for each data set that you want to convert, where `xx` is the file identifier.

**FROMREL(*product identifier*)**

Defines the product and release level of the input data set. You can specify one of the following:

**TWSV9R5M0**

IBM Z Workload Scheduler Version 9 Release 5.

**TWSVAR1M0**

IBM Z Workload Scheduler Version 10 Release 1.

**TWSVAR2M0**

IBM Z Workload Scheduler Version 10 Release 2.

**TOREL(*product identifier*)**

Defines the product and release level of the output data set. You can specify one of the following:

**TWSV9R5M0**

IBM Z Workload Scheduler Version 9 Release 5.

**TWSVAR1M0**

IBM Z Workload Scheduler Version 10 Release 1.

**TWSVAR2M0**

IBM Z Workload Scheduler Version 10 Release 2.

**Note:**

1. Conversion stops if there is a VSAM I/O error on one of the files. One such error is a duplicate key on the output file. This can occur if the output data set is not empty.
2. Migrate the currently active JCL-repository data set. You can check whether the primary or alternate data set is in use by selecting option 6 in the Query Current Plan dialog. Do this when no work is running and before you stop the Z controller.



3. You can use one of two methods to convert the current plan:
  - If the last action performed on your production system was to extend or replan the current plan, use the new-current-plan data set that was created on this system as input to the conversion program. This is the preferred method as it ensures you will not lose any job-tracking records, this is relevant if you use the track log (EQQTROUT) as an audit trail.
  - If no error occurred when you stopped your production system, both primary and alternate current plans are the same. Use EQQCP1DS as input to the conversion program.

In both cases, the output file **must** be the new-current-plan data set (EQQNCPDS) on your IBM Z Workload Scheduler system.

You can convert the current plan extension data set using the same methods. If the EQQCPIN DD card in the EQQICNVS conversion program refers to EQQNCPDS, the EQQCXIN DD card must refer to the corresponding EQQNCXDS created with the latest REPLAN or EXTEND job. If, instead, no REPLAN or EXTEND job was run before shutting down the system, the EQQCXIN DD card must refer to the latest EQQCXDS data set in use. In both cases, the EQQICNVS output file for CX must be the new-current-plan extension data set (EQQNCXDS) corresponding to the new-current-plan data set (EQQNCPDS).

4. In addition to input and output DD names for each VSAM file, the migration JCL should also contain the EQQMLOG and EQQMLIB DD names. EQQMLOG is an output file for messages. EQQMLIB is an input file that contains the product message library.

## TRACE(Y|N)

Specifies if message:

```
EQQIC66I PROCESSING APPLICATION AD_data_set_name VALID FROM From_date
STATUS status
```

is to be issued in the message log of the migration job as each data set of the Application Description database is migrated to the new product release.

Set TRACE to N specifically to inhibit the issue of message EQQIC66I; otherwise, the message is written to the MLOG as part of the migration process.



**Note:** Specifying TRACE(Y), or not specifying it at all (the default), will cause one occurrence of message EQQIC66I to be issued for each processed application. Consider using TRACE(N) if you do not want this message to be issued in the batch output MLOG.

## Data sets that you need to migrate

Allocate new VSAM data sets for IBM Z Workload Scheduler. Existing data can then be migrated by using EQQICTOP. Keep a copy of the old data sets for backup and fallback purposes. The following data sets must be migrated to IBM Z Workload Scheduler format:

**Table 33. Data sets that you need to migrate**

| DD Name               | Description                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQADDS               | Application descriptions and JCL variable tables.                                                                               |
| EQQJSnDS              | JCL repository (currently active).                                                                                              |
| EQQLTDS               | Long-term plan.                                                                                                                 |
| EQQNCPDS, or EQQCPnDS | The current plan, but use the NCP as input if a daily plan process created an NCP after the old system was shut down.           |
| EQQNCXDS, or EQQCXDS  | The current plan extension, but use the NCX as input if a daily plan process created an NCX after the old system was shut down. |
| EQQOIDS               | Operator instructions.                                                                                                          |
| EQQRDDS               | Special resource definitions.                                                                                                   |
| EQQSIDS               | Side information, ETT criteria and configuration information.                                                                   |
| EQQSTDS               | Step Awareness (only if the feature is active on the primary controller).                                                       |
| EQQWSDS               | Workstation descriptions, calendars, and periods.                                                                               |
| EQQNXDDS and EQQXDnDS | Extended data.                                                                                                                  |

## Data sets that can be used without migrating

IBM Z Workload Scheduler can use unchanged data from the following data sets:

**Table 34. Data sets that IBM Z Workload Scheduler can use**

| DD Name  | Description                                                         |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQEMAIL | Email data set                                                      |
| EQQEVLIB | Configuration file repository for event-triggered resource handling |
| EQQINCWK | JCC incident work file                                              |

**Table 34. Data sets that IBM Z Workload Scheduler can use (continued)**

| DD Name                                                                                                                          | Description                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQJBLIB <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                            | JCL library                                                 |
| EQQJCLIB                                                                                                                         | Job-completion-checker (JCC) message-table library          |
| EQQJTABL                                                                                                                         | Job table log file                                          |
| EQQOUCV                                                                                                                          | Data set used for controller-output collector communication |
| EQQPRLIB                                                                                                                         | Automatic-recovery-procedure library                        |
| —                                                                                                                                | JCC incident log                                            |
| <sup>1</sup> If this library contains jobs for the scheduler planning, the JCL must be modified to reflect the new installation. |                                                             |

## Empty data sets

When you have completed your testing of IBM Z Workload Scheduler and have performed data set migration, ensure that the following data sets are empty before you start the product for the first time in production:

### **EQQACPDS**

Archive of old current plan

### **EQQBKPT**

Backup checkpoint

### **EQQCKPT**

Checkpoint

### **EQQCXDS**

Current plan extension

### **EQQDBARC**

Extended-auditing archive

### **EQQDBnn**

Extended-auditing logs

### **EQQDBOUT**

Extended-auditing tracklog data set

### **EQQDLnn**

Dual job-tracking logs

### **EQQEVDS**

Event data set in the controller

**EQHHTTP0**

Event data set for end-to-end scheduling with z-centric capabilities

**EQJTARC**

Job-tracking archive

**EQJTnn**

Job-tracking logs

**EQLOGRC**

Job log and Restart Information pending requests Log data set

**EQMLOG**

Message log

**EQMONDS**

Monitoring Task Data Set

**EQNSTDS**

New Step Awareness

**EQSCPDS**

Secondary Current Plan Data Set

**EQSTC**

Started-task submit

**EQTROUT**

Job-tracking log copy created by the daily planning jobs. Input to the EQQAUDIT program, that is not downward compatible

EQQCPnDS, EQQXDnDS, EQQCXDS, and EQQSCPDS do not have to be empty, but they can be. When the product is started for the first time, you **must** specify CURRPLAN(NEW) on the JTOPTS statement. Therefore, any data in the EQQCPnDS and EQQCXDS data sets will immediately be replaced by the contents of EQQNCPDS and EQQNCXDS. Similarly, the inactive EQQJSnDS data set (EQQJS2DS in this example) does not have to be empty, although it can be.

## Tracker, Data Store, and Output Collector considerations

When you migrate a tracker, it is not necessary for EQQEVDS to be empty. The migration enables you to use the subsystem with the new release and modifies the JCL trackers to point to the libraries used, for example EQQMLIB or STEPLIB.

The first time you start a tracker migrated to a new version, ensure that in the OPCOPTS statement you specified BUILDSSX(REBUILD) and SSCMNAME(EQQSSCMP,PERMANENT). However, this setting of OPCOPTS might cause the loss of some data set triggering events on the tracker; to prevent this from occurring, do not set BUILDSSX(REBUILD) and SSCMNAME(EQQSSCMP,PERMANENT) but set the INITRTN and INITPARM of the IEFSSNnn member in SYS1.PARMLIB as follows:

```
SUBSYS SUBNAME(subsystem name)
INITRTN(module name)
INITPARM('maxecsa,suffix')
```

In this way, after the IPL of the z/OS system, the tracker will be migrated without requiring any parameter change. Because the Z controller and trackers can communicate even if they are at different versions, you can migrate the trackers before or after migrating the Z controller.

When you migrate a Data Store, consider that:

- In the Data Store, it is not necessary for EQQPKI01, EQQSKI01, EQQSDFnn, EQQUDFnn to be empty.
- In the Z controller, it is not necessary for EQQPKI01, EQQSKI01, and EQQSDFnn to be empty.

The data store and controller tasks might be migrated at different times, provided that the maintenance level of the old and new release of IBM Z Workload Scheduler is the same. This means that you should apply any PTF which affects both controller and data store code to both releases of the product. If this level of concurrent PTF maintenance cannot be maintained, it is best to keep the data store and controller on the same release of IBM Z Workload Scheduler. If the migration is successfully performed, you should be able to use the Restart and Cleanup function on the new release for any operation which was on the error list on the old release of IBM Z Workload Scheduler

If you change a datastore connection type and you want to reflect the naming convention in the FLOPTS destination name, keep the former destination name in the FLOPTS parameter that corresponds to the connection type to be used (SNADEST, XCFDEST, or TCPDEST). For example, suppose that you change the datastore connection from SNA to XCF and the former FLOPTS is SNADEST(OPCTRK1.DST). If you want to use XCFTRK1.DST as new destination name, specify the following FLOPTS parameter: XCFDEST(OPCTRK1.DST, XCFTRK1.DST). Omitting the former destination produces the messages EQQFL18E and EQQM643W in the controller message log, when retrieving any joblog stored with the former destination name.

Output collector is not to be migrated.

## Migrating the production environment

To migrate your production system, perform the following steps:

1. [Close down your production system on page 209](#)
2. [Convert VSAM files to the new system format on page 209](#)
3. [Initialize the new system on page 209](#)
4. [Produce a checkpoint data set containing data from the old production system on page 210](#)
5. [Start the new system on page 210](#)
6. [Validate the new system on page 211](#)



## Close down your production system

1. From the Daily Plan dialog on the production system on the controller, create a replan or plan-extend batch job. Change the job card to contain TYPRUN=HOLD, and submit the job. Save the JCL in a data set in case you have to resubmit it to correct an error.
2. If you specified CHECKSUBSYS(YES) in the BATCHOPT statement used by the batch job, change it to CHECKSUBSYS(NO). In the BATCHOPT statement used by the batch job comment out the JRUNHISTORY parameter, if it is used.
3. Using the Query Current Plan dialog on the controller production system, check which JS file is currently in use on this system.
4. Stop the controller and server, release the daily plan from hold, and make sure it runs successfully.

## Convert VSAM files to the new system format

1. Create a backup copy of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler VSAM files.
2. Back up the IBM Z Workload Scheduler non-VSAM data sets.
3. Allocate VSAM and non-VSAM data sets for IBM Z Workload Scheduler by using the EQQPCS01 and EQQPCS02 jobs.
4. Review the EQQICNVS sample job. Ensure that input and output data set names are correctly specified.

Ensure that JS1 is the active JCL repository in option 6.6 on the previous Z controller. If JS2 is the active JCL repository, use that as input, but make sure that JS1 is used as output because IBM Z Workload Scheduler by default uses JS1 as the active JCL repository when you start a subsystem with an empty checkpoint data set.

The old NCP is used as input if a daily plan batch process was submitted on the previous system prior to shut down. Output is the IBM Z Workload Scheduler NCP.

5. Run EQQICNVS to convert the VSAM data to IBM Z Workload Scheduler format.
6. Verify that the conversion program ran successfully. If there are any problems converting the VSAM files, you should abandon the migration.

## Initialize the new system

Before you perform the steps described in this section, ensure that the VSAM file conversion described in the preceding section was successful.

1. Ensure that the data sets referred to in [Empty data sets on page 206](#) are empty. Use ISPF browse to ensure that all job-tracking logs (EQQJTnn), the job-tracking archive (EQQJTARC), and the checkpoint (EQQCKPT) data sets are empty. If you use dual job-tracking logs (EQQDLnn), they should also be empty.
2. Modify the JCL procedure for the controller to include the new DD names and data sets added in IBM Z Workload Scheduler.
3. Modify initialization parameters for the controller. Because the CKPT data set is not yet initialized the first time you start the controller after migration, you must set CURRPLAN(NEW) in the JTOPTS statement. Specify BUILDSSX(REBUILD) and SSCMNAME(EQQSSCMP,TEMPORARY) in the OPCOPTS statement. Specify the PIFHD

parameter in the INTFOPTS statement. As soon as the controller has started, change back to CURRPLAN(CURRENT), to prevent the controller from recovering from the new current plan each time it starts.



**Note:** You might find it useful to specify JOBSUBMIT(NO) in the JTOPTS statement so that work is not submitted when you start the controller. When you have checked that the controller has started without errors, you can activate job submission using the Service Functions dialog.

To initialize the checkpoint data set, specify OPCHOST(YES) in OPCOPTS. In this way, when the scheduler starts, the NMM task initializes the checkpoint data set with FMID and LEVEL corresponding to SSX. You can then change the OPCHOST value. For example, you can change the value to OPCHOST(PLEX) when the subsystem is used as the controlling system in XCF.

4. Start the controller. Verify that no errors occurred during initialization. If required, correct any errors and restart the controller.
5. Stop the controller.

## Produce a checkpoint data set containing data from the old production system

Produce a checkpoint data set containing data from the old production system:

1. Merge OLD.CKPT, from the version you are migrating, and the newly allocated CKPT, created in the previous section, into CKPT.NEW using sample EQQPMCKP, which you customize for your environment.
2. Back up the current CKPT and then rename CKPT.NEW to the current CKPT.

## Start the new system

1. Change JTOPTS CURRPLAN(NEW) to CURRPLAN(CURRENT).
2. In the BATCHOPT statement used by the batch job, uncomment the JRUNHISTORY parameter if you had commented it out.
3. Start the controller. The merged checkpoint data set will enable it to continue reading the event records.
4. The first time you start the trackers at the version to which you are migrating, in the OPCOPTS statement specify BUILDSSX(REBUILD) and SSCMNAME(EQQSSCMn,PERMANENT) then delete these parameters because no longer required.
5. Enter the Service Functions dialog on the controller, and activate job submission (if it is not already active).
6. Submit a daily plan replan or extend **as soon as possible** after migration. Until a new current plan is created, any references to special resources will cause the resource object to be copied from the EQQRDDS to the current-plan-extension data space. This processing has some performance overheads.

The new-current-plan-extension data set (EQQNCXDS) is built during daily planning to contain all special resources referenced by operations in the new current plan.

7. After the first IPL of the z/OS system, delete the BUILDSSX and SSCMNAME parameters from the OPCOPTS statement in the Z controller and trackers, because they are no longer required.

## Validate the new system

1. From the Ready List dialog, review the status of active operations.
2. Check that the operations that are becoming ready on the workstations representing the three z/OS systems are successfully submitted to the intended system. Also check that the ending status is correctly reflected in the ready lists.
3. Verify that the current plan and the long-term plan can be extended successfully.
4. Verify that other IBM Z Workload Scheduler-related processes (for example, the dialogs, batch programs, and PIF-based programs) work as expected.

## Migrating the controller with the IWSZSELFUPGRADE application

You can upgrade the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller in an automatic way, with only few manual steps, by using the `IWSZSELFUPGRADE` application that is provided with the product.

In `IWSZSELFUPGRADE`, the jobs requiring manual actions are defined as dummy operations on a manual start and completion workstation.

`IWSZSELFUPGRADE` is provided in batch loader and Workload Automation Programming Language formats that you can import by using the `EQQUPGBL` or `EQQUPGWA` sample, respectively.

After importing the `IWSZSELFUPGRADE` application, to migrate an IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller complete the following procedure.



### Note:

1. Before running `IWSZSELFUPGRADE`, ensure that you set `VARSUB=YES` in the `OPCOPTS` statement.
2. If you are using JES3 exit, modify the operations 004 and 005 in `IWSZSELFUPGRADE` to replace `EQQJES2` and `EQQJES21` with `EQQJES3`.

1. Copy `IWSZSELFUPGRADE` to the Application Description.
2. Customize the following jobs as required for your migration purposes:

#### **EQQALPDS**

To allocate the data sets required to run `EQQJOBS`.

#### **EQQNPJOB**

To mark as NOP all the operations that install or migrate optional functions (such as Restart and Cleanup or Reporting) that you do not use.

#### **EQQCPMOD**

To copy the load modules `EQQSSCMx` and `EQQINITx` to the user library that needs to be APF authorized and added to the z/OS system LINKLIST.

## EQQCPPAR

To copy the old PARMLIB to the new PARMLIB.

3. Add the `IWSZSELFUPGRADE` application to the current plan.

The following operations are run automatically or wait for your manual intervention:

### Operation 001 (automatic)

The data sets required for EQQJOBS are allocated.

### Operation 002 (manual)

You are required to run EQQJOBS and copy the generated sample JCLs to the job library data set (EQQJBLIB).



**Note:** Ensure that in the Create Sample Job JCL (EQQJOBS3) panel, you specify the `//&OJOBNAME` JOB card in the Job Statement Information field.

### Operation 003 (automatic)

The NOPJOB job is run.

### Operations 004, 005, and 006 (automatic)

The samples generated by EQQJOBS named EQQJES2, EQQJES21, and EQQSMF are run to link the JES2 and SMF exits.



**Note:** If you are using JES3 exit, you must have modified the operations running EQQJES2 and EQQJES21 to an operation running EQQJES3.

### Operation 009 (manual)

You are required to manually update the following members:

- IEFSSNnn defined for the load modules EQQINITx and EQQSSCMx.
- IKJTSONn defined for the load module EQQMINOx.

For detailed information about the load modules, see [Load modules on page 195](#).

### Operations from 010 to 113 (automatic)

The following jobs are automatically run, unless you marked them as NOP.



**Note:** Because EQQPCS02 contains system symbols, if you want to use them you must make EQQPCS02 a started task or batch job by copying it to a procedure library. Then, define the workstation where this operation is run as `STARTED TASK, STC = Y`.

- EQQRCERT
- EQQPCS01

- EQQPCS02
- EQQPCS03
- EQQPCS04
- EQQPCS07
- EQQPCS08
- EQQPCS09
- EQQPCS10
- EQQPCS11
- EQQPCS12
- EQQPCS13

#### **Operation 120 (manual)**

You are required to update the controller startup procedure.

#### **Operation 130 (automatic)**

The EQQICNVS sample job is automatically run to migrate the VSAM data sets.

#### **Operation 150 (automatic)**

The COPYMOD job is automatically run to copy the load modules EQQSSCMx and EQQINITx to the PARMLIB.

#### **Operation 151 (automatic)**

The COPYPARM job is automatically run to copy the old PARMLIB to the new PARMLIB.

#### **Operation 152 (manual)**

You are required to update the new PARMLIB as required.

After the `IWSZSELFUPGRADE` application completes successfully, you can start the subsystem that was migrated.

## Installing or upgrading the IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent automatically

You can automatically install or upgrade an IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent (z-centric) or an agent with dynamic capabilities by customizing and running the following applications provided with the product. The applications are provided in both batch loader and Workload Automation Programming Language formats.

#### **IWSZCENINSTALL**

To upgrade an IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent. Run this application on a workstation where an IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent instance exists, to automatically upgrade it.

Use the EQQZCEBL sample to import the batch loader format or the EQQZCEWA sample to import the Workload Automation Programming Language format.

#### **IWSZZREINSTALL**

To install an IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent by running a Remote Command job defined on the Dynamic Workload Console. Run this application on a workstation where an IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent instance exists, to automatically install as many IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents on as many workstations as you want.

Use the EQQZREBL sample to import the batch loader format or the EQQZREWA sample to import the Workload Automation Programming Language format.

#### **IWSZZDYNINSTALL**

To upgrade a dynamic agent. Run this application on a workstation where a dynamic agent instance exists, to automatically upgrade it.

Use the EQQZDYBL sample to import the batch loader format or the EQQZDYWA sample to import the Workload Automation Programming Language format.

Before importing the **IWSZZCENINSTALL**, **IWSZZREINSTALL**, or **IWSZZDYNINSTALL** application to the AD database, complete the following customization steps:

1. The applications apply to the Linux operating system. To use them in a Windows environment, modify the paths and commands within each sample job as required.
2. The workstation names associated with the operations within the samples are **A130** and **Z130**. Ensure that you either create these workstations in your environment or modify the samples with your actual workstation names, as follows:

##### **A130**

The agent running the command (*driving agent*).

##### **Z130**

The agent that is to be installed (*target agent*).

3. All the jobs that are run by the **IWSZZCENINSTALL** or **IWSZZDYNINSTALL** application are defined in the EQQZCJCL sample. Create the corresponding jobs in the controller JOBLIB and customize them according to your environment, as follows:

**/opt/IBM/TWA\_twszc**

Installation path of the target agent.

##### **Buildzcen**

Directory of the target agent where the agent will be installed.

**/mnt/build**

Source directory on the target agent from which the new agent code will be copied.

**-uname twszc**

Name of the user for which the IBM Z Workload Scheduler agent is installed.

**/JDBC\_drivers**

Installation path of the JDBC drivers on the target agent.

The `IWSZCENINSTALL`, `IWSZREINSTALL`, and `IWSZDYNINSTALL` applications comprise the following jobs, connected by internal dependencies:

**Operation 001, workstation A130, job name JOBSTOP**

Stops the target agent.

**Operation 002, workstation A130, job name JOBUNINS**

Uninstalls the target agent by running the `twsinst` command.

**Operation 003, workstation A130, job name JOBDLBD**

Deletes the source directory containing the old compressed file for the target agent.

**Operation 004, workstation A130, job name JOBDLINS**

Deletes the target agent installation path.

**Operation 005, workstation A130, job name JOBCOPY**

Copies the compressed file to install the agent from the driving agent to the target agent installation path.

**Operation 006, workstation A130, job name JOBUNTAR**

Runs the uncompress command of the agent code.

**Operation 007, workstation A130, job name JOBINSZC (in `IWSZCENINSTALL`) or JOBINSDY (in `IWSZDYNINSTALL`)**

Installs the target agent by running the `twsinst` command.

**Operation 008, workstation A130, job name JOBJDBC (automatic)**

Copies the JDBC drivers to the target agent.

**Operation 009, workstation WAIT**

This operation waits for a few minutes, to ensure that the target agent is started.

**Operation 010, workstation Z130, job name**

Runs a sample job on the target agent to verify that the installation was successful.

Choose which application you want to run and use the appropriate sample to load it into your AD database.

## Performing fallback

If a problem occurs after IBM Z Workload Scheduler has been active as a production system for some time, and the problem is serious enough, you might need to stop the new system and return the workload to the previous system. You can do this by using a procedure called *fallback*, if the IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets are usable.



**Note:** If on the primary controller the Step Awareness feature was active and you want to keep it in the previous system, ensure that you convert the EQQSTDS data set.

The fallback procedure is as follows:

1. Run the EQQPCS01 and EQQPCS02 jobs to allocate new data sets for the old production system. The current data sets, or a copy, used by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems should be kept for problem determination purposes.
2. If required, close down the systems in the same way as during migration. This is required if the current plan on the controller is intact and job tracking is working normally.
3. If possible, create up-to-date data sets for the long-term plan and new current plan for the controller.

Do not submit a REPLAN job prior to shutdown, unless the PERMANENT option was used for SSCMNAME on the converted system, or if SSCMNAME was not specified.

If SSCMNAME(EQQSSCMP,TEMPORARY) was used, message EQQX145E will be issued if a REPLAN job is started after the controller is shut down.

4. Build VSAM data sets for the old system by running the EQQICNVS job to convert IBM Z Workload Scheduler files to their previous format.



**Note:** Before running EQQICNVS job, check that a daily plan batch process was not submitted on the system before shutting the controller down. Then, in EQQICNVS set the IBM Z Workload Scheduler CP1, CX, and XD1 as the input, and NCP, NCX, and NXD as the output.

5. Ensure that in the JTOPTS initialization statement you set CURRPLAN(NEW).



**Note:** You might find useful to specify JOBSUBMIT(NO) in JTOPTS, so that work is not submitted when you start the controller. After checking that the old system has started without errors, you can activate job submission by using the Service Functions dialog.

6. Start the controller and trackers again using the converted files and start the server.
7. If the new current plan (NCP) data set is not fully up-to-date because you could not run the daily plan program, use the MCP dialog to update the status of operations to make the current plan up-to-date.
8. Start the trackers again. Use the SSCMNAME parameter on the JTOPTS initialization to load the current subsystem communication module for the release to which you are falling back.



## Part III. Installing Dynamic Workload Console and Z connector

How to install, upgrade, configure, and uninstall the Dynamic Workload Console and Z connector, which is automatically installed with a Dynamic Workload Console instance.

The Dynamic Workload Console is a web-based user interface that is used with the following products:

- IBM Workload Scheduler
- IBM Z Workload Scheduler

To use the Dynamic Workload Console you must configure the Z connector, which is automatically installed with a Dynamic Workload Console instance. For details about how to configure the Z connector, see [Defining a z/OS engine in the Z connector on page 265](#).

When you install the Dynamic Workload Console, the following products are also installed (for more information, see [Mobile Applications Users Guide](#)):

- Self-Service Catalog
- Self-Service Dashboards

You can access IBM Workload Scheduler environments from any location in your network using one of the supported browsers connected to the Dynamic Workload Console. The Dynamic Workload Console must be installed on a system that can reach either the IBM Workload Scheduler using network connections.

## Chapter 7. Preparing the installation

To install and use the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following procedure.

1. Verify that your system is compliant by checking the installation prerequisites in the [Dynamic Workload Console Detailed System Requirements](#).
2. Install the Dynamic Workload Console by following the instructions provided in [Installing a Dynamic Workload Console server on page 251](#).
3. Log in to the Dynamic Workload Console.
4. To effectively manage the functions available in the Dynamic Workload Console, create *engine connections* to the IBM Workload Scheduler environments that you want to manage. Without defining engine connections, you can use only a limited set of Dynamic Workload Console functions. For more information, see [Defining a z/OS engine in the Dynamic Workload Console on page 267](#) and [Defining a z/OS engine in the Z connector on page 265](#).

### Installation paths

This section describes the default installation paths of the Dynamic Workload Console.

#### ***DWC\_DATA\_dir* configuration directory**

To simplify administration, configuration, and backup and recovery on UNIX systems, a new default behavior has been implemented with regard to the storage of product data and data generated by IBM® Workload Scheduler, such as logs and configuration information. These files are now stored by default in the *<data\_dir>* directory, which you can optionally customize at installation time.

By default, this directory is *DWC\_home/DWC\_DATA* for the Dynamic Workload Console. The product binaries are stored instead, in the installation directory.

You can optionally customize the *<data\_dir>* directory at installation time by setting the **--data\_dir** argument when you install using the command-line installation. If you want to maintain the previous behavior, you can set the **--data\_dir** argument to the IBM® Workload Scheduler installation directory.

If you deploy the product components using Docker containers, the *<data\_dir>* is set to the default directory name and location, and it cannot be modified.

To retrieve the *DWC\_DATA\_dir* location in case you have modified the default path, check the values for the *DWC\_datadir* properties stored in the `twainstance<instance_number>.TWA.properties` file. The file is located in `/etc/TWA`.

#### ***DWC\_home* installation directory**

The Dynamic Workload Console can be installed in the path of your choice, but the default installation directory is as follows:

##### **On Windows™ operating systems**

`%ProgramFiles%\wa\DWC`

**On UNIX™ operating systems**

```
/opt/wa/DWC
```

**On z/OS operating system**

```
/opt/wa/DWC
```

## Downloading installation images

### About this task

You can download installation images from [IBM Fix Central](#).

1. Ensure that your workstation has sufficient space to store the compressed file containing the installation images. For more information about system requirements, see the product requirements in the online documentation..
2. From [IBM Fix Central](#), download the compressed file, containing the latest product image, to a temporary directory.
3. Extract the installation image from the downloaded file and verify that the installation image is complete.  
Extract the content of the ZIP files into a directory, using one of the extraction tools available on your system or that can be downloaded from the internet. The tool you use must be able to keep the file permissions on the extracted files, for example, `infozip`.

On Windows™ systems, ensure that you extract the image into a path that is not very long, otherwise, the file name might be truncated. The maximum length allowed is 255 characters.

If you are installing on a UNIX™ operating system, run the following command:

```
chmod -R 755 <imagesDir>
```



**Note:** To extract the `.zip` file onto a Windows™ 64-bit system, ensure that the image is not located on the desktop because the Windows™ operating system extract tool might encounter a problem. Choose another directory into which to extract the product image.

On z/OS systems, to install the Dynamic Workload Console perform the following steps:

- a. Transfer the `10.x.x-IBM-DWC-Zsystem.pax` file using the FTP protocol in binary to your USS environment.
- b. Restore the code by issuing the following command:

```
pax -rf 10.x.x-IBM-DWC-Zsystem.pax
```



**Note:** DB2 is available for download from [IBM Passport Advantage](#) only. The latest versions of WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base can be downloaded from [Recommended updates for WebSphere Application Server Liberty](#). For further details, see the 10.2.5 Quick Start Guide available from [IBM Fix Central](#).

## Dynamic Workload Console prerequisites

The Dynamic Workload Console installation has the following prerequisites.

## WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base

To install it, download the appropriate image from [Recommended updates for WebSphere Application Server Liberty](#).

## WebSphere Application Server for z/OS Liberty

Ensure that your system meets the operating system and Java requirements. For more information, see WebSphere Application Server for z/OS Liberty detailed system requirements.

Ensure that you set the following z/OS UNIX system services variables according to your environment requirements:

- MAXMAPAREA (minimum required value: 122880)
- CPUTIMEMAX (minimum required value: 915827882)
- ASSIZEMAX (minimum required value: 2147483647)

Before you install the Dynamic Workload Console for the first time, ensure you have a supported database installed. You can choose to use any of the supported relational database management systems (RDBMS).

### If you are installing on a z/OS system

#### DB2 for z/OS

See [Creating and populating the database for DB2 for z/OS for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 228](#)

### If you are *not* installing on a z/OS system

#### DB2

See [Creating and populating the database for DB2 for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 226](#)

#### DB2 for z/OS

See [Creating and populating the database for DB2 for z/OS for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 228](#)

#### Oracle

See [Creating the database for Oracle for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 232](#)

#### MSSQL

See [Creating and populating the database for MSSQL for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 234](#)

#### MSSQL cloud-based databases

See [Creating and populating the database for MSSQL cloud-based databases for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 236](#)

## PostgreSQL

See [Creating and populating the database for PostgreSQL for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 238](#).

## Chapter 8. Installing the Dynamic Workload Console

Install the Dynamic Workload Console to manage your static and dynamic workload by using a web interface.

By default the Dynamic Workload Console installation process also installs the Z connector component.

The following scenario shows a fresh typical installation of the Dynamic Workload Console at the latest product version.



### Installing WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base

WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base is required on all workstations where you plan to install the master components and the Dynamic Workload Console.

#### Before you begin

Ensure that your system meets the operating system and Java requirements. For more information, see WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base detailed system requirements.

#### About this task



You can quickly install WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base by extracting an archive file on all supported platforms.

Install WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base on all of the following workstations, which comprise a typical installation:

- Two Dynamic Workload Console installations on two separate workstations

Ensure you install WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base in the `../current` path. This prevents problems when installing a new WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base level. By default, WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base installs in the `../current` path.

To extract the archive, you can use your own Java Ext or use the Java Ext provided with the IBM® Workload Scheduler image. The provided Java Ext is located in the `/TWS/JavaExt` folder in the image for your operating system.

To install WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base, perform the following steps:

1. Find out which version of WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base is required, by running the [Detailed Software Requirements](#) report and browsing to the **Prerequisites** tab.
2. Download WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base from [Recommended updates for WebSphere Application Server Liberty](#).
3. Install WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base by extracting the archive file to a directory of your choice.

#### On Windows operating systems

```
java -jar <liberty_download_dir>\wlp-base-all-<version>.jar
--acceptLicense <install_dir>
```

#### On UNIX operating systems

```
./java -jar <liberty_download_dir>/wlp-base-all-<version>.jar
--acceptLicense <install_dir>
```

where:

**<liberty\_download\_dir>**

The directory where you downloaded WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base.

**<version>**

The number of the version.

**<install\_dir>**

The directory where you want to install WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base.



**Note:** Note that the value of the *<install\_dir>* parameter must match the value to be defined for the **wlpdir** parameter when installing the master domain manager and its backup, dynamic domain manager and its backup, and the Dynamic Workload Console.

4. Ensure the IBM® Workload Scheduler administrative user has the rights to run WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base and full access to the installation directory. If WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base is shared between the master domain manager and the Dynamic Workload Console, ensure also the Dynamic Workload Console user has the same rights.

## Results

You have now successfully installed WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base. You can proceed to install the Dynamic Workload Console.

## Encrypting passwords (optional)

How to encrypt passwords required by the installation, upgrade, and management processes.

### About this task



You can optionally encrypt the passwords that you will use while installing, upgrading, and managing IBM® Workload Scheduler. The secure command uses the AES method and prints the encrypted password to the screen or saves it to a file.



**Note:** It is important you understand the limits to the protection that this method provides. The custom passphrase you use to encrypt the passwords is stored in clear format in the `passphrase_variables.xml` file, stored in `configuredropin`. To fully understand the implications of this method, it is recommended you read the information provided by WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base at the link [Liberty: The limits to protection through password encryption](#).

You can perform a typical procedure, which uses a custom passphrase, as described in the following scenario. For more information about all secure arguments and default values, see [Optional password encryption - secure script on page 287](#).

### Encrypting the password

1. Browse to the folder where the secure command is located:
  - Before the installation, the command is located in the product image directory, `<image_directory>/TWS/<op_sys>/Tivoli_LWA_<op_sys>/TWS/bin`
  - After the installation, the command is located in `TWA_home/TWS/bin`
2. Depending on your operating system, encrypt the password as follows:

#### Windows operating systems

```
secure -password password -passphrase passphrase
```

#### UNIX operating systems

```
./secure -password password -passphrase passphrase
```

#### z/OS operating systems

```
./secure -password password -passphrase passphrase
```

where

#### **-password**

Specifies the password to be encrypted.

#### **-passphrase**

Specifies the custom passphrase that is used to generate the key with which the command encrypts the password. If you set this parameter, inform the user who installs IBM Workload Automation that they must define the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable in the same shell from which they



run the installation command, and set it to the same value as the **passphrase** parameter. On Windows operating systems, the passphrase must be at least 8 characters long. This argument generates a password which can be reused for all IBM® Workload Scheduler components. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the [-useaeskeystore on page 290](#) parameter, which generates a password which can be decrypted only on the local workstation and not reused for other components.

3. Provide both the encrypted password and custom passphrase to the user in charge of installing IBM Workload Automation. You can use encrypted passwords only in association with the specific passphrase used to encrypt them.

### Installing with the encrypted password

The user in charge of installing IBM Workload Automation must set the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable by performing the following steps:

1. Open a brand new shell session.
2. Ensure that no value is set for the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable.
3. Define the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable and set it to the passphrase defined by the user who ran the secure command, as follows:

```
SECUREWRAP_PASSPHRASE=<passphrase>
```

You can use encrypted passwords only in association with the specific passphrase used to encrypt them.

4. In the same shell session, provide the encrypted passwords when running any command that uses a password. An encrypted password looks like the following example:

```
{aes}AFC3jj9cR0YyqR+3CONBzVi8deLb2Bossb9GGroh8UmDPGikIkzXZzid3nzY0IhnSg=
```

## Creating and populating the database

Before you install the Dynamic Workload Console for the first time, ensure you have a supported database installed. You can choose to use any of the supported relational database management systems (RDBMS).



Create and populate the database tables for the Dynamic Workload Console by following the procedure appropriate for your RDBMS:

- [Creating and populating the database for DB2 for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 226](#)
- [Creating and populating the database for DB2 for z/OS for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 228](#)
- [Creating the database for Oracle for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 232](#)
- [Creating and populating the database for MSSQL for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 234](#)
- [Creating and populating the database for MSSQL cloud-based databases for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 236](#)
- [Creating and populating the database for PostgreSQL for the Dynamic Workload Console on page 238](#)



**Note:** If you use Db2 for z/OS with the Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.4 or later, transfer the drivers in binary mode from the directory where you installed Db2 for z/OS to a directory of your choice. When you run the `configuredb` or `dwcinst` script, set the directory you chose in the **dbdriverspath** parameter.

Next, install the Dynamic Workload Console servers, as described in [Dynamic Workload Console installation - dwcinst script on page 256](#).

## Creating and populating the database for DB2 for the Dynamic Workload Console

Instructions for creating and populating the Dynamic Workload Console database for DB2.

### Before you begin

Ensure a DB2 database is installed.

### About this task



You can perform a typical database procedure, as described in the following scenarios, or you can customize the database parameters, as described in the section about FAQ - Database customizations in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

DB2 requires a specific procedure in which you first create the database and then create and populate the database tables. To simplify the database creation, a customized SQL file named `create_database.sql` is provided containing the specifics for creating the Dynamic Workload Console database. The database administrator can use this file to create the database. After the database has been created, you can proceed to create and populate the database tables.

You can run the `configureDb` command specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

For more information about all parameters and supported values of the `configureDb` command, see [Database configuration - configureDb script on page 241](#).

Default values are stored in the `configureDb.properties` file, located in *image\_location*. If you need to modify any of the default values, edit the `configureDb.properties` file, but do not modify the `configureDb.template` file located in the same path.

To create and populate the Dynamic Workload Console database and schema for DB2, perform the following steps:

1. On the workstation where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console, extract the Dynamic Workload Console package to a directory of your choice.
2. Browse to the *image\_location/DWC\_interp\_name/tools* path.
3. Edit the `create_database.sql` file by replacing the default value for the database name (**DWC**) with the name you intend to use.
4. Provide the `create_database.sql` file to the DB2 administrator to run on the DB2 database.

The following command creates the Dynamic Workload Console database:

```
db2 -tvf <file_location>/create_database.sql
```

5. Instruct the DB2 administrator to create the DB2 user on the server hosting the DB2 database. You will then specify this user with the `dbuser` parameter when creating and populating the database with the `configureDb` command on the Dynamic Workload Console. When you run the `configureDb` command, this user is automatically granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server.
6. On the server where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console, browse to *image\_location/DWC\_interp\_name*.
7. Type the following command to create and populate the Dynamic Workload Console database tables with typical settings:

#### On Windows operating systems

```
cscript configureDb.vbs --rdbmstype DB2 --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbport db_port --dbname db_name --dbuser db_user
--dbadminuser DB_admin_user --dbadminuserpw DB_admin_pwd
```

#### On UNIX operating systems

```
./configureDb.sh --rdbmstype DB2 --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbport db_port --dbname db_name --dbuser db_user
--dbadminuser DB_admin_user --dbadminuserpw DB_admin_pwd
```

where:

#### **--rdbmstype**

The database vendor.

#### **--dbhostname db\_hostname**

The host name or IP address of database server.

**--dbport *db\_port***

The port of the database server.

**--dbname *db\_name***

The name of the Dynamic Workload Console database.

**--dbuser *db\_user***

The database user you must create before running the configureDb command. When you run the configureDb command, this user is automatically granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server.

**--dbadminuser *db\_admin\_user***

The database administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server.

**--dbadminuserpw *db\_admin\_password***

The password of the DB administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server. Special characters are not supported.



**Note:** The following parameters specified with the configureDb command are also required when installing the Dynamic Workload Console and their values must be the same:

- **--rdbmstype**
- **--dbhostname**
- **--dbport**
- **--dbname**
- **--dbuser**

## Results

You have now successfully created and populated the Dynamic Workload Console database.

## Creating and populating the database for DB2 for z/OS for the Dynamic Workload Console

Instructions for creating and populating the database for DB2 for z/OS for Dynamic Workload Console.

### Before you begin

Ensure a DB2 for z/OS database is installed.

### About this task



You can perform a typical database procedure, as described in the following scenarios, or you can customize the database parameters, as described in the section about FAQ - Database customizations in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

DB2 for z/OS requires a specific procedure in which you first create the database and then create and populate the database tables. To simplify the database creation, a sample JCL named EQQINDWC is provided with APAR PH22448 containing the specifics for creating the Dynamic Workload Console database. The database administrator can use this file to create the database. After the database has been created, you can proceed to create and populate the database tables.

You can run the **configureDb** command specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

You can optionally configure DB2 in SSL mode on UNIX operating systems by specifying the **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters when you run the **configureDb** command. For more information, see the topic about using certificates when DB2 or PostgreSQL is in SSL mode in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

For more information about all parameters and supported values of the **configureDb** command, see [Database configuration - configureDb script on page 241](#).

Default values are stored in the **configureDb.properties** file, located in *image\_location*.

If you need to modify any of the default values, edit the **configureDb<database\_vendor>.properties** file, but do not modify the **configureDb<database\_vendor>.template** file located in the same path.

To create and populate the Dynamic Workload Console database and schema for DB2 for z/OS, perform the following steps:

1. From the SEQQSAMP library, edit the EQQINDWC sample JCL as required.



**Note:** The EQQINDWC sample JCL is provided with the APAR PH22448. If you did not install this APAR, create a JCL named EQQINDWC that looks like the following example:

```
//JOB CARD
//*****
//*
//* SECURITY CLASSIFICATION:
//* Licensed Materials - Property of HCL 5698-T08
```



```

/** Copyright HCL Technologies Ltd. 2020 All rights reserved. */
/** US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication */
/** or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract */
/** */
/** CREATES DB2 STORAGE GROUP AND DATABASE for DWC */
/** NOTE1:You must tailor this JCL sample to conform to */
/** installation standards defined at your location. */
/** - Add a JOB card */
/** - Change following DB/2 values according to your */
/** current environment: */
/** - DSN.V11R1M0.SDSNLOAD DB/2 library */
/** - DSN111.RUNLIB.LOAD DB/2 run library */
/** - DBB1 DB/2 system name */
/** - DSNTIA11 DB/2 DSNTIAD plan name */
/** - volname volume name */
/** - catname catalog name */
/** - Change all the occurrences of */
/** TWSSDWC if you need a storage group with a different name*/
/** */
/** Flag Reason Rlse Date Origin Flag Description */
/** ----- */
/** $EGE=PH22448 950 200121 ZLIB: DB2 on zLiberty */
/** $ETA=PH53936 101 220418 MR: EQQINDWC MEMBER OF SEQQSAMP FOR */
/** CREATION OF DB2 DATABASE FOR */
/** DWCFAILS FOR DB2 V12R1M504 OR */
/** higher levels */
/**/*****/
/**EQQINDWC EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
/**STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DSN.V11R1M0.SDSNLOAD
/**SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
/**SYSTSIN DD *
/** DSN SYSTEM(DBB1)
/** RUN PROGRAM(DSNTIAD) PLAN(DSNTIA11) LIB('DSN111.RUNLIB.LOAD')
/**SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
/**SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
/**SYSIN DD *
SET CURRENT APPLICATION COMPATIBILITY = 'V10R1';
CREATE STOGROUP TWSSDWC VOLUMES(volname) VCAT catname;
CREATE DATABASE DWC
BUFFERPOOL BP0
INDEXBP BP16K0
STOGROUP TWSSDWC
CCSID UNICODE;
COMMIT;

```

2. Instruct the DB2 for z/OS administrator to create the DB2 for z/OS user on the server hosting the DB2 for z/OS database. You will then specify this user with the `dbuser` parameter when creating and populating the database with the `configureDb` command on the Dynamic Workload Console. When you run the `configureDb` command, this user is automatically granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server.
3. On the server where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console, browse to the directory where you extracted the Dynamic Workload Console image.
4. Type the following command to create and populate the Dynamic Workload Console database tables with typical settings:

**On Windows operating systems**

```
cscript configureDb.vbs --rdbmstype DB2Z --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbport db_port --dbname db_name --dbuser db_user
--dbadminuser DB_admin_user --dbadminuserpw DB_admin_pwd
--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db --zbufferpoolname buffer_pool_in_zOS_location
```

**On UNIX operating systems**

```
./configureDb.sh --rdbmstype DB2Z --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbport db_port --dbname db_name --dbuser db_user
--dbadminuser DB_admin_user --dbadminuserpw DB_admin_pwd
--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db --zbufferpoolname buffer_pool_in_zOS_location
```

**On z/OS operating systems**

```
./configureDb.sh --rdbmstype DB2Z --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbport db_port --dbname db_name --dbuser db_user
--dbadminuser DB_admin_user --dbadminuserpw DB_admin_pwd
--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db --zbufferpoolname buffer_pool_in_zOS_location
```

where:

**--rdbmstype**

The database vendor.

**--dbhostname *db\_hostname***

The host name or IP address of database server.

**--dbport *db\_port***

The port of the database server.

**--dbname *db\_name***

The name of the Dynamic Workload Console database.

**--dbuser *db\_user***

The database user you must create before running the `configureDb` command. When you run the `configureDb` command, this user is automatically granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server.

**--dbadminuser *db\_admin\_user***

The database administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server.

**--dbadminuserpw *db\_admin\_password***

The password of the DB administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server. Special characters are not supported.

**--zlocationname *zos\_location\_containing\_db***

The name of an already existing location in the z/OS environment that will contain the new database. The default value is LOC1.

**--zbufferpoolname** *buffer\_pool\_in zos\_location*

The name of an already existing buffer pool created in the location specified by `-zlocationname`. The default value is BP32K.



**Note:** The following parameters specified with the **configureDb** command are also required when installing the Dynamic Workload Console and their values must be the same:

- **--rdbmstype**
- **--dbhostname**
- **--dbport**
- **--dbname**
- **--dbuser**
- **--zlocationname**

**Results**

You have now successfully created and populated the Dynamic Workload Console database.

## Creating the database for Oracle for the Dynamic Workload Console

Instructions for creating and populating the Dynamic Workload Console database for Oracle.

**About this task**

You can perform a typical database procedure, as described in the following scenarios, or you can customize the database parameters, as described in the section about FAQ - Database customizations in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

You can run the **configureDb** command specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

For more information about all parameters and supported values of the `configureDb` command, see [Database configuration - configureDb script on page 241](#).



Default values are stored in the `configureDbOracle.properties` file, located in *image\_location*. If you need to modify any of the default values, edit the `configureDbOracle.properties` file, but do not modify the `configureDbOracle.template` file located in the same path.

To create and populate the Dynamic Workload Console database, perform the following steps:

1. On the server where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console, extract the Dynamic Workload Console package to a directory of your choice.
2. Browse to the directory where you extracted the package.
3. Type the following command to populate the Dynamic Workload Console database with typical settings:

#### On Windows operating systems

```
cscript configureDb.vbs --rdbmstype ORACLE --dbname service_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword DB_password --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbadminuser DB_administrator --dbadminuserpw DB_administrator_password
--iwstname USERS
```

#### On UNIX operating systems

```
./configureDb.sh --rdbmstype ORACLE --dbname service_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword DB_password --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbadminuser DB_administrator --dbadminuserpw DB_administrator_password
--iwstname USERS
```

where:

#### **--rdbmstype**

The database vendor.

#### **--dbname db\_name**

The service name of the Dynamic Workload Console database.

#### **dbuser db\_user**

The user to be granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server.

#### **--dbpassword db\_password**

The password for the user that has been granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server. Special characters are not supported.

#### **--dbhostname db\_hostname**

The host name or IP address of database server.

#### **--dbadminuser db\_admin\_user**

The database administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server.

#### **--dbadminuserpw db\_admin\_password**

The password of the DB administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server. Special characters are not supported.

**--iwststname|-tn *table\_space\_name***

The name of the tablespace for Dynamic Workload Console data. This parameter is required.



**Note:** The following parameters specified with the `configureDb` command are also required when installing the Dynamic Workload Console and their values must be the same:

- **rdbmstype**
- **dbhostname**
- **dbport**
- **dbname**
- **dbuser**
- **dbpassword**

## Results

You have now successfully created and populated the Dynamic Workload Console database.

## What to do next

You can now proceed to [Installing a Dynamic Workload Console server on page 251](#).

## Creating and populating the database for MSSQL for the Dynamic Workload Console

Instructions for creating and populating the Dynamic Workload Console database for MSSQL.

### About this task



You can perform a typical database procedure, as described in the following scenarios, or you can customize the database parameters, as described in the section about FAQ - Database customizations in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

You can run the **configureDb** command specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

For more information about all parameters and supported values of the `configureDb` command, see [Database configuration - configureDb script on page 241](#).

Default values are stored in the `configureDbMSSQL.properties` file, located in *image\_location*.

To create the Dynamic Workload Console database and schema, perform the following steps:

1. Only on Windows systems hosting an MSSQL database, create the path for hosting the following tablespace, if the path is not already existing:
  - TWS\_DATA
2. Only on Windows systems hosting an MSSQL database, specify the path to the folder when running the `configureDb.vbs` command or when filling in the `configureDbMSSQL.properties` file with the following parameter:
  - `--iwstspath`
3. On the server where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console, extract the Dynamic Workload Console package to a directory of your choice.
4. To populate the Dynamic Workload Console database with typical settings, type the following command:

#### On Windows operating systems

```
cscript configureDb.vbs --rdbmstype MSSQL --dbname db_name
--dbhostname db_hostname --dbadminuser db_administrator
--dbadminuserpw db_administrator_password
--iwstspath DATA_tablespace_path
```

#### On UNIX operating systems

```
./configureDb.sh --rdbmstype MSSQL --dbname db_name
--dbhostname db_hostname --dbadminuser db_administrator
--dbadminuserpw db_administrator_password
--iwstspath DATA_tablespace_path
```

where:

#### **--rdbmstype**

The database vendor.

#### **--dbname db\_name**

The name of the Dynamic Workload Console database.

#### **--dbhostname db\_hostname**

The host name or IP address of database server.

#### **--dbadminuser db\_admin\_user**

The database administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server.

#### **--dbadminuserpw db\_admin\_password**

The password of the DB administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server. Special characters are not supported.

**--iwstspath| *table\_space***

The path of the tablespace for IBM® Workload Scheduler or Dynamic Workload Console data. This parameter is optional. The default value for all databases other than Oracle is:

**For all operating systems, except z/OS**

**TWS\_DATA**

**For z/OS operating system**

**TWSDATA**

Only on Windows systems hosting an MSSQL database, ensure the folder for the tablespace is already existing before running the configureDb command and specify the path using this parameter. Specify the path using forward slashes (/), for example: `c:/<my_path>/TWS_DATA`.



**Note:** The following parameters specified with the configureDb command are also required when installing the Dynamic Workload Console and their values must be the same:

- **rdbmstype**
- **dbhostname**
- **dbport**
- **dbname**

When **--rdbmstype** is set to `MSSQL`, the default value is **sa**. To install a Dynamic Workload Console with a user different from **sa**, you must create a new user in MSSQL and grant all the required permissions before running the configureDb command.

## Results

You have now successfully created and populated the Dynamic Workload Console database.

## What to do next

You can now proceed to [Installing a Dynamic Workload Console server on page 251](#).

## Creating and populating the database for MSSQL cloud-based databases for the Dynamic Workload Console

Instructions for creating and populating the Dynamic Workload Console database for MSSQL cloud-based databases.

## About this task



MSSQL cloud-based databases include the following:

- Azure SQL
- Google Cloud SQL for SQL server
- Amazon RDS for MSSQL

You can perform a typical database procedure, as described in the following scenarios, or you can customize the database parameters, as described in the section about FAQ - Database customizations in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

You can run the **configureDb** command specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

For more information about all parameters and supported values of the `configureDb` command, see [Database configuration - configureDb script on page 241](#).

If you need to modify any of the default values, edit the `configureDbMSSQL.properties` file, but do not modify the `configureDbMSSQL.template` file located in the same path. Default values are stored in the `configureDbMSSQL.properties` file, located in *image\_location*.

To create the Dynamic Workload Console database and schema, perform the following steps:

1. Specify the path to the folder when running the `configureDb` command or when filling in the `configureDbMSSQL.properties` properties file with the following parameter:
  - `--iwstname PRIMARY`
2. On the server where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console, extract the Dynamic Workload Console package to a directory of your choice.
3. To populate the Dynamic Workload Console database with typical settings, type the following command:

#### On Windows operating systems

```
cscript configureDb.vbs --rdbmstype MSSQL --dbname db_name
--dbhostname db_hostname --dbadminuser db_administrator
--dbadminuserpw db_administrator_password
--iwstname PRIMARY
```

**iwstname** *DATA\_tablespace\_name*

The name of the tablespace for Dynamic Workload Console data. The default value is PRIMARY. Do not modify this value.



**Note:** The following parameters specified with the **configureDb** command are also required when installing the Dynamic Workload Console and their values must be the same:

- **rdbmstype**
- **dbhostname**
- **dbport**
- **dbname**
- **dbuser**

**Results**

You have now successfully created and populated the Dynamic Workload Console database.

**What to do next**

You can now proceed to [Installing a Dynamic Workload Console server on page 251](#).

## Creating and populating the database for PostgreSQL for the Dynamic Workload Console

Instructions for creating and populating the Dynamic Workload Console database for PostgreSQL.

**Before you begin**

Ensure you have performed the following tasks:

- Create the PostgreSQL database and ensure it is configured to allow remote connections. To create the database, use the following command:

```
create database <database_name> with lc_collate='C' template=template0;
```

This command creates the database with the collation feature enabled.

- Create a user dedicated specifically to the new database schema and do not use the administrator user (postgres) for this purpose.

For more information about allowing remote connections and creating users, see the PostgreSQL documentation.

**About this task**



You can perform a typical database procedure, as described in the following scenarios, or you can customize the database parameters, as described in the section about FAQ - Database customizations in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

You can optionally configure PostgreSQL in SSL mode on UNIX operating systems by specifying the **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters when you run the `configureDb` command. For more information, see the FAQ about How can I use default certificates when DB2 or PostgreSQL is in SSL mode? in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

You can run the `configureDb` command specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

For more information about all parameters and supported values of the `configureDb` command, see [Database configuration - configureDb script on page 241](#).

Default values are stored in the `configureDbPostgresql.properties` file, located in *image\_location*. If you need to modify any of the default values, edit the `configureDbPostgresql.properties` file, but do not modify the `configureDbPostgresql.template` file located in the same path. For an example of a properties file, see [What is the content of a database properties file?](#).

To create and populate the Dynamic Workload Console database and schema for PostgreSQL, perform the following steps:

1. On the workstation where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console, extract the Dynamic Workload Console package to a directory of your choice.
2. Browse to the path *image\_location/TWS/interp\_name*.
3. Type the following command to create and populate the Dynamic Workload Console database tables with typical settings:

#### On Windows operating systems

```
cscript configureDb.vbs --rdbmstype POSTGRESQL --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbport db_port --dbname db_name --dbuser db_user
--dbadminuser DB_admin_user --dbadminuserpw DB_admin_pwd
```

**On UNIX operating systems**

```
./configureDb.sh --rdbmstype POSTGRESQL --dbhostname DB_hostname
--dbport db_port --dbname db_name --dbuser db_user
--dbadminuser DB_admin_user --dbadminuserpw DB_admin_pwd
```

where:

**--rdbmstype**

The database vendor.

**--dbhostname *db\_hostname***

The host name or IP address of database server.

**--dbport *db\_port***

The port of the database server.

**--dbname *db\_name***

The name of the Dynamic Workload Console database.

**--dbuser *db\_user***

The database user you must create before running the configureDb command. Hyphens are not supported. When you run the configureDb command, this user is automatically granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server.

**--dbadminuser *db\_admin\_user***

The database administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server.

**--dbadminuserpw *db\_admin\_password***

The password of the DB administrator user that creates the Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server. Special characters are not supported.



**Note:** The following parameters specified with the configureDb command are also required when installing the Dynamic Workload Console and their values must be the same:

- **--rdbmstype**
- **--dbhostname**
- **--dbport**
- **--dbname**
- **--dbuser**

**Results**

You have now successfully created and populated the Dynamic Workload Console database.

**What to do next**



You can now proceed to [Installing a Dynamic Workload Console server on page 251](#).

## Database configuration - configureDb script

The configureDb script is typically used by the database administrator for creating and populating the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

For typical scenarios, see [Creating and populating the database on page 225](#).

This section lists and describes the parameters that you can use to create and populate the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

You can specify values in the properties file, type them in the command line, or use both methods. If a parameter is specified both in the properties file and in the command line, the command line value takes precedence.

The log files generated from this command are located in the following path:

### On Windows operating systems

*DWC\_home\logs*

### On UNIX operating systems

*DWC\_DATA\_dir/installation/logs*

### On z/OS operating systems

*DWC\_DATA\_dir/installation/logs*

## Syntax for Windows operating systems

### Show command usage

```
configureDb -? | --usage | --help
```

### Retrieve the command parameters and values from a file

```
configureDb --propfile | -f [property_file]
```

### General information

```
[--lang lang_id]
[--work_dir working_directory]
[--wlpdir wlp_directory]
[--componenttype MDM | DDM | DWC]
[--dbadminuser db_admin_user]
--dbadminuserpw db_admin_password
--rdbmstype|-r DB2 | DB2Z | ORACLE | MSSQL | POSTGRESQL
[--dbname db_name]
[--dbuser db_user]
[--dbport db_port]
--dbhostname db_hostname
[--dbdriverpath db_driver_path]
--auth_type authentication_type]
```

```
[--iwsname table_space_name]
[--iwsnspath table_space_path]
[--iwslogtsname log_table_space]
[--iwslogtsnspath log_path_table_space]
[--iwsplantsname plan_table_space]
[--iwsplantsnspath plan_path_table_space]
[--execsql execute_sql]
```

### Oracle-only configuration options

```
--dbpassword db_password
[--usePartitioning true | false]
[--Usage_TsTempName IWS_temp_path]
[--skipdbcheck true | false]
```

### Db2 for z/OS-only configuration options

```
[--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db]
[--zbufferpoolname buffer_pool_in_zOS_location]
```

## Syntax for UNIX operating systems

### Show command usage

```
configureDb -? | --usage | --help
```

### Retrieve the command parameters and values from a file

```
configureDb --propfile | -f [property_file]
```

### General information

```
[--lang lang_id]
[--work_dir working_directory]
[--wlpdir wlp_directory]
[--componenttype MDM | DDM | DWC]
[--dbadminuser db_admin_user]
--dbadminuserpw db_admin_password
--rdbmstype|-r DB2 | DB2Z | ORACLE | MSSQL | POSTGRESQL
[--dbname db_name]
[--dbuser db_user]
[--dbport db_port]
--dbhostname db_hostname
[--dbdriverpath db_driver_path]
[--iwsname table_space_name]
[--iwsnspath table_space_path]
[--iwslogtsname log_table_space]
[--iwslogtsnspath log_path_table_space]
[--iwsplantsname plan_table_space]
[--iwsplantsnspath plan_path_table_space]
[--execsql execute_sql]
```

**Oracle-only configuration options**

```
--dbpassword db_password
[--usePartitioning true | false]
[--Usage_TsTempName IWS_temp_path]
[--skipdbcheck true | false]
```

**Db2- and PostgreSQL-only security options**

```
--sslkeysfolder keystore_truststore_folder]
[--sslpassword ssl_password]
[--dbsslconnection true | false]
```

**Db2 for z/OS-only configuration options**

```
--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db]
[--zbufferpoolname buffer_pool_in_zOS_location]
```

**Syntax for z/OS operating system****Show command usage**

```
configureDb -? | --usage | --help
```

**Retrieve the command parameters and values from a file**

```
configureDb --propfile | -f [properties_file]
```

**General information**

```
--lang lang_id]
[--work_dir working_directory]
[--wlpdir wlp_directory]
[--dbadminuser db_admin_user]
[--componenttype DWC]
--dbadminuserpw db_admin_password
--rdbmstype|-r DB2 | DB2Z | ORACLE | MSSQL | POSTGRESQL
[--dbname db_name]
[--dbuser db_user]
[--dbport db_port]
--dbhostname db_hostname
[--dbdriverpath db_driver_path]
[--iwstname table_space_name]
[--iwstspath table_space_path]
[--iwslogtsname log_table_space]
[--iwslogtspath log_path_table_space]
[--iwsplantsname plan_table_space]
[--iwsplantspath plan_path_table_space]
[--execsql execute_sql]
```

**Db2 for z/OS-only configuration options**

```
[--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db]
[--zbufferpoolname buffer_pool_in_zOS_location]
```

Database configuration parameters

**-? | --usage | --help**

Displays the command usage and exits.

**--propfile|-f [properties\_file]**

Optionally specify a properties file containing custom values for `configureDb` parameters. The default file for the Dynamic Workload Console is `image_location/configureDbdatabase_vendor.properties`. Specifying a properties file is suggested if you have a high number of parameters which require custom values. You can also reuse the file with minimal modification for several installations. If you create a custom properties file, specify its name and path with the `-f` parameter.

**--lang lang\_id**

The language in which the messages returned by the command are displayed. If not specified, the system LANG is used. If the related catalog is missing, the default C language catalog is used. If neither `--lang` nor LANG are used, the default codepage is set to SBCS. For a list of valid values for these variables, see the following table:

**Table 35. Valid values for -lang and LANG**  
**parameter**

| Language                             | Value        |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| Brazilian Portuguese                 | pt_BR        |
| Chinese (traditional and simplified) | zh_CN, zh_TW |
| English                              | en           |
| French                               | fr           |
| German                               | de           |
| Italian                              | it           |
| Japanese                             | ja           |
| Korean                               | ko           |
| Russian                              | ru           |
| Spanish                              | es           |



**Note:** This is the language in which the installation log is recorded and not the language of the installed component instance. The command installs all languages as default.

### **--work\_dir**

The working directory where you extract the installation image. It also contains the output produced by the command, such as the SQL statements if you set the **execsql** parameter to **false**. The default value is /tmp on UNIX operating systems and C:\tmp on Windows operating systems.

### **[--wlpdir wlp\_directory]**

The path to WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base installation directory. WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base is used to decrypt the passwords you provide in encrypted form. This parameter is required only if you encrypt your passwords with the {xor} or {aes} encoding.

### **--componenttype MDM | DDM | DWC**

The IBM® Workload Scheduler component for which the database is installed. This parameter is optional. Supported values are:

#### **MDM**

master domain manager. Applies only to distributed operating systems.

#### **DDM**

dynamic domain manager. Applies only to distributed operating systems.

#### **DWC**

Dynamic Workload Console (it comprises the Federator).

### **--dbadminuser db\_admin\_user**

The database administrator user who creates the IBM® Workload Scheduler or Dynamic Workload Console schema objects on the database server. This parameter is optional. Depending on the database vendor, the default values are as follows:

#### **db2admin**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2

#### **sysadm**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2Z

#### **system**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to ORACLE

#### **sa**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to MSSQL

**--dbadminuserpw *db\_admin\_password***

The password for the DB administrator user who creates the IBM® Workload Scheduler schema objects on the database server. This parameter is required. You can optionally encrypt the password. For more information, see [Encrypting passwords \(optional\) on page 223](#).

**--rdbmstype|-r *rdbms\_type***

The database type. Supported databases are:

- **DB2**
- **ORACLE**
- **MSSQL** This value applies to MSSQL and supported MSSQL cloud-based databases.
- **POSTGRESQL**
- 

This parameter is required and has no default value.

**--dbname *db\_name***

The name of the Dynamic Workload Console database. This parameter is optional and case sensitive. Depending on the component that you are installing and the database vendor, the default values are as follows:

**TDWC**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2

**TDWC**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2Z

**orcl**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to ORACLE

**TDWC**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to MSSQL

**TDWC**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to POSTGRES

**--dbuser *db\_user***

The database user that has been granted access to the IBM Workload Scheduler or Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server. This parameter is optional. The default values are as follows:

**db2dwc**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2

**root**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2Z

**twSORa**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to ORACLE

**sa**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to MSSQL

**--dbport db\_port**

The port of the database server. This parameter is optional. Depending on the database vendor, the default values are as follows:

**50000**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2

**446**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to DB2Z

**1521**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to ORACLE

**1433**

when **--rdbmstype** is set to MSSQL

**--dbhostname db\_hostname**

The host name or IP address of database server. This parameter is required. If you are configuring the database in SSL mode, ensure you specify the fully qualified hostname used in the database client CN. This value is the same as the fully qualified hostname of the workstation where the database is installed.

**--dbdriverpath db\_driver\_path**

The path where the database drivers are stored. This parameter is optional, but becomes required when you set the **rdbmstype** parameter to **DB2Z**. If you use Db2 for z/OS with the Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.4 or later, transfer the drivers in binary mode from the directory where you installed Db2 for z/OS to a directory of your choice. Specify the driver path using this parameter.

By default, the configuration script references the JDBC drivers supplied with the product images. If your database server is not compatible with the supplied drivers, then contact your database administrator for the correct version to use with your database server and specify the driver path using this parameter. Ensure that you provide the same path in the configureDb, serverinst, and dwcinst commands.

**--iwstsnam|tn table\_space\_name**

The name of the tablespace for IBM® Workload Scheduler data. This parameter is optional for all databases with the exception of the Oracle database. The default value for all databases other than Oracle is:

**For all operating systems, except z/OS**

**TWS\_DATA**

**For z/OS operating system****TWSDATA****--iwtspath|-tp *table\_space***

The path of the tablespace for IBM® Workload Scheduler data. This parameter is optional. The default value for all databases other than Oracle is:

**For all operating systems, except z/OS****TWS\_DATA****For z/OS operating system****TWSDATA**

Only on Windows systems hosting an MSSQL database, ensure the folder for the tablespace is already existing before running the configureDb command and specify the path using this parameter. Specify the path using forward slashes (/), for example: `c:/<my_path>/TWS_DATA`.

**--iwslogtsname|-ln *log\_table\_space***

The name of the tablespace for IBM® Workload Scheduler log. This parameter is optional for all databases with the exception of the Oracle database. The default value for all databases other than Oracle is **TWS\_LOG**. This parameter applies only to the server components.

**--iwslogtspath|-lp *log\_path\_table\_space***

The path of the tablespace for IBM® Workload Scheduler log. This parameter is optional. The default value for all databases other than Oracle is **TWS\_LOG**. This parameter applies only to the server components. Only on Windows systems hosting an MSSQL database, ensure the folder for the tablespace is already existing before running the configureDb command and specify the path using this parameter. Specify the path using forward slashes (/), for example: `c:/<my_path>/TWS_LOG`.

**--iwsplantsname|-pn *plan\_table\_space***

The name of the tablespace for IBM® Workload Scheduler plan. This parameter is optional for all databases with the exception of the Oracle database. The default value for all databases other than Oracle is **TWS\_PLAN**. This parameter applies only to the server components.

**--iwsplantspath|-pp *plan\_path\_table\_space***

The path of the tablespace for IBM® Workload Scheduler plan. This parameter is optional. The default value for all databases other than Oracle is **TWS\_PLAN**. This parameter applies only to the server components.

Only on Windows systems hosting an MSSQL database, ensure that the folder for the tablespace is already existing before running the configureDb command and specify the path using this parameter. Specify the path using forward slashes (/), for example: `c:/<my_path>/TWS_PLAN`.

**--execsql|-es *execute\_sql***

Set to **true** to generate and run the SQL file, set to **false** to generate the SQL statement without running it. The resulting files are stored in the path defined in the **--work\_dir** parameter. This option is useful if you want to review the file before running it. This parameter is optional. The default value is **true**.



**--auth\_type**

This parameter applies only to Windows operating systems. Specify the authentication type. Supported values are as follows:

**SQLSERVER**

Enables MSSQL authentication type. Only the user specified with the **--dbadminuser** parameter has the grants to administer the IBM® Workload Scheduler or Dynamic Workload Console database.

**WINDOWS**

Enables Windows authentication type. The Windows user you used to log on to the workstation is assigned the grants to administer the IBM® Workload Scheduler or Dynamic Workload Console database.

The default value is **SQLSERVER**.

**Oracle-only configuration syntax****--dbpassword *db\_password***

The password for the user that has been granted access to the IBM® Workload Scheduler or Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server. This parameter is required only if you are using an Oracle database. You can optionally encrypt the password. For more information, see [Encrypting passwords \(optional\) on page 223](#).

**--usePartitioning**

Only applies when installing the master domain manager. Set to **true** if you want to use the Oracle partitioning feature, otherwise set it to **false**. This parameter is optional. The default value is **true**.

**--Usage\_TsTempName *IWS\_temp\_path***

Only applies when installing the master domain manager. The path of the tablespace for IBM Workload Scheduler temporary directory. This parameter is optional. The default value is **TEMP**.

**--skipdbcheck**

This parameter specifies whether the check on the existence of the Workload Automation schema for the Oracle user is performed or not. By default, the parameter is set to **false** and a check is performed on the Oracle user. If the user does not exist, the script then proceeds to create the user and the Workload Automation schema.

If you have already created your Oracle user, set this parameter to **true**. As a result, the check is skipped and the schema creation is performed also if the Oracle user is already existing.

This parameter is optional.

**DB2- and PostgreSQL-only configuration syntax**

**--sslkeysfolder keystore\_truststore\_folder**

The name and path of the folder containing certificates in PEM format. The installation program automatically processes the keystore and truststore files using the password you specify with the **--sslpassword** parameter. The folder must contain the following files:

- **ca.crt**

The Certificate Authority (CA) public certificate. Note that if certificates being installed are part of a chain consisting of 3 or more certificates (one Root CA, followed by one or more Intermediate CAs, followed by the end user certificate), then this file must contain the Root CA certificate only. Any Intermediate CA certificates must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder, which therefore becomes a mandatory subfolder. Each Intermediate CA must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder in its own file.



**Note:** From V10.2.3, if certificates being installed are part of a chain, the `ca.crt` can contain also the intermediate CAs. In this case, it must begin with one or more intermediate CA certificates and end with the Root ca.

- **tls.key**

The private key of the end user certificate for the instance to be installed.

- **tls.crt**

The public part of the previous key, that is the end user certificate.

For UNIX systems, ensure that all the files have the ownership of the user who installed the master domain manager and the correct permissions (644).

You can optionally create a subfolder to contain one or more `*.crt` files to be added to the server truststore as trusted CA, whose name must be `additionalCAs`. This can be used for example to add to the list of trusted CAs the certificate of the LDAP server or DB2 server. Additionally, you can store here any intermediate CA certificate to be added to the truststore. The subfolder must be named **additionalCAs**. Note that if the end user certificate being installed in the instance is part of a chain consisting of 3 or more certificates (one Root CA, followed by one or more Intermediate CAs, followed by the end user certificate), then the Intermediate CAs certificates must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder, which therefore becomes a mandatory subfolder. Each Intermediate CA must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder in its own file.

For further information about how to generate custom certificates, see the topic about managing certificates using Certman in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

**--sslpassword ssl\_password**

The password for the certificates.

For more information, see [sslkeysfolder on page 250](#).

You can optionally encrypt the password using the secure script. For more information, see [Optional password encryption - secure script on page 287](#).

#### **--dbsslconnection**

Specify whether you want to enable SSL connection to the database. Supported values are `true` and `false`. The default value is `false`. If you set this parameter to `true`, the **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters become mandatory. Ensure the database client certificate specifies, as its Common Name (CN), the fully qualified hostname of the workstation where the database is installed.

#### **DB2 for z/OS-only configuration syntax**

##### **--zlocationname** *zos\_location\_containing\_db*

The name of an already existing location in the z/OS environment that will contain the new database. The default value is **LOC1**.

##### **--zbufferpoolname** *buffer\_pool\_in\_zos\_location*

The name of an already existing buffer pool created in the location specified by `-zlocationname`. The default value is BP32K.

## Installing a Dynamic Workload Console server

You can choose between installing a Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.1 or later, or a Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.0 or earlier. The main differences among the versions are described hereafter.

#### **About this task**



#### **Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.1, or later**

SSL configuration is required and is provided with the custom certificates generated during the installation process. For more information, see [Installing a Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.1, or later on page 252](#).

 **Note:** If you use Db2 for z/OS with the Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.4 or later, transfer the drivers in binary mode from the directory where you installed Db2 for z/OS to a directory of your choice. When you run the `configuredb` or `dwcinst` script, set the directory you chose in the **dbdriverspath** parameter.

 **Note:** If you are installing the Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.3 or later, the Federator is also automatically installed. This component enables you to monitor your objects through the Orchestration Monitor page of the Dynamic Workload Console. For detailed information about how to configure and



use the Federator, see the section about mirroring the z/OS current plan to enable the Orchestration Monitor in the *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

### Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.0, or earlier

SSL configuration is optional. For more information, see [Installing Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.0, or earlier on page 255](#).

## Installing a Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.1, or later

### About this task

The IBM® Workload Scheduler administrator installs the Dynamic Workload Console by running the **dwcinst** command. You can run the **dwcinst** specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

Default values are stored in the `dwcinst.properties` file, located in the root directory of the installation image. If you need to modify any of the default values, edit the `dwcinst.properties` file, but do not modify the `dwcinst.template` file located in the same path.

You have to configure your environment in SSL mode, by using the **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters. These parameters process automatically the certificates for each workstation in your environment. For details about these parameters, see the topic about Dynamic Workload Console installation - `dwcinst` script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*, version 10.2.1.

To install the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

1. Generate a z/OS certificate.



**Note:** The owner of the SAF key ring (that is, the user ID who runs the `EQQINCRT` sample JCL located in `SEQQSAMP`) must be the same user who runs the controller and server started tasks.

2. Export the z/OS certificate by using the RACF utility panel RACF - SERVICES OPTION MENU (options 7.1.4) to a data set that you have previously allocated. For example:

```
Data Set Name : <dataset_name>
Space units TRKS
Primary quantity . . 5
Secondary quantity 1
Directory blocks . . 0
Record format VB
Record length 84
Block size 27998
```

3. Generate the distributed certificates on a distributed environment as follows.

#### If the certification authority (CA) does not exist

Run the following commands:

```
openssl genrsa -out ca.key 4096
```

```
openssl req -x509 -new -nodes -key ca.key -subj "/CN=<common_name>" -days <ddd> -out ca.crt
```

```
openssl genrsa -des3 -out tls.key 4096
```

```
openssl req -new -key tls.key -out tls.csr
```

```
openssl x509 -req -in tls.csr -CA ca.crt -CAkey ca.key
-CAcreateserial -out tls.crt -extfile /etc/pki/tls/openssl.cnf -extensions v3_req
```

#### If the certification authority (CA) already exists

- a. Run the following command to generate the private key and unsigned certificate:

```
▪ openssl genrsa -des3 -out tls.key 4096
```

```
▪ openssl req -new -key tls.key -out tls.csr
```

- b. Send the `tls.csr` file to your certificate administrator to have it signed with your CA and be resent to you.

The `ca.crt`, `tls.crt`, and `tls.key` files are now ready for use.

4. Store the resulting `ca.crt`, `tls.crt`, and `tls.key` files in a folder of your choice on the workstation where you plan to install the Dynamic Workload Console.
5. Import the certificate from the z/OS to the distributed environment in ASCII mode.
6. Convert the certificates to the p12 format, as follows:

- a. Navigate to the folder where you stored the `ca.crt`, `tls.key`, and `tls.crt` files.

- b. Issue the following command:

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -out TWSServerTrustFile.p12 -inkey tls.key -in tls.crt -certfile ca.crt
```

You are prompted to enter the password used for generating the certificates, and verify it.

- c. Issue the following command:

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -out TWSServerKeyFile.p12 -inkey tls.key -in tls.crt -certfile ca.crt
```

You will be prompted to insert the same password of the creation of the certificates, and verify it.

- d. Now that you have created the databases, issue the following commands to add the z/OS certificates into them:

```
keytool -importcert -keystore TWSServerTrustFile.p12 -trustcacerts -alias <alias>
-keypass <key_pass> -storepass <store_pass> -file /path/to/zos/certificate -storetype PKCS12
-keyalg RSA
```

```
keytool -importcert -keystore TWSServerKeyFile.p12 -trustcacerts -alias <alias>
-keypass <key_pass> -storepass <store_pass> -file /path/to/zos/certificate -storetype PKCS12
-keyalg RSA
```

If prompted, confirm the insertion of the certificates.

- e. To display a list of all the certificates that are stored in the databases, issue the following commands:

```
keytool -list -keystore TWSServerTrustFile.p12 -storetype PKCS12 -storepass <store_pass>
```

```
keytool -list -keystore TWSServerKeyFile.p12 -storetype PKCS12 -storepass <store_pass>
```

7. Import the `ca.crt` and `tls.crt` certificates from the distributed to the z/OS environment in ASCII mode and add them to a data set that you have previously allocated.

8. Import the distributed certificate in the RING created in step 1 on page 252.

9. Transfer the certificate database created in step 6 to z/OS, as follows:

```
zip -q certs.zip TWSServerKeyFile.p12 TWSServerTrustFile.p12 //to create a zip file with the
certificates

ftp //to open ftp connection
open <z/OS_ip_address> //to connect to a specific mainframe ip
<user_id> //TSO user enabled to OMVS
<passwd> //TSO password for the user enabled to OMVS
bin //to chose the right format for the transfer
put certs.zip /path/to/certs/certs.zip //to actually transfer the zip file inside uss path
close //to close the ftp connection
quit //to go back to terminal

From OMVS launch the following commands:

cd /path/to/certs/ //to navigate to the unzipped certs file
unzip -q certs.zip /path/to/certificates_unzipped //to unzip the files in a specific directory
```

10. When running the dwcinst script, specify the path to the database with the **sslkeysfolder** parameter. This folder must contain two files named TWSServerKeyFile.p12 and TWSServerTrustFile.p12, in which your certificates are already stored.

11. Start the installation specifying a typical set of parameters. Specify the user defined in step 1 in the **--user** parameter. Default values are used for all remaining parameters:

#### On Windows operating systems

```
cscript dwcinst.vbs --acceptlicense yes --rdbmstype db_type
--user dwc_admin_user --password dwc_pwd --dbname db_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword db_pwd --dbhostname db_hostname
--dbport db_port --wlpdir Liberty_installation_dir\wlp
--sslpassword keystore_password --sslkeysfolder distributed_certificates_path
```

#### On UNIX operating systems

```
./dwcinst.sh --acceptlicense yes --rdbmstype db_type
--user dwc_admin_user --password dwc_pwd --dbname db_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword db_pwd --dbhostname db_hostname
--dbport db_port --wlpdir Liberty_installation_dir/wlp
--sslpassword keystore_password --sslkeysfolder distributed_certificates_path
```

#### On z/OS operating system

```
./dwcinst.sh --acceptlicense yes --rdbmstype DB2z
--user non-root_user --password dwc_pwd --dbname db_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword db_pwd --dbhostname db_hostname
--dbport db_port --wlpdir Liberty_installation_dir/wlp
--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db
--sslpassword keystore_password --sslkeysfolder distributed_certificates_path
```

where:

**user**

The administrator of the Dynamic Workload Console. This user is added to the group of the Dynamic Workload Console administrators at installation time. You can use this account to log in to the Dynamic Workload Console and manage your environment.

**password**

The password of the Dynamic Workload Console user.

**sslpassword**

The keystore password.

**sslkeysfolder**

The name and path of the folder containing the distributed certificates.

12. Stop and start WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base for the Dynamic Workload Console, as described in [Starting and stopping the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base on page 269](#).
13. In the TCPOPTS statement of the server started task, set the following parameters:
  - SSLKEYSTORETYPE(SAF)
  - SSLKEYSTORE(MDMCSTMRING)
  - SSLLEVEL(FORCE)
14. In the `connectionFactory.xml` file, set `useSsl="true"`.

For more information about all **dwcinst** parameters and default values, see the topic about Dynamic Workload Console installation - dwcinst script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*, version 10.2.1 or later.

## Installing Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.0, or earlier

### About this task

The IBM® Workload Scheduler administrator installs the Dynamic Workload Console by running the **dwcinst** command. You can run the **dwcinst** specifying a typical set of parameters. In this case, default values are used for all remaining parameters.

Default values are stored in the `dwcinst.properties` file, located in the root directory of the installation image. If you need to modify any of the default values, edit the `dwcinst.properties` file, but do not modify the `dwcinst.template` file located in the same path.

You can optionally configure your environment in SSL mode, by using the **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters and generating automatically the certificates for each workstation in your environment. For details about these parameters, see the topic about Dynamic Workload Console installation - dwcinst script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*, version 10.2.0.

In a typical installation scenario, it is recommended that you install the Dynamic Workload Console as a **non-root user** on UNIX systems and as a **local administrator** on Windows systems.

This user is automatically created by the installation process in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base repository. Ensure that the user has full access to the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base installation directory.

To install the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

1. Start the installation specifying a typical set of parameters. Specify the user defined in step 1 in the **--user** parameter. Default values are used for all remaining parameters:

#### On Windows operating systems

```
cscript dwcinst.vbs --acceptlicense yes --rdbmstype db_type
--user dwc_admin_user --password dwc_pwd --dbname db_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword db_pwd --dbhostname db_hostname
--dbport db_port --wlpdir Liberty_installation_dir\wlp
```

#### On UNIX operating systems

```
./dwcinst.sh --acceptlicense yes --rdbmstype db_type
--user dwc_admin_user --password dwc_pwd --dbname db_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword db_pwd --dbhostname db_hostname
--dbport db_port --wlpdir Liberty_installation_dir/wlp
```

#### On z/OS operating system

```
./dwcinst.sh --acceptlicense yes --rdbmstype DB2z
--user non-root_user --password dwc_pwd --dbname db_name
--dbuser db_user --dbpassword db_pwd --dbhostname db_hostname
--dbport db_port --wlpdir Liberty_installation_dir/wlp
--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db
```

where:

#### password

The password of the Dynamic Workload Console user.

For more information about all **dwcinst** parameters and default values, see the topic about Dynamic Workload Console installation - dwcinst script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*, version 10.2.0.

## Dynamic Workload Console installation - dwcinst script

This script installs the Dynamic Workload Console

This section lists and describes the parameters that are used when running a **dwcinst** script to install the Dynamic Workload Console. For a typical installation scenario, see *Installing the Dynamic Workload Console servers*. If you are installing in a z/OS environment, see the topic about installing the Dynamic Workload Console in *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

Certificates are now required when installing or upgrading IBM® Workload Scheduler. You can no longer install nor upgrade IBM® Workload Scheduler without securing your environment with certificates. The required certificates are:

- ca.crt
- tls.key
- tls.crt



For UNIX systems, ensure that all the files have the ownership of the user who installed the master domain manager and the correct permissions (644).

You can specify values in the properties file, type them in the command line, or use both methods. If a parameter is specified both in the properties file and in the command line, the command line value takes precedence.



**Note:** Ensure that the **inst\_dir** parameter is different from the directory of the installation image and it does not contain any IBM® Workload Scheduler instances.

The log files generated from this command are located in the following path:

#### On Windows operating systems

*DWC\_home\logs*

#### On UNIX operating systems

*DWC\_DATA\_dir/installation/logs*

#### On z/OS operating system

*DWC\_DATA\_dir/installation/logs*

## Syntax for Windows operating systems

### Show command usage

```
dwcinst -? | --usage | --help
```

### Retrieve the command parameters and values from a properties file

```
dwcinst --file | -f [properties_file]
```

### General information

```
dwcinst
--acceptlicense yes|no
[--lang lang_id]
[--inst_dir install_dir]
[--skipcheckprereq true|false]
[--componenttype DWC | FED]
```

### Configuration information for the data source

```
--rdbmstype|-r DB2 | DB2Z | ORACLE | MSSQL | POSTGRESQL
[--dbname db_name]
[--dbuser db_user]
[--dbpassword db_password]
[--dbport db_port]
[--dbhostname db_hostname]
[--dbdriverpath db_driver_path]
[--dbsslconnection true | false]
```

### Db2 for z/OS-only configuration options

```
[--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db]
```

### SSL configuration options

```
--sslkeysfolder keystore_truststore_folder
--sslpassword ssl_password
```

### User information

```
--user | -u dwc_user
--password | -p dwc_password
```

### Configuration information for the application server

```
--wlpdir|-w wlp_directory
```

### Security configuration

```
[--httpsport https_port]
[--bootstrapport bootstrap_port]
[--bootsecpport bootstrap_sec_port]
```

## Syntax for UNIX operating systems

### Show command usage

```
dwcinst -? | --usage | --help
```

### Retrieve the command parameters and values from a properties file

```
dwcinst --file | -f [properties_file]
```

### General information

```
dwcinst
--acceptlicense yes|no
[--lang lang_id]
[--inst_dir install_dir]
[--data_dir dwc_datadir]
[--skipcheckprereq true|false]
[--componenttype DWC | FED]
```

### Configuration information for the data source

```
--rdbmstype|-r DB2 | DB2Z | ORACLE | MSSQL | POSTGRESQL
[--dbname db_name]
```

```
[--dbuser db_user]
[--dbpassword db_password]
[--dbport db_port]
[--dbhostname db_hostname]
[--dbdriverpath db_driver_path]
[--dbsslconnection true | false]
```

### Db2 for z/OS-only configuration options

```
[--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db]
```

### SSL configuration options

```
--sslkeysfolder keystore_truststore_folder
--sslpassword ssl_password
```

### User information

```
--user | -u dwc_user
--password | -p dwc_password
```

### Configuration information for the application server

```
--wlpdir|-w wlp_directory
```

### Security configuration

```
[--httpsport https_port]
[--bootstrapport bootstrap_port]
[--bootsecppport bootstrap_sec_port]
```

## Syntax for z/OS operating systems

### Show command usage

```
dwcinst -? | --usage | --help
```

### Retrieve the command parameters and values from a properties file

```
dwcinst --file | -f [properties_file]
```

### General information

```
dwcinst
--acceptlicense yes|no
[--lang lang_id]
[--inst_dir install_dir]
[--data_dir dwc_datadir]
```

```
[--componenttype DWC | FED]
```

### Configuration information for the data source

```
--rdbmstype|-r DB2 | DB2Z | ORACLE | MSSQL | POSTGRESQL
[--dbname db_name]
[--dbuser db_user]
[--dbpassword db_password]
[--dbport db_port]
[--dbhostname db_hostname]
[--dbdriverpath db_driver_path]
```

### Db2 for z/OS-only configuration options

```
[--zlocationname zOS_location_containing_db]
```

### SSL configuration options

```
--sslkeysfolder keystore_truststore_folder
--sslpassword ssl_password
```

### User information

```
--user | -u dwc_user
--password | -p dwc_password
```

### Configuration information for the application server

```
--wlpdir|-w wlp_directory
```

### Security configuration

```
[--httpsport https_port]
[--bootstrapport bootstrap_port]
[--bootsecpport bootstrap_sec_port]
```

## Parameters

**-? | -usage | -help**

Displays the command usage and exits.

**--propfile | -f [properties\_file]**

Optionally specify a properties file containing custom values for `dwcinst` parameters. The default file is located in the root directory of the installation image.

Specifying a properties file is suggested if you have a high number of parameters which require custom values. You can also reuse the file with minimal modification for several installations. If you create a custom properties file, specify its name and path with the **-f** parameter.

### General information

#### **--acceptlicense** *yes|no*

Specify whether to accept the License Agreement.

#### **--lang** *lang\_id*

The language in which the messages returned by the command are displayed. If not specified, the system LANG is used. If the related catalog is missing, the default C language catalog is used. If neither **--lang** nor LANG are used, the default codepage is set to SBCS. For a list of valid values for these variables, see the following table:

**Table 36. Valid values for -lang and LANG**  
parameter

| Language                             | Value        |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| Brazilian Portuguese                 | pt_BR        |
| Chinese (traditional and simplified) | zh_CN, zh_TW |
| English                              | en           |
| French                               | fr           |
| German                               | de           |
| Italian                              | it           |
| Japanese                             | ja           |
| Korean                               | ko           |
| Russian                              | ru           |
| Spanish                              | es           |



**Note:** This is the language in which the installation log is recorded and not the language of the installed component instance. The command installs all languages as default.

#### **--inst\_dir**

Specify the directory where the Dynamic Workload Console is to be installed. This parameter is optional. The default values varies based on the operating system, as follows:

##### On Windows operating systems

```
%ProgramFiles%\wa\DWC
```

**On UNIX operating systems**

```
/opt/wa/DWC
```

**On z/OS operating system**

```
/opt/wa/DWC
```

After installing, you can find this value in the `twainstance<instance_number>.TWA.properties` file, by checking the **DWC\_basePath** parameter. For more information, see the topic about Finding out what has been installed in which IBM® Workload Scheduler instances in *Administration Guide*.

**--data\_dir *dwc\_datadir***

Specify the path to a directory where you want to store the logs and configuration files produced by Dynamic Workload Console. This parameter is optional. If you do not specify this parameter, all data files generated by the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in `DWC_home/DWC_DATA`. This path is called, in the publications, `DWC_DATA_dir`.

**--skipcheckprereq true | false**

If you set this parameter to `true`, Dynamic Workload Console does not scan system prerequisites before starting the installation. This parameter is optional. The default value is `false`. For more information about the prerequisite check, see Scanning system prerequisites for IBM Workload Scheduler.

**Configuration information for the data source****--rdbmstype|-r *rdbms\_type***

The database type. Supported databases are:

- **DB2**
- **ORACLE**
- **MSSQL** This value applies to MSSQL and supported MSSQL cloud-based databases.
- **POSTGRESQL**
- 

This parameter is required and has no default value.

**--dbname *db\_name***

The name of the Dynamic Workload Console database. This parameter is optional. The default value is **DWC**.

**--dbuser *db\_user***

The user that has been granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server. This parameter is required.

**--dbpassword *db\_password***

The password for the user that has been granted access to the Dynamic Workload Console tables on the database server. This parameter is required. Special characters are not supported. You can optionally encrypt the password. For more information, see [Encrypting passwords](#) (optional).

**--dbport *db\_port***

The port of the database server. This parameter is required.

**--dbhostname *db\_hostname***

The host name or IP address of database server. This parameter is required.

**--dbdriverpath *db\_driver\_path***

The path where the database drivers are stored. This parameter is optional, but becomes required when you set the **rdbmstype** parameter to **DB2Z**. If you use Db2 for z/OS with the Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.4 or later, transfer the drivers in binary mode from the directory where you installed Db2 for z/OS to a directory of your choice. Specify the driver path using this parameter.

By default, the configuration script references the JDBC drivers supplied with the product images. If your database server is not compatible with the supplied drivers, then contact your database administrator for the correct version to use with your database server and specify the driver path using this parameter. Ensure you provide the same path in the `configureDb`, `serverinst`, and `dwcinst` commands.

**--dbsslconnection *true | false***

Enables or disables the SSL connection to the database. This parameter applies to DB2, MSSQL, PostgreSQL. This value must always be **false** when `--rdbmstype` is **DB2Z**.

The default value is **false**.

**SSL configuration options****--sslkeyfolder *keystore\_truststore\_folder***

The name and path of the folder containing certificates in PEM format. The installation program automatically processes the keystore and truststore files using the password you specify with the `--sslpassword` parameter. The folder must contain the following files:

- **ca.crt**

The Certificate Authority (CA) public certificate. Note that if certificates being installed are part of a chain consisting of 3 or more certificates (one Root CA, followed by one or more Intermediate CAs, followed by the end user certificate), then this file must contain the Root CA certificate only. Any Intermediate CA certificates must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder, which therefore becomes a mandatory subfolder. Each Intermediate CA must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder in its own file.



**Note:** From V10.2.3, if certificates being installed are part of a chain, the `ca.crt` can contain also the intermediate CAs. In this case, it must begin with one or more intermediate CA certificates and end with the Root ca.

- **tls.key**

The private key of the end user certificate for the instance to be installed.

- **tls.crt**

The public part of the previous key, that is the end user certificate.

For UNIX systems, ensure that all the files have the ownership of the user who installed the master domain manager and the correct permissions (644).

You can optionally create a subfolder to contain one or more `*.crt` files to be added to the server truststore as trusted CA, whose name must be `additionalCAs`. This can be used for example to add to the list of trusted CAs the certificate of the LDAP server or DB2 server. Additionally, you can store here any intermediate CA certificate to be added to the truststore. The subfolder must be named **additionalCAs**. Note that if the end user certificate being installed in the instance is part of a chain consisting of 3 or more certificates (one Root CA, followed by one or more Intermediate CAs, followed by the end user certificate), then the Intermediate CAs certificates must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder, which therefore becomes a mandatory subfolder. Each Intermediate CA must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder in its own file.

For further information about how to generate custom certificates, see the topic about managing certificates using Certman in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

#### **--sslpassword *ssl\_password***

The password for the certificates.

For more information, see [sslkeysfolder on page 263](#).

You can optionally encrypt the password using the secure script. For more information, see [Optional password encryption - secure script on page 287](#).

#### **--enablefips *false***

Specify whether you want to enable FIPS. The default value is `false`. This parameter is optional.

### **Db2 for z/OS-only configuration syntax**

#### **--zlocationname *zos\_location\_containing\_db***

The name of an already existing location in the z/OS environment that will contain the new database. The default value is `LOC1`.

### **User information**



**--user**

Specify the administrator of the Dynamic Workload Console. You can use this account to log in to the Dynamic Workload Console and manage your environment. This parameter is optional. The default value is `dwcadmin`.

**--password**

Specify the password for the Dynamic Workload Console user. This parameter is required. You can optionally encrypt the password. For more information, see [Encrypting passwords \(optional\)](#).

**On Windows operating systems**

Supported characters for the password are alphanumeric, dash (-), underscore (\_) characters, and `()|?*~+.@!^`

**On UNIX operating systems**

Supported characters for the password are any alphanumeric, dash (-), underscore (\_) characters, and `()|?*~+.`

**Configuration information for the application server****--wlpdir**

Specify the path where WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base is installed. This parameter is required.

**On z/OS operating system**

Specify the path where WebSphere Application Server for z/OS Liberty is installed. This parameter is required.

**Security configuration****--httpsport**

Specify the HTTPS port, to be used in the Dynamic Workload Console URL. This parameter is optional. The default value is 9443.

**--bootstrapport**

Specify the bootstrap port. This parameter is optional. The default value is 12809.

**--bootsecport**

Specify the bootstrap security port, to be used for connecting to the Z connector. This parameter is optional. The default value is 19402.

**Defining a z/OS engine in the Z connector**

To define a z/OS engine, perform the following steps.



1. Depending on your operating system, browse to the `connectionFactory.xml` template:

**Windows operating systems**

`<DWC_home>\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates\zconnectors`

**UNIX operating systems**

`<DWC_home>/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates/zconnectors`

**z/OS operating systems**

`<DWC_home>/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates/zconnectors`

2. Copy the `connectionFactory.xml` template to a temporary directory.

On z/OS system, it is required that you copy the file on your workstation in binary mode.

3. Edit the file by specifying the required connection details.

The following example shows the `connectionFactory.xml` file, as it is created in the `zconnectors` folder at installation time:

```

<server description="zconnector_configuration">

 <connectionFactory id="$(zServerConnectionName)"
jndiName="eis/tws/zconn/$(zServerConnectionName)">
 <properties.ZOSConnectorAdapter hostName="$(zServerHostName)"
 portNumber="$(zServerPortNumber)"
 useSsl="$(zConnUseSsl)"
 connectionTimeoutCleanup="10"/>
 </connectionFactory>
</server>

```

Set the following values:

**zServerConnectionName**

Name of the connection between the Z connector and z/OS server started task.

Starting from the Dynamic Workload Console V10.2.3, if you enabled the mirroring of data to a database, this value must be coincident with the value set in the `CONNECTIONFACTORYID` parameter of the `MIRROPTS` statement.

**zServerHostName**

The host name or TCP/IP address of the remote z/OS system where the Z controller is installed.



**Note:** If the Dynamic Workload Console and Z controller are installed on the same z/OS system, you must specify the TCP/IP address of the z/OS system.

**zServerPortNumber**

The TCP/IP port that is used to communicate with the z/OS server started task, hence with the Z controller. This is the value specified in the SRVPORTNUMBER parameter of the TCPOPTS statement in the server started task.

**zConnUseSsl**

Set `true` to enable the SSL communication between the Z connector and the remote z/OS system, or `false` to disable this property. This property is optional. The default is `false`.

**connectionTimeoutCleanup**

The connection timeout cleanup for the z/OS connection.



**Note:** In the `TWSZOSConnConfig.properties` file located in `<INSTALL_DIR>\usr\servers\dwcServer\resources\properties`, set the name of the host where you installed the Dynamic Workload Console as follows:

```
com.ibm.tws.zconn.usr.mapping.hostName=DWC_hostname
```

4. Optionally, create a backup copy of the configuration file in a different directory, if the file is already present.
5. Depending on your operating system, copy the edited `connectionFactory.xml` file to the following path. Changes are immediately effective.

**Windows operating systems**

```
<DWC_home>\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides
```

**UNIX operating systems**

```
<DWC_DATA_dir>/DWC_DATA/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides
```

**z/OS operating systems**

Ensure that you copy the file in binary mode. `<DWC_DATA_dir>/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides`.

6. Replicate the change on all the Dynamic Workload Console instances in the domain.

## Defining a z/OS engine in the Dynamic Workload Console

Steps to create a z/OS engine connection in the Dynamic Workload Console

After logging to the Dynamic Workload Console using the administrator user ID or another user ID with the appropriate roles assigned, perform the following steps to define a connection to one of your supported IBM Z Workload Scheduler engines.

For detailed information about the roles required to run the Dynamic Workload Console, see how to configure security roles to users and groups in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.

According to the version of the Dynamic Workload Console you are using, perform the following procedure:

**Dynamic Workload Console version 10.2.0, or later**

1. From the navigation toolbar, click **Administration > Engine Connections**.
2. From the displayed panel you can create, edit, delete, or share an engine connection, and test the connection to the remote server where IBM Z Workload Scheduler is installed.
3. Click **Create new > z/OS**.
4. From the **Engine Connection - New Engine z/OS** window, in the Engine Info tab assign a name to the engine connection and specify the required information. For more details about fields and options, see the online help by clicking the sandwich menu next to the Engine Connections page and select **Help Page**.

To share the engine, select the **Enable sharing** check box in the Manage Sharing tab, and specify the required information.

To test the connection to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler database (mandatory for managing reporting and event management functions), from the reporting tab select **Enable reporting** and specify the user credentials.

5. Click **Test Connection** to check that the configuration was successful and that the Dynamic Workload Console is communicating with the selected engine. If the test connection fails, see *Troubleshooting Guide*.

**Dynamic Workload Console version earlier than 10.2.0**

1. From the navigation toolbar, click **Administration > Manage Engines**.
2. From the displayed panel you can create, edit, delete, or share an engine connection, and test the connection to the remote server where IBM Z Workload Scheduler is installed. You can order the list of engine connections displayed in this panel by using sorting criteria that you select with the buttons at the upper left corner of the table.
3. Click **New Engine**.
4. In the Engine Connection Properties window, assign a name to the engine connection and specify the required information. For more details about fields and options, see the online help by clicking the "?" in the top right corner. If you want to test the connection to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler database (mandatory for managing reporting and event management functions), you must select **Enable reporting** and specify the user credentials.
5. Click **Test Connection** to check that the configuration was successful and that the Dynamic Workload Console is communicating with the selected engine. If the test connection fails, see *Troubleshooting Guide*.

## Encrypting the connection between the Z connector and the server started task

An overview of encrypting the connection between the Z connector and the server started task.

SSL encryption can be enabled to protect communication between the Z connector and the IBM Z Workload Scheduler server started task.

To enable the use of the SSL default certificates provided with IBM Z Workload Scheduler or your own certificates, you must:

1. On the UNIX System Services of the z/OS system where the server runs, use the `gskkyman` utility of z/OS® Cryptographic Services System SSL to create the keystore database and generate the password file. Following this, you can import the default SSL certificates from the Z connector or from the Dynamic Workload Console.
2. Configure IBM Z Workload Scheduler by specifying the TCPOPTS statement for the server started task.

For details, see [Security for TCP/IP connections on page 113](#).

## Navigating the Dynamic Workload Console

An overview to the Dynamic Workload Console.

For an interactive overview of the product and its features, you can view several demo scenarios, available (in English only) on the [Workload Automation YouTube channel](#).

After you have installed and configured the Dynamic Workload Console, you can start defining and scheduling your workload. Log in by connecting to:

```
https://<your_ip_address>:<https_port>/console/login.jsp
```

You can access the Dynamic Workload Console from any computer in your environment using a web browser through the secure HTTPS protocol.

To have a quick and rapid overview of the portal and of its use, after logging in, the Welcome page for the Dynamic Workload Console is displayed in the console window. This window has a navigation menu across the top, organized in categories. Each category drops down to display a number of options that when clicked, display a page in the work area on the left. Each page displays with a title in its tabbed window in the work area.

Several products can be integrated in this portal and their related entries are listed together with those belonging to the Dynamic Workload Console in the navigation bar displayed at the top of the page.

The navigation bar at the top of the page is your entry point to the Dynamic Workload Console.

## Starting and stopping the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base

Use the `startAppServer` and `stopAppServer` commands or the equivalent from the Dynamic Workload Console to start or stop the WebSphere Application Server Liberty. For a description of these commands, see *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

These commands also stop `appservman`, the service that monitors and optionally restarts WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

If you do not want to stop appservman, you can issue startAppServer or stopAppServer, supplying the `-direct` argument. These scripts are located in `TWA_home/appservertools`.

The complete syntax of startAppServer and stopAppServer is as follows:

#### UNIX™

##### Start the application server

```
./startAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

##### Stop the application server

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
```



**Note:** If your WebSphere Application Server Liberty is installed for the Dynamic Workload Console, use the following syntax:

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
 [-user <user_ID>]
 [-password <password>]
```

The user ID and password are optional only if you have specified them in the `soap.client.props` file located in the properties directory of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty profile. Unlike the master domain manager installation, when you install the Dynamic Workload Console the `soap.client.props` file is not automatically customized with these credentials.

#### Windows™

##### Start the application server

```
startAppServer.bat [-direct]
```

##### Stop the application server

```
stopAppServer.bat [-direct]
 [-wlpHome <installation_directory>]
 [-options <parameters>]]
```

#### z/OS

##### Start the application server

```
./startAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

##### Stop the application server

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

where the arguments are as follows:

**-direct**

Optionally starts or stops the application server without starting or stopping the application server monitor appservman.

For example, you might use this after changing some configuration parameters. By stopping WebSphere Application Server Liberty without stopping appservman, the latter will immediately restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty, using the new configuration properties.

This argument is mandatory on UNIX™ when the product components are not integrated.

**-options *parameters***

Optionally supplies parameters to the WebSphere Application Server Liberty startServer or stopServer commands. See the WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation for details.

**-wlpHome *installation\_directory***

Defines the WebSphere Application Server Liberty installation directory, if it is not the default value.

## Installation log files

The type of log files you find on your system depends on the type of installation you performed.

**About this task**

To simplify administration, configuration, and backup and recovery, a new default behavior has been implemented with regard to the storage of product data and data generated by IBM® Workload Scheduler, such as logs and configuration information. On UNIX operating systems, these files are stored by default in the *DATA\_DIR* directory, which you can optionally customize at installation time. By default, this directory is *INST\_DIR/DWC\_DATA* for the Dynamic Workload Console. The product binaries are stored, instead, in the installation directory.



**Note:** If you deployed the product components using Docker containers, this is the default behavior and it cannot be modified. However, if you installed the product components using the command-line installation, the **--data\_dir** parameter can be used to change the path.

**Dynamic Workload Console**

*INST\_DIR/DWC\_DATA/installation/logs*

On Windows operating systems, installation log files for the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in *INST\_DIR\logs*.

On z/OS operating system, installation log files for the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in *INST\_DIR/DWC\_DATA*.

## Chapter 9. Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console

Some links and pointers on configuration tasks that are needed for the Dynamic Workload Console.

The following list shows the links and pointers to sections that document the configuration tasks needed for the Dynamic Workload Console. You can perform the following optional configuration steps at any time after the installation.

- Configuring new users to access the Dynamic Workload Console: see the section about configuring access to the Dynamic Workload Console in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.
- Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console to use a user registry:
  - For configuring the Dynamic Workload Console with LDAP - RACF®, see the *Configuring Lightweight Directory Access Protocol user registries* section in the WebSphere® documentation at: [https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSEQTP/mapfiles/product\\_welcome\\_was.html](https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSEQTP/mapfiles/product_welcome_was.html).
  - For configuring access to the Dynamic Workload Console, see the corresponding section in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.
- Configuring roles to access the Dynamic Workload Console: see the corresponding section in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.
- Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console to use Single Sign-On: see the corresponding section in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.
- Securing your communication with the Secure Socket Layer protocol: see the section about customizing the SSL connection between the Dynamic Workload Console and components with a distributed connector in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.
- Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console to launch in context: see the corresponding section in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.



**Note:** If, after installing, you have more than one instance of WebSphere® Application Server managing any IBM Workload Automation products, you must ensure that they have the same LTPA token\_keys.

For detailed information about how to configure the Dynamic Workload Console, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.

For more information about configuring authentication using the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.

### Configuring a user registry

In this topic you can find information about how to configure a user registry.

#### About this task

By default, the dynamic domain manager, the Dynamic Workload Console, and the master domain manager are configured to use a local file-based user repository. For more information about supported authentication mechanisms, see the topic about available configurations in the *Administration Guide*.



You can implement an OpenID Connect (OIDC) user registry, a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) user registry, or a basic user registry by configuring the sample authentication templates provided in XML format. You can further customize the templates by adding additional elements to the XML files. For a full list of the elements that you can configure to complement or modify the configuration, see the related WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base documentation, for example [LDAP User Registry \(ldapRegistry\)](#).

To configure an OIDC user registry, see [Configuring an OIDC user registry on page 273](#).

To configure an LDAP user registry, for example as Active Directory, see [Configuring an LDAP user registry on page 274](#).

To configure a basic user registry, see [Configuring a basic user registry on page 276](#).

## Configuring an OIDC user registry

### About this task

You can implement an OIDC user registry by configuring the sample authentication template provided in XML format: `openid_connect.xml`.

To configure an OIDC user registry, complete the following steps:

1. Copy the following template to a working directory:

```
<server>
 <featureManager>
 <feature>openidConnectClient-1.0</feature>
 </featureManager>

 <authFilter id="restFilterOpenID">
 <requestUrl id="restUrl" urlPattern="jwt/ibm/api|/dwc/rest/roles|/dwc/ServiceDispatcherServlet?ServiceName=PrefExport|/metrics" matchType="notContain"/>
 </authFilter>

 <openidConnectClient id="keycloak"
 clientId="wa-service"
 clientSecret="put_oidc_secret_here"
 httpsRequired="true"
 userIdentifier="preferred_username"
 signatureAlgorithm="RS256"
 scope="openid"
 authFilterRef="restFilterOpenID"
 inboundPropagation="supported"
 groupIdentifier="groups"
 accessTokenAttributeName="groups"
 groupNameAttribute="groups"
 hostNameVerificationEnabled="false"
 realmName = "your_realm_name"
 redirectToRPHostAndPort="https://dwc_ingress_hostname"
 discoveryEndpointUrl="https://oidc_ingress_hostname/realms/wa/.well-known/openid-configuration">
 </openidConnectClient>
</server>
```

2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration by adding users and groups as necessary.
3. Optionally, create a backup copy of the configuration file in the overrides folder, if already present.
4. Copy the updated template file to the overrides folder.
5. To upload the certificates of the OIDC provider, browse to `<DWC_home>/java/jre/bin` and run the following command:

```
keytool -importcert -file ingress-cert.pem
-keystore <DWC_home>/usr/servers/dwcServer/resources/security/TWSServerTrustFile.p12 -alias
ingress-cert -storepass <password_keystore>
```

where

**ingress-cert.pem**

The certificates file to be imported into the Dynamic Workload Console.

**ingress-cert**

The alias defined during the import of the certificate.

6. On Keycloak, ensure you define the group with the same name present in the OpenID file.



**Note:** If one or more messages similar to the following are displayed, perform the steps listed below.

```
CWPKEI0819I: The default keystore is not created because a password is not configured on the
<keyStore id="defaultKeyStore"/> element, and the 'keystore_password' environment variable is not set.
CWOAU0073E: An authentication error occurred. Try closing the web browser and authenticating again,
or contact the site administrator if the problem persists.
```

1. On the workstation where the Dynamic Workload Console is installed, browse to the `server.xml` file located in `<dwc_installation_directory>/usr/servers/dwcServer`.
2. Open the file with a text editor and change the value of the **sameSiteCookie** parameter from `strict` to `lax`.
3. Optionally, trust the Dynamic Workload Console certificate with the keycloak certificate.

## Configuring an LDAP user registry

### About this task

You can implement an LDAP based user repository by configuring the following sample authentication templates provided in XML format. The following are the supported authentication methods and the corresponding sample template that can be configured to replace the configuration file currently in use:

- OpenLDAP: `auth_OpenLDAP_config.xml`
- IBM® Directory Server: `auth_IDS_config.xml`
- Windows Server Active Directory: `auth_AD_config.xml`

To configure a common authentication provider for both the IBM® Workload Scheduler and the Dynamic Workload Console, complete the following steps:

1. Assign a role to your authentication provider user or group.
  - a. Log in to the Dynamic Workload Console as administrator and access the **Manage Roles** page.
  - b. Add a new **Entity** of type **Group** to the role you want to assign to your authentication provider user or group and click **Save**.
2. Update the authentication configuration template file with the details about your authentication provider server.
  - a. Copy the template file to a working directory. The templates are located in the following path:

**Dynamic Workload Console**

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates/authentication
```

**master domain manager**

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates/authentication
```

**Dynamic Workload Console**

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates\authentication
```

**master domain manager**

```
TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\templates\authentication
```

- b. Edit the template file in the working directory with the desired configuration.
- c. Optionally, create a backup copy of the configuration file in a different directory, if the file is already present. To avoid conflicts, ensure the backup copy is in a directory different from the following directories: configDropins/templates and configDropins/overrides.
- d. Copy the updated template file to the overrides directory.
- e. The overrides directory is located in the following path:

**Dynamic Workload Console**

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides
```

**master domain manager**

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides
```

**Dynamic Workload Console**

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides
```

**master domain manager**

```
TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides
```

- f. Stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base using the stopappserver and startappserver commands located in TWA\_home/appservertools.

For more information about configuring an LDAP registry, see the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base documentation, for example: [Configuring LDAP user registries in Liberty](#) and [Federation of user registries](#).

## Configuring a basic user registry

### About this task

You might want to use a basic user registry by defining the users and groups information for authentication on WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base, even though this type of authentication is not recommended. This type of authentication cannot be used for production, but only for test purposes.

To configure basic user registry, complete the following steps:

1. Copy the auth\_basicRegistry\_config.xml template from the templates folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration by adding users and groups as necessary.

To add a user, add an entry similar to the following in the **basicRegistry** section:

```
<user name="nonadminuser" password="{xor}0zo5PiozKw==" />
```

To add a group, add an entry similar to the following in the **basicRegistry** section:

```
<group name="TWSUsers">
 <member name="nonadminuser" />
</group>
```

3. Store the password in xor, aes, or hash formats using the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base securityUtility command, as described in [securityUtility command](#).

This utility requires the JAVA\_HOME environment variable to be set. If you do not have Java installed, you can optionally use the Java version provided with the product and available in:

#### IBM® Workload Scheduler

```
<INST_DIR>/TWS/JavaExt/jre/jre
```

#### Dynamic Workload Console

```
<DWC_INST_DIR>/java/jre/bin
```

4. Create a backup copy of the configuration file in the overrides folder, if already present.
5. Copy the updated template file to the overrides folder. Maintaining the original folder structure is not required.

## Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console for Single Sign-On

Single Sign-On (SSO) is a method of access control that allows a user to authenticate once and gain access to the resources of multiple applications sharing the same user registry.

This means that using SSO you can run queries on the plan or manage object definitions on the database accessing the engine without authenticating, automatically using the same credentials you used to log in to the Dynamic Workload Console.

The same is true when working with the Self-Service Catalog and Self-Service Dashboards apps from a mobile device. If the Dynamic Workload Console has been configured to use SSO, then these apps automatically use the same credentials used to log in to the Dynamic Workload Console.

After completing the installation or upgrade, you can set up Single Sign-On (SSO) for the Dynamic Workload Console and master domain manager using either an LTPA registry or a basic user registry. To achieve this, Dynamic Workload Console and master domain manager need to use the same user registry. Additionally, ensure that the contents of the `ltpa.keys` file are identical on both the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager. The `ltpa.keys` file is located in the following path:

```
usr/servers/engineServers/resources/security
```

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is an application protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP - see the information about configuring a common LDAP for both the master and console in the post-installation section of the *Planning and Installation Guide* for more details.

If you configured Dynamic Workload Console to use Single Sign-On with an engine, then, the following behavior is applied:

### **If engine connection has the user credentials specified in its definitions**

These credentials are used. This behavior regards also engine connections that are shared along with their user credentials.

### **If the user credentials are not specified in the engine connection**

The credentials you specified when logging in to Dynamic Workload Console are used. This behavior regards also shared engine connections having unshared user credentials.

For detailed information about how to configure SSO using an LTPA token or an MP-JWT token, see *How to configure the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager for Single Sign-On*.

## Chapter 10. Upgrading the Dynamic Workload Console

This section describes how to upgrade the Dynamic Workload Console from v 9.5.x to 10.2.x.

When upgrading your IBM® Workload Scheduler environment, it is a good practice to start with the upgrade of the Dynamic Workload Console first. If you upgrade the console to the new product version level, you can then use it to verify that your environment is working after upgrading the remaining components.

With Version 9.5, the Dynamic Workload Console is based on a new architectural foundation that does not include Jazz for Service Management nor Dashboard Application Services Hub, therefore, no direct upgrade procedure is supported, but you perform a fresh installation of the Dynamic Workload Console at version 9.5.0.x or 10.2.x.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Upgrade the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base, as described in the related section in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.
2. Perform a direct upgrade of the Dynamic Workload Console and its database, as described in the related section in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

## Chapter 11. Uninstalling the Dynamic Workload Console

### Before you begin

Ensure that all IBM Workload Scheduler processes, services and the WebSphere Application Server Liberty process are stopped, and that there are no active or pending jobs. For information about stopping the processes and services see the topic about starting and stopping processes on a workstation in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

### About this task

To uninstall the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

1. Change directory to the folder containing the uninstallation script:

```
cd DWC_INST_DIR/tools
```

2. Run the uninstallation process by running the script as follows:

#### Windows™ operating systems

```
cscript uninstall.vbs --prompt no
```

#### UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems

```
./uninstall.sh --prompt no
```

The procedure runs without prompting the user to confirm the uninstallation.

### Results

The log file generated by this command are located in:

#### On Windows operating systems

<DWC\_home>\logs

#### On UNIX operating systems

<DWC\_DATA\_dir>/installation/logs

## Part IV. Deploying with containers

Docker is a state-of-the-art technology that creates, deploys, and runs applications by using containers. Packages are provided containing an application with all of the components it requires, such as libraries, specific configurations, and other dependencies, and deploy it in no time on any UNIX, Windows, and Linux on Z workstation, regardless of any different settings between the source and the target workstation.

Docker adoption ensures standardization of your workload scheduling environment and provides an easy method to replicate environments quickly in development, build, test, and production environments, speeding up the time it takes to get from build to production significantly. Install your environment using Docker to improve scalability, portability, and efficiency.

To deploy IBM Workload Automation using a Docker container, proceed as follows:

1. Access and download the Docker image from the entitled registry. For details about the complete procedure, see [Deploying containers with Docker on page 306](#).
2. You can choose to deploy all product containers with a single command, or you can deploy each product component container individually. Start and configure the IBM Workload Automation containers. For details about the complete procedure, see [Deploying containers with Docker on page 306](#).

More detailed technical information for each component can be found in the sample readme files:

- [IBM Workload Automation Server](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation Console](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation dynamic agent](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation z-centric agent](#)
- [Workload Automation FileProxy](#)

3. Access the container to verify the status and run IBM Workload Automation commands. For details, see [Accessing the Docker containers on page 307](#).

You can also use docker containers to store all the latest integrations available on [Automation Hub](#). For further information, see the [Container](#) plug-in.

### Deploying z-centric and dynamic agents on Kubernetes

To ensure a fast and responsive experience when using IBM Z Workload Scheduler, you can deploy z-centric and dynamic agents on a Kubernetes cluster. Kubernetes is a portable, extensible, open-source platform for managing containerized workloads and applications.

A cloud deployment ensures access anytime anywhere and is a fast and efficient way to get up and running quickly. It also simplifies maintenance, lowers costs, provides rapid upscale and downscale, minimizes IT requirements and physical on-premises data storage.

Orchestrating your Kubernetes workload from a containerized agent optimizes allocations of resources in your cluster and reduces the chance of human errors. Find out more about the advantages of a stable containerized agent in the [Orchestrating your workload on cloud from IBM Z Workload Scheduler](#) video.



Deployment of the z-centric and dynamic agent containers on Kubernetes is supported on the following cloud provider infrastructures. For details and deployment instructions, see the [IBM Workload Automation z-Centric Chart readme file](#).

### **Amazon Web Services (AWS) Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS) (Amazon EKS)**

The z-centric and dynamic agents are offered on the Amazon Web Services cloud. Within just a few minutes, access the product Helm chart and container images and easily launch an instance to deploy an agent with full on-premises capabilities.



**Note:** At agent installation completion, the AWS cluster returns a host name 77 characters long. Because in the ROUTOPTS statement the maximum allowed length for host names is 52 characters, ensure that you map the host name returned by AWS to a name no longer than 52 characters.

### **Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS)**

Deploy and manage IBM® Workload Scheduler containerized product components on the Azure AKS, a container orchestration service available on the Microsoft Azure public cloud. You can use Azure AKS to deploy and manage containers in the cluster environment.

### **Google GKE**

Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE) provides a managed environment for deploying, managing, and scaling your containerized applications using Google infrastructure. The Google GKE environment consists of multiple machines grouped together to form a cluster.

### **Red Hat OpenShift**

The IBM Workload Automation product components can be deployed onto a Red Hat OpenShift, V4.x environment by using helm charts.

# Part V. Deploying AI Data Advisor

You can deploy AI Data Advisor (AIDA) by using Docker or Kubernetes.

AIDA is composed of two major components: AIDA Exporter and AIDA Engine. Each component contains a number of services:

## **AIDA Exporter**

### **Exporter**

Through IBM Workload Scheduler APIs, exports KPIs metrics from IBM Workload Scheduler (according to OpenMetrics standard) and stores them into AIDA OpenSearch database.

Also, it exports Alert definitions from IBM Workload Scheduler and imports them into OpenSearch.

## **AIDA Engine**

### **Predictor**

Calculates the expected values of each KPI, also considering special days.

### **Anomaly detection and alert generation**

Detects anomalies in KPIs trend by comparing observed KPI data points with expected values, and generates alerts when trigger conditions are met.

### **Email notification**

Sends email notification when alerts are generated.

### **Orchestrator**

Orchestrates KPI prediction and anomaly detection.

### **UI**

AIDA User Interface.

### **Internal event manager**

Manages communication among AIDA services.

Also, AIDA uses:

### **OpenSearch (an Elasticsearch technology)**

To store and analyze data.

### **Keycloak**

To manage security and user access in AIDA (Docker deployment only). If not deployed, the Dynamic Workload Console user authentication roles will be used.

### **Nginx**

As a reverse proxy for its components.

### Deploying AIDA using Docker

To monitor IBM Workload Scheduler and IBM Z Workload Scheduler engines, you can deploy AIDA with Docker by using AIDA.sh script. This script provides options to run Docker Compose operations and AIDA configuration steps.

For details, see the following readme file for Docker:

- [HCL AI Data Advisor for IBM Workload Automation](#)

### Deploying AIDA using Kubernetes

To monitor IBM Workload Scheduler engines only (not IBM Z Workload Scheduler engines), you can deploy AIDA by using an **helm chart**. This helm chart is included in the Workload Automation product helm chart that allows you to deploy Workload Automation and all its components in one shot.

For details, see the following readme file for Kubernetes:

- [HCL AI Data Advisor for IBM Workload Automation](#)



**Note:** Horizontal pod autoscaling based on memory and network usage is supported for **Anomaly detection and alert generation** and **Predictor** services. In case of high memory utilization, Kubernetes replicates pods. When memory usage decreases, pods are deleted.

## Part VI. Installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (z-centric agent)

The following topics describe how to install, migrate, and uninstall the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (also known as z-centric agent).



**Note:** If you are installing on IBM i systems, see [Installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent on IBM i systems on page 320](#).

## Chapter 12. Installing the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (z-centric)

You install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (z-centric) to run workload from the mainframe to distributed systems with a low cost of ownership.

With the z-centric agent you can run your workload:

### Statically

To run existing job types, for example scripts, on a specific IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent. In this case, you install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent on the distributed systems and connect it to the z/OS system through the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller.

### Statically including job types with advanced options

In this case, you install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent on the distributed systems adding the Java™ run time, and connect it to the z/OS system through the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller.

### Dynamically

To run existing job types allowing the product to assign them to the workstation that best meets both the hardware and software requirements needed to run them. In this case, you install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent on the distributed systems adding the dynamic capabilities, and connect it to the dynamic domain manager. For a detailed description about how to install a dynamic domain manager for a Z controller, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

During the installation of the dynamic domain manager for a Z controller, you must provide the **master domain manager** and **IBM Workload Scheduler Netman port** values.

### Dynamically including job types with advanced options

To run existing job types and job types with advanced options allowing the product to assign them to the workstation that best meets both the hardware and software requirements needed to run them. In this case, you install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent on the distributed systems adding the dynamic capabilities and the Java™ run time, then connecting it to the dynamic domain manager. For a detailed description about how to install a dynamic domain manager for a Z controller, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

During the installation of the dynamic domain manager for a Z controller, you must provide the **master domain manager** and the **IBM Workload Scheduler Netman port** values.

For information about how to use the z-centric agent, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.

## Authorization roles for running the twsinst script

Before you start to install, upgrade, or uninstall with **twsinst**, ensure that you have the following authorization requirements:

## Windows™ operating system

If you set the Windows User Account Control (UAC), your login account must be a member of the Windows™ **Administrators** group or domain administrators with the rights **Act as Part of the Operating System**.

If you set the Windows User Account Control (UAC) on the workstation, you must run the installation as **administrator**.

## Encrypting passwords (optional)

How to encrypt passwords required by the installation, upgrade, and management processes.

### About this task



You can optionally encrypt the passwords that you will use while installing, upgrading, and managing IBM® Workload Scheduler. The secure command uses the AES method and prints the encrypted password to the screen or saves it to a file.



**Note:** It is important you understand the limits to the protection that this method provides. The custom passphrase you use to encrypt the passwords is stored in clear format in the `passphrase_variables.xml` file, stored in `configuredropin`. To fully understand the implications of this method, it is recommended you read the information provided by WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base at the link [Liberty: The limits to protection through password encryption](#).

You can perform a typical procedure, which uses a custom passphrase, as described in the following scenario. For more information about all secure arguments and default values, see [Optional password encryption - secure script on page 287](#).

### Encrypting the password

1. Browse to the folder where the secure command is located:
  - Before the installation, the command is located in the product image directory, `<image_directory>/TWS/<op_sys>/Tivoli_LWA_<op_sys>/TWS/bin`
  - After the installation, the command is located in `TWA_home/TWS/bin`
2. Depending on your operating system, encrypt the password as follows:

#### Windows operating systems

```
secure -password password -passphrase passphrase
```

#### UNIX operating systems

```
./secure -password password -passphrase passphrase
```

**z/OS operating systems**

```
./secure -password password -passphrase passphrase
```

where

**-password**

Specifies the password to be encrypted.

**-passphrase**

Specifies the custom passphrase that is used to generate the key with which the command encrypts the password. If you set this parameter, inform the user who installs IBM Workload Automation that they must define the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable in the same shell from which they run the installation command, and set it to the same value as the **passphrase** parameter. On Windows operating systems, the passphrase must be at least 8 characters long. This argument generates a password which can be reused for all IBM® Workload Scheduler components. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the [-useaeskeystore on page 290](#) parameter, which generates a password which can be decrypted only on the local workstation and not reused for other components.

3. Provide both the encrypted password and custom passphrase to the user in charge of installing IBM Workload Automation. You can use encrypted passwords only in association with the specific passphrase used to encrypt them.

**Installing with the encrypted password**

The user in charge of installing IBM Workload Automation must set the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable by performing the following steps:

1. Open a brand new shell session.
2. Ensure that no value is set for the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable.
3. Define the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable and set it to the passphrase defined by the user who ran the secure command, as follows:

```
SECUREWRAP_PASSPHRASE=<passphrase>
```

You can use encrypted passwords only in association with the specific passphrase used to encrypt them.

4. In the same shell session, provide the encrypted passwords when running any command that uses a password. An encrypted password looks like the following example:

```
{aes}AFC3jj9cR0YyqR+3CONBzVi8deLb2Bossb9GGroh8UmDPGikIkzXZzid3nzY0IhnSg=
```

**Optional password encryption - secure script**

Optionally encrypt the passwords you use to install, upgrade, and manage IBM® Workload Scheduler.

This section lists and describes the parameters of the secure script. The secure command uses the AES method and prints the encrypted password to the screen or saves it to a file. This command is available by default on all IBM® Workload Scheduler components.



**Note:** Use this script only to encrypt passwords used during the installation and upgrade processes.

You can either:

- Define a custom passphrase by using the **passphrase** argument and defining the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable in the same shell session in which you run the command using the encrypted password. Ensure you set the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable to the same value as the **passphrase** argument. You can use encrypted passwords only in association with the specific passphrase used to encrypt them.
- Use the standard encryption method provided with the **secure** command. In this case, you simply specify the **password** parameter.



**Note:** It is important you understand the limits to the protection that this method provides. The custom passphrase you use to encrypt the passwords is stored in clear format in the `passphrase_variables.xml` file, stored in `configureDropin`. To fully understand the implications of this method, it is recommended you read the information provided by WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base at the link [Liberty: The limits to protection through password encryption](#).

## Syntax

### Windows operating systems:

```
secure -fips on|weak|off | -checksecurity | -updatesecurity | -securitystatus | {-password password
| -in file} [-fipscompliance true|false] [-des3toaes]
[[-passphrase passphrase] | [-useaeskeystore]] [-out file]
```

### UNIX operating systems:

```
./secure -fips on|weak|off | -checksecurity | -updatesecurity | -securitystatus | {-password password
| -in file} [-fipscompliance true|false] [-des3toaes]
[[-passphrase passphrase] | [-useaeskeystore]] [-out file]
```

### z/OS operating systems:

```
secure -fips on|weak|off | -checksecurity | -updatesecurity | -securitystatus | {-password password
| -in file} [-fipscompliance true|false] [-des3toaes]
[[-passphrase passphrase] | [-useaeskeystore]] [-out file]
```

## Arguments

### -fips

Specifies your FIPS settings:

#### on

Select **on** to enable FIPS in **full** mode. In this mode, FIPS enforces the most rigorous cryptographic levels defined by the FIPS 140-3 standard.



**weak**

Select **weak** to enable FIPS in **weak** mode. In this mode, FIPS enforces the most rigorous cryptographic levels defined by the FIPS 140-3 standard, but supports also the SHA-1 and 3DES algorithms.

**off**

Select **off** to disable FIPS. In this mode, FIPS standards are not enforced, but the product is still robust and secure.

**-checksecurity**

Checks the encryption level for password encryption. If user passwords are encrypted with the AES algorithm, the command modifies the **useAESEncryptionAlgorithm** optman option to **yes**. If the encryption algorithm is different from AES, the command displays a warning message.

**-updatesecurity**

Changes the encryption algorithm for user passwords from 3DES to AES. To prevent communication problems, this change requires that all components in your environment are at version 10.2.5 or later.

The command checks and modifies the **useAESEncryptionAlgorithm** optman option, based on the encryption algorithm used in your environment for user passwords, as follows:

**users with passwords in 3DES**

the **useAESEncryptionAlgorithm** option is set to **no**.

**users with passwords in AES**

the **useAESEncryptionAlgorithm** option is set to **yes**.

For more information about optman options, see the topic about global options in *Administration Guide*.

**-securitystatus**

Displays security settings in your environment, for example the current FIPS mode.

**-password**

Specifies the password to be encrypted. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the **-in** parameter.

**-in**

Specifies the name and path of the file where you have stored the password to be encrypted. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the **-password** parameter.

**-fipscompliance**

Allows overriding the product's FIPS mode. For instance, if a master domain manager, agent, or Dynamic Workload Console has FIPS enabled and the option **-fipscompliance** **=false** is specified, FIPS is selectively disabled for the secure command. Conversely, passing **-fipscompliance** **=true** enforces FIPS for that command, regardless of the global setting.

**-des3toaes**

Converts the specified password from the Triple DES to the AES format.

**-passphrase**

Specifies the custom passphrase that is used to generate the key with which the command encrypts the password. If you set this parameter, inform the user who installs IBM Workload Automation that they must define the **SECUREWRAP\_PASSPHRASE** environment variable in the same shell from which they run the installation command, and set it to the same value as the **passphrase** parameter. On Windows operating systems, the passphrase must be at least 8 characters long. This argument generates a password which can be reused for all IBM® Workload Scheduler components. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the [-useaeskeystore on page 290](#) parameter, which generates a password which can be decrypted only on the local workstation and not reused for other components.

**-useaeskeystore**

Specifies that the secure command runs the encryption process using the AES keystore specified in the **encrypt keystore file** option and associated to the **encrypt label** alias. Both options are defined in the `localopts` file. The keystore is created automatically at installation time. Using this parameter ensures that passwords are encrypted with a unique key for each installation. Consequently, files encrypted on one component cannot be decrypted on another component due to differing encryption keys. For more information about the **encrypt keystore file** option and the **encrypt label** alias, see the topic about `localopts` details in *Administration Guide*. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the [-passphrase on page 290](#) parameter, which generates a password which can be reused for other components.

**-base64 e**

Specifies that the encoding process uses the **base64** format.

**-out**

Specifies the path and name of a file where the command stores the encrypted password. If you do not specify this parameter, the encrypted password is printed to the screen.

## Examples

To encrypt password `MyPassword` with a strong passphrase, run the following command:

```
./secure -password MyPassword -passphrase de85pU!Mb5G2xewPgDva
```

To encrypt the password stored in file `MyFile` using the default passphrase and save the encrypted password to file `OutputFile`, run the following command:

```
secure -in C:\info\MyFile -out C:\info\OutputFile
```

## Installing z-centric agent using twsinst

You use the **twsinst** script to install the agent with z-centric capabilities.

Optionally, you can add to the agent with z-centric capabilities:

- Dynamic capabilities, to provide your distributed environment with dynamic scheduling capabilities.
- Java™ run time to run job types with advanced options, both those supplied with the product and the additional types implemented through the custom plug-ins. The run time environment also enables the capability to remotely run, from the agent, the dynamic workload broker resource command on the server.

For a complete list of the supported operating systems, see the Detailed System Requirements document at [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#).

## twsinst

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have the required authorization requirements, as described in [Authorization roles for running the twsinst script on page 285](#).

### About this task

During the installation process, if you do not specify the installation directory in the command, twsinst creates files in the following directories for each of the installation steps:

#### On Windows™ operating systems

```
%ProgramFiles%\IBM\TWA_TWS_USER
```

#### On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems

```
/opt/HCL/TWA_TWS_USER
```

Where `TWS_USER` is the user for which you are installing the IBM Workload Scheduler instance that you specify in the command. If you stop and restart the installation, the installation process starts from the installation step where it was stopped.

To install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent and all the supported language packs, perform the following steps:

#### On Windows™ operating systems

1. Download the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent image related to your operating system.
2. Log in as administrator on the workstation where you want to install the product.
3. From `image_directory\TWS\operating_system`, run **twsinst** using the syntax described in the following section.



**Note:** twsinst for Windows™ operating systems is a Visual Basic Script (VBS) that you can run in CScript and WScript mode.

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler user is automatically created. The software is installed by default in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default value is `%ProgramFiles%\IBM\TWA`.

## On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems

1. Download the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent image related to your operating system.
2. Create the IBM Z Workload Scheduler user. The software is installed by default in the user's home directory, referred to as `/installation_dir/TWS`

### User:

`TWS_user`

### Home:

`/installation_dir/TWS` (for example: `/home/user1/TWS` where `user1` is the name of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler user.)

3. Log in as root on the workstation where you want to install the product.
4. From the `image_directory/TWS/operating_system` directory, run **twinsinst** using the syntax described in the following section.

A successful installation using the **twinsinst** script issues the return code RC = 0. If the installation fails to understand the cause of the error, see [Analyzing return codes for agent installation, upgrade, restore, and uninstallation on page 316](#).

## Synopsis

### On Windows™ operating systems

#### Show command usage and version

```
twinsinst.vbs -u | -v
```

#### Install a new instance

```
twinsinst.vbs -new -uname user_name
 -password user_password

[-addjruntime true|false]
[-displayname agentname]
[-domain user_domain]
[-hostname hostname]
[-inst_dir install_directory]
[-jimport port_number]
[-jimportssl true|false]
[-lang lang_id]
-sslkeysfolder
-sslpassword
[-skip_usercheck]
[-stoponcheckprereq]
[-work_dir working_directory]
[-zhostname zconn_hostname]
[-zport zconn_portnumber]
```

### On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems

#### Show command usage and version

```
twinsinst -u | -v
```

**Install a new instance**

```

twsinst -new -uname user_name

[-addjruntime true|false]
[-displayname agentname]
[-hostname hostname]
[-inst_dir install_directory]
[-jimport port_number]
[-jimportssl true|false]
[-lang lang_id]
-sslkeysfolder
-sslpassword
[-reset_perm]
[-skip_usercheck]
[-stoponcheckprereq]
[-work_dir working_directory]
[-zhostname zconn_hostname]
[-zport zconn_portnumber]

```

**Parameters****-addjruntime true|false**

Adds the Java™ run time to run job types with advanced options, both those types that are supplied with the product and the additional types that are implemented through the custom plug-ins. Valid values are **true** and **false**. The default for a fresh installation is **true**. Set this parameter to **true** if you use the **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters to define custom certificates in PEM format.

**-domain user\_domain**

Windows™ operating systems only. The domain name of the IBM Workload Scheduler user. The default is the name of the workstation on which you are installing the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent.

**-displayname agentname**

The name to be assigned to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent. The default is the host name.

**-hostname hostname**

The fully qualified host name or IP address on which the agent will be contacted by the dynamic workload broker.

**-inst\_dir install\_directory**

The directory where to install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent. On UNIX™ and Linux™, this path cannot contain blanks. On Windows™ operating systems, if you specify a path that contains blanks, enclose it in double quotes. On any operating system, specify an absolute path. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to the default home directory. On UNIX™ and Linux™, the path is set to the *user\_name* home directory, and on Windows™ operating systems it is set to %ProgramFiles%\IBM\TWA%ProgramFiles%\HCL\TWA.

**-jimport port\_number**

The port used by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller or the dynamic workload broker to connect to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent. The default value is **31114**. The valid range is from 1 to 65535.

**-jimportssl true|false**

The port used by the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller, or by the dynamic workload broker to connect to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent. This number is registered in the `ita.ini` file, located in `ITA\cpa\ita` on Windows™ operating systems and `ITA/cpa/ita` on UNIX™ and Linux™.

**For communication using SSL or HTTPS**

Set **jimportssl = true**. To communicate with the dynamic workload broker, it is recommended that you set the value to **true**. In this case, the port specified in **jimport** communicates in HTTPS. If you specify **true**, ensure that you also configure the HTTPS communication on the z/OS® master.

**For communication without using SSL, or through HTTP**

Set **jimportssl = false**. In this case the port specified in **jimport** communicates in HTTP.

The default value is **true**.

To increase the performance of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler server, it is recommended that you set this value to **false**.

**-lang lang\_id**

The language in which the **twinsinst** messages are displayed. If not specified, the system LANG is used. If the related catalog is missing, the default C language catalog is used.



**Note:** This is the language in which the installation log is recorded, and not the language of the installed engine instance. **twinsinst** installs all languages as default.

**-new**

A fresh installation of the agent. Installs an agent and all supported language packs.

**-password user\_password**

Windows™ operating systems only. The password of the user for which you are installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent. The password can include alphanumeric, dash (-), and underscore (\_) characters, and the following symbols: `()!?=^*/~[]$`+;,:.,@`.

**-reset\_perm**

UNIX™ and Linux™ only. Reset the permissions of the `libatrc` library.

**-skip\_usercheck**

Enable this option if the authentication process within your organization is not standard, thereby disabling the default authentication option. On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems if you specify this parameter, the program skips the check of the user in the `/etc/passwd` file or the check you perform using the `su` command. On Windows™ operating systems if you specify this parameter, the program does not create the user you specified in the `-uname username` parameter. If you specify this parameter you must create the user manually before running the script.

**-sslkeysfolder path**

The name and path of the folder on the agent containing PEM certificates. The installation program automatically generates the keystore and truststore files using the password you specify with the **sslpassword** parameter, which is **required** when using **sslkeysfolder**.

The folder must contain the following files and folders:

**ca.crt**

The Certificate Authority (CA) public certificate.

**tls.key**

The private key for the instance to be installed.

**tls.crt**

The public part of the previous key.

**tls.sth**

The file storing your encoded password in Base64 encoding.

You can optionally create a subfolder to contain one or more \*.crt files to be added to the server truststore as trusted CA. This can be used for example to add to the list of trusted CAs the certificate of the LDAP server or DB2 server. Additionally, you can store here any intermediate CA certificate to be added to the truststore. The subfolder must be named **additionalCAs**. If you are connecting a master domain manager using custom certificates to a dynamic agent also using custom certificates, the only required file is ca.crt.

Before you start the installation, ensure the required files and folders are available on the agent.

The **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters are **mutually exclusive** with the **wauser**, **wapassword**, **apikey**, and **jwt true** parameters, which are used to download and deploy the certificates or JWT already available on the master domain manager.

For a comprehensive list of supported combinations for this parameter and related ones, see Table 2.

**-sslpassword password**

Specify the password for the certificates in PEM format automatically generated by the installation program. It requires the **sslkeysfolder** parameter.

If you use this parameter, ensure that the **addruntime** parameter is set to true, because Java™ run time is required for defining custom certificates.

You can optionally encrypt the password by using the secure script. For more information, see [Encrypting passwords \(optional\) on page 223](#).

**-stoponcheckprereq**

Stop the installation whenever a problem occurs during the prerequisite check. For more information about the prerequisites, see [IBM Workload Scheduler download document](#).

## **-u**

Displays command usage information and exits.

## **-uname *user\_name***

The name of the user for which the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent is installed. This user name is not to be confused with the user performing the installation logged on as **root** on UNIX™ and Linux™ and as **administrator** on Windows™ operating systems.

On UNIX™ and Linux™, this user account must be created manually before running the installation. Create a user with a home directory. By default, IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent is installed in the home directory of the specified user.

## **-work\_dir *working\_directory***

The temporary directory used for the IBM Workload Scheduler installation process files deployment.

### **On Windows™ operating systems**

If you specify a path that contains blanks, enclose it in double quotes. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to %temp%\TWA\tw95, where %temp% is the temporary directory of the operating system.

### **On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems**

The path cannot contain blanks. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to /tmp/TWA/tw95.

## **-v**

Displays the command version and exits.

## **-zhostname *zconn\_hostname***

The fully qualified host name of the Z connector (this is coincident with the Dynamic Workload Console host name). It is used together with the `-zport zconn_port` parameter. It adds the capability to download the plug-ins from the Z connector.

This value is registered in the ResourceAdvisorAgent property of the JobManager .ini file.

## **-zport *zconn\_portnumber***

The HTTP or HTTPS port number of the Z connector (this is coincident with the Dynamic Workload Console port number). It is used together with the `-zhostname zconn_hostname` parameter to add the capability to download the plug-ins from the Z connector. The valid range is from 1 to 65535.

This value is registered in the ResourceAdvisorAgent property in the JobManager .ini file.

## **Example**



## Examples

This example describes how to install the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent for the user `ZWS_user` and accept the default value to add the runtime environment for Java™. The runtime environment is used to run jobs supplied with the product or implemented through the custom plug-ins, it also enables the capability to remotely run, from the agent, the dynamic workload broker resource command on the server.

### On Windows™ operating systems

```
twsinst.vbs -new
-uname ZWS_user
-password qaz12qaz
-jmportssl false
-jmport 31114
-inst_dir "install_directory"
-sslkeysfolder certs_path
-sslpassword pwd
```

### On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems

```
./twsinst -new
-uname ZWS_user
-jmportssl false
-jmport 31114
-inst_dir install_directory
-sslkeysfolder certs_path
-sslpassword pwd
```

## The twsinst log files

### About this task

The twsinst log file name is:

#### On Windows operating systems:

```
<TWS_INST_DIR>\logs\twsinst_operating_system_TWS_user^version_number.log
```

Where:

#### ***TWS\_INST\_DIR***

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default installation directory is C :  
 \Program Files\IBM\TWA\_TWS\_user.

#### ***operating\_system***

The operating system.

#### ***TWS\_user***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler was installed, that you supplied during the installation process.

**On UNIX operating systems:**

```
<TWS_INST_DIR>/TWSDATA/installation/logs/
twsinst_operating_system_TWS_user^product_version_number.log
```

Where:

***TWS\_INST\_DIR***

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default installation directory is /opt/IBM/TWA\_TWS\_user.

***operating\_system***

The operating system.

***TWS\_user***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler was installed, that you supplied during the installation process.

## Enabling dynamic capabilities after installation or upgrade

This section describes the procedure that you must perform to enable dynamic scheduling capabilities after you installed or upgraded the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent, without enabling them:

1. Update the `JobManager.ini` configuration file located in:

**Windows™ operating systems:**

```
twshome\TWS\ITA\cpa\config\JobManager.ini
```

**UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems:**

```
twshome/TWS/ITA/cpa/config/JobManager.ini
```

by assigning to the `tdwb_hostname` and `mdm_httpsport` variables contained in the `ResourceAdvisorUrl` property, the following values:

***tdwb\_hostname***

The fully qualified host name of the workload broker server.

***mdm\_httpsport***

The value that the **httpsPort** has on the master domain manager, as shown by the **showHostProperties** wastool. The default is 31116, which is the dynamic workload broker port number. The port is currently set to zero because at installation time you specified that you would not use the dynamic workload broker.

The **ResourceAdvisorUrl** property has the following syntax:

```
ResourceAdvisorUrl = https://tdwb_hostname:mdm_httpsport
/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource
```

2. Start the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent by running the following command from `TWS_home`:

**Windows™ operating systems:**

```
StartUpLwa.cmd
```

**UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems:**

```
StartUpLwa
```

## Deploying with containers

Docker is a state-of-the-art technology that creates, deploys, and runs applications by using containers. Packages are provided containing an application with all of the components it requires, such as libraries, specific configurations, and other dependencies, and deploy it in no time on any UNIX, Windows, and Linux on Z workstation, regardless of any different settings between the source and the target workstation.

Docker adoption ensures standardization of your workload scheduling environment and provides an easy method to replicate environments quickly in development, build, test, and production environments, speeding up the time it takes to get from build to production significantly. Install your environment using Docker to improve scalability, portability, and efficiency.

To deploy IBM Workload Automation using a Docker container, proceed as follows:

1. Access and download the Docker image from the entitled registry. For details about the complete procedure, see [Deploying containers with Docker on page 306](#).
2. You can choose to deploy all product containers with a single command, or you can deploy each product component container individually. Start and configure the IBM Workload Automation containers. For details about the complete procedure, see [Deploying containers with Docker on page 306](#).

More detailed technical information for each component can be found in the sample readme files:

- [IBM Workload Automation Server](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation Console](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation dynamic agent](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation z-centric agent](#)
- [Workload Automation FileProxy](#)

3. Access the container to verify the status and run IBM Workload Automation commands. For details, see [Accessing the Docker containers on page 307](#).

You can also use docker containers to store all the latest integrations available on [Automation Hub](#). For further information, see the [Container](#) plug-in.

## Deploying z-centric and dynamic agents on Kubernetes

To ensure a fast and responsive experience when using IBM Z Workload Scheduler, you can deploy z-centric and dynamic agents on a Kubernetes cluster. Kubernetes is a portable, extensible, open-source platform for managing containerized workloads and applications.

A cloud deployment ensures access anytime anywhere and is a fast and efficient way to get up and running quickly. It also simplifies maintenance, lowers costs, provides rapid upscale and downscale, minimizes IT requirements and physical on-premises data storage.

Orchestrating your Kubernetes workload from a containerized agent optimizes allocations of resources in your cluster and reduces the chance of human errors. Find out more about the advantages of a stable containerized agent in the [Orchestrating your workload on cloud from IBM Z Workload Scheduler](#) video.

Deployment of the z-centric and dynamic agent containers on Kubernetes is supported on the following cloud provider infrastructures. For details and deployment instructions, see the [IBM Workload Automation z-Centric Chart readme file](#).

#### **Amazon Web Services (AWS) Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS) (Amazon EKS)**

The z-centric and dynamic agents are offered on the Amazon Web Services cloud. Within just a few minutes, access the product Helm chart and container images and easily launch an instance to deploy an agent with full on-premises capabilities.



**Note:** At agent installation completion, the AWS cluster returns a host name 77 characters long. Because in the ROUTOPTS statement the maximum allowed length for host names is 52 characters, ensure that you map the host name returned by AWS to a name no longer than 52 characters.

#### **Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS)**

Deploy and manage IBM® Workload Scheduler containerized product components on the Azure AKS, a container orchestration service available on the Microsoft Azure public cloud. You can use Azure AKS to deploy and manage containers in the cluster environment.

#### **Google GKE**

Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE) provides a managed environment for deploying, managing, and scaling your containerized applications using Google infrastructure. The Google GKE environment consists of multiple machines grouped together to form a cluster.

#### **Red Hat OpenShift**

The IBM Workload Automation product components can be deployed onto a Red Hat OpenShift, V4.x environment by using helm charts.

## **Prerequisites**

Prerequisite information when deploying with containers.

When deploying the product using containers, ensure you have fulfilled the following prerequisites:

Check the prerequisites of the command-line installation method in Prerequisites.

If you want to calculate the necessary resources that the agent container needs to run, use the following formula:

Evaluate the volume\_size variable:

```
Volume size(MB)=
 120 + [30 x jobs_per_day x (average_joblog_size_MB / 3 + 0.008)]
```

For example, considering "average\_joblog\_size\_MB = 0.001 MB (1KB)", you obtain:

```
1.000
 jobs_per_day: 370 MB --> volume_size = 370Mi
```

```
10.000
 jobs_per_day: 2.6 GB --> volume_size = 2600Mi
```

```
100.000
 jobs_per_day: 25 GB --> volume_size = 25Gi
```

## Deploying Docker compose on Linux on Z

Before you deploy IBM Workload Automation components on Linux on Z, ensure that you have deployed Docker compose, as explained in the following procedure.

To deploy the containers, docker-compose is required on the local workstation. Perform the following steps:

1. Browse to `/usr/local/bin` and create a file with name `docker -compose` with the following contents:

```
#
This script will attempt to mirror the host paths by using volumes for the
following paths:
* $(pwd)
* $(dirname $COMPOSE_FILE) if it's set
* $HOME if it's set
#
You can add additional volumes (or any docker run options) using
the $COMPOSE_OPTIONS environment variable.
#

set -e

VERSION="1.27.4"
IMAGE="ibmcom/dockercompose-s390x:$VERSION"

Setup options for connecting to docker host
if [-z "$DOCKER_HOST"]; then
 DOCKER_HOST='unix:///var/run/docker.sock'
fi
if [-S "${DOCKER_HOST#unix://}"]; then
 DOCKER_ADDR="-v ${DOCKER_HOST#unix://}:${DOCKER_HOST#unix://} -e DOCKER_HOST"
else
 DOCKER_ADDR="-e DOCKER_HOST -e DOCKER_TLS_VERIFY -e DOCKER_CERT_PATH"
fi

Setup volume mounts for compose config and context
if ["$(pwd)" != '/']; then
 VOLUMES="-v $(pwd):$(pwd)"
fi
```

```

if [-n "$COMPOSE_FILE"]; then
 COMPOSE_OPTIONS="$COMPOSE_OPTIONS -e COMPOSE_FILE=$COMPOSE_FILE"
 compose_dir="$(dirname "$COMPOSE_FILE")"
 # canonicalize dir, do not use realpath or readlink -f
 # since they are not available in some systems (e.g. macOS).
 compose_dir="$(cd "$compose_dir" && pwd)"
fi
if [-n "$COMPOSE_PROJECT_NAME"]; then
 COMPOSE_OPTIONS="$COMPOSE_OPTIONS -e COMPOSE_PROJECT_NAME $COMPOSE_PROJECT_NAME"
fi
if [-n "$compose_dir"]; then
 VOLUMES="$VOLUMES -v $compose_dir:$compose_dir"
fi
if [-n "$HOME"]; then
 VOLUMES="$VOLUMES -v $HOME:$HOME -e HOME" # Pass in HOME to share docker.config and allow
 ~/-relative paths to work.
fi
i=$#
while [$i -gt 0]; do
 arg=$1
 i=$((i - 1))
 shift

 case "$arg" in
 -f|--file)
 value=$1
 i=$((i - 1))
 shift
 set -- "$@" "$arg" "$value"

 file_dir=$(realpath "$(dirname "$value")")
 VOLUMES="$VOLUMES -v $file_dir:$file_dir"
 ;;
 *) set -- "$@" "$arg" ;;
 esac
done

Setup environment variables for compose config and context
ENV_OPTIONS=$(printenv | sed -E "/^PATH=.*;/d; s/^/-e /g; s/=.*/;/g; s/\\n/ /g")

Only allocate tty if we detect one
if [-t 0] && [-t 1]; then
 DOCKER_RUN_OPTIONS="$DOCKER_RUN_OPTIONS -t"
fi

Always set -i to support piped and terminal input in run/exec
DOCKER_RUN_OPTIONS="$DOCKER_RUN_OPTIONS -i"

Handle usersns security
if docker info --format '{{json .SecurityOptions}}' 2>/dev/null | grep -q 'name=usersns'; then
 DOCKER_RUN_OPTIONS="$DOCKER_RUN_OPTIONS --usersns=host"
fi

shellcheck disable=SC2086
exec docker run --rm $DOCKER_RUN_OPTIONS $DOCKER_ADDR $COMPOSE_OPTIONS $ENV_OPTIONS $VOLUMES -w "$(pwd)"
$IMAGE "$@"

```

2. Run the following command to make the docker - compose file an executable file:

```
sudo chmod +x /usr/local/bin/docker-compose
```

3. More detailed technical information for each component are available in the sample readme files:

- [IBM Workload Automation Server](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation Console](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation dynamic agent](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation z-centric agent](#)
- [Workload Automation FileProxy](#)

## Deploying Docker containers on IBM zCX

Before you deploy IBM Workload Automation components on an IBM zCX instance, ensure that you have:

- The IBM z/OS Management Facility (z/OSMF) up and running.
- An IBM zCX instance where you configured the `workflow_variables.properties` file (by default, located in `/usr/lpp/zcx_zos/properties`) with all the input variables listed in [Table 37: Properties for Workflow on page 303](#).

**Table 37. Properties for Workflow**

| Input Variables                  | Variable Name             | IBM z/OSMF field                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| zCX General Configuration        | ZCX_INSTALL_DIR           | Install Directory                          |
|                                  | ZCX_INSTNAME              | zCX Instance Name                          |
|                                  | ZCX_REGISTRY_DIR          | zCX Instance Registry Directory            |
|                                  | ZCX_CTRACE_NAME           | CTTRACE Member Name                        |
|                                  | ZCX_TEMP_DASD_UNIT_PARM   | Temporary DASD Unit Parm                   |
|                                  | ZCX_SAVE_PROPERTIES       | Directory for saving input properties file |
|                                  | ZCX_UNIQUE_JOB NAMES      | Use unique job names for submitted jobs    |
|                                  | ZCX_UNIQUE_JOBNAME_PREFIX | Job name prefix                            |
| zCX CPU and Memory Configuration | ZCX_CPUS                  | Guest CPUs                                 |
|                                  | ZCX_MEMGB                 | Guest Memory Size (in GB)                  |
|                                  | ZCX_PAGE_FRAME_SIZE       | Page Frame Size                            |
| zCX Network Configuration        | ZCX_HOSTNAME              | Hostname                                   |
|                                  | ZCX_GUESTIPV4 (DVIPa 4)   | Guest IPV4 Address                         |
|                                  | ZCX_MTU                   | MTU Size                                   |

| Input Variables                              | Variable Name                     | IBM z/OSMF field             |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
|                                              | ZCX_HOSTDNS1                      | Primary DNS Server           |
| zCX Root and Config Storage Configuration    | HLQ                               | HLQ                          |
|                                              | ZCX_ROOTMB                        | Root Size (in MB)            |
|                                              | ZCX_ROOTVOLSER                    | Root Volume Serial           |
|                                              | ZCX_CONFIGMB                      | Config Size (in MB)          |
|                                              | CX_CONFIGVOLSER                   | Config Volume Serial         |
| zCX Instance Directory Storage Configuration | ZCX_ZFS_FILESYSTEM_HLQ            | zFS Filesystem HLQ           |
|                                              | ZCX_ZFS_ENCRYPT                   | Encrypt zFS Filesystem       |
|                                              | ZCX_ZFS_VOLUME                    | zFS Filesystem Volume Serial |
|                                              | ZCX_ZFS_PRIMARY_MEGABYTES         | Primary Megabytes            |
|                                              | ZCX_ZFS_SECONDARY_MEGABYTES       | Secondary Megabytes          |
| zCX Swap Data Storage Configuration          | ZCX_CREATE_SWAP                   | Create Swap Data Volume      |
|                                              | ZCX_SWAPMB                        | Swap Data Size (in MB)       |
|                                              | ZCX_SWAP_COUNT                    | Swap Data Volume Count       |
|                                              | ZCX_SWAPVOLSER                    | Swap Data Volume Serial      |
| zCX User Data Storage Configuration          | ZCX_DATAMB                        | User Data Size (in MB)       |
|                                              | ZCX_DATA_COUNT                    | User Data Volume Count       |
|                                              | ZCX_DATAVOLSER                    | User Data Volume Serial      |
| zCX Diagnostics Data Storage Configuration   | ZCX_DLOGSMB                       | Dlogs Data Size (in MB)      |
|                                              | ZCX_DLOGS_COUNT                   | Dlogs Data Volume Count      |
|                                              | ZCX_DLOGSVOLSER                   | Dlogs Data Volume Serial     |
| zCX Docker Configuration                     | ZCX_DOCKER_LOGLEVEL               | Docker Daemon Logging Level  |
|                                              | ZCX_DOCKER_LOGDRIVER              | Docker Logging Driver        |
|                                              | ZCX_SECURE_DOCKER_REGISTRY_ENABLE | Secure Docker Registry       |
| zCX Proxy Configuration                      | ZCX_CONFIGURE_PROXY               | Configure Proxy Server       |
| zCX Docker User Management Configuration     | ZCX_DOCKER_ADMIN                  | Docker Admin User ID         |
|                                              | ZCX_DOCKER_ADMIN_SSH_KEY          | Docker Admin SSH Key         |
|                                              | ZCX_SSHD_LDAP_ENABLE              | Enable LDAP Authentication   |



| Input Variables        | Variable Name            | IBM z/OSMF field                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
|                        | ZCX_SSHD_LDAP_ENABLE_TLS | Enable LDAP Client TLS Authentication |
| zCX ILMT Configuration | ZCX_ILMT_ENABLE          | Enable ILMT services                  |

To deploy the IBM Z Workload Scheduler containers to the IBM zCX instance, perform the following procedure:

1. Start the IBM zCX instance as follows:

- a. From z/OSMF, copy the command provided in the last step of the workflow output. The command looks like the following example:

```
S GLZ,JOBNAM=<ZCX_INSTNAME>,CONF='<ZCX_REGISTRY_DIR>/start.json'
```

where `<ZCX_INSTNAME>` and `<ZCX_REGISTRY_DIR>` are the variables that you set in `workflow_variables.properties`.

- b. Log in to your z/OS system, and from the ISPF Primary Option Menu panel issue the `SDSF` command.

The SDSF menu opens.

- c. Issue the `ST` command. The SDSF STATUS DISPLAY panel opens.
- d. Issue the command `/` to display the SYSTEM COMMAND EXTENSION panel.
- e. From the command line, enter the command that you copied from the z/OSMF workflow output.

You are returned to the SDSF STATUS DISPLAY, where `<ZCX_INSTNAME>` is added to the list of jobs as in EXECUTION.

- f. When the job starts processing, the following message is stored in the job' SYSPRINT log showing that the zCX instance is up and running on the indicated port and Dynamic Virtual IP address (DVIPA):

```
Please Connect to IBM z/OS Container Extensions Docker CLI via your SSH client using port
<port_number>.
The server is listening on: <ZCX_GUESTIPV4>
```

2. Log in to the zCX instance:

- a. From the ISPF command shell of your z/OS system, access the UNIX interface by issuing the command: `omvs`
- b. From the command line issue the command:

```
ssh -i <keydir_path>/ssh/id_rsa -p <port_number> admin@<ZCX_GUESTIPV4>
```

where:

**<keydir\_path>**

Path where the `<ZCX_DOCKER_ADMIN_SSH_KEY>` that you set in `workflow_variables.properties` is stored.

**<port\_number>**

Port indicated by the message stored in the job' SYSPRINT log.

**<ZCX\_GUESTIPV4>**

Value set for the corresponding variable in `workflow_variables.properties`

- c. At first logon, a warning message about the authenticity of the host is displayed. This is an expected ssh behavior, enter `yes`.

The following message is displayed:

```
Welcome to the IBM z/OS Container Extensions (IBM zCX) shell
that provides access to Docker commands.
```

You are now logged in to the zCX instance. You can start importing and deploying containers.

To import the IBM Z Workload Scheduler containers into the zCX instance, perform the following steps:

1. From the SDSF STATUS DISPLAY panel, enable the FTP process to the zCX instance by issuing the command:

```
/S FTPSERVE
```

2. To perform an SFTP, from your ssh session issue the command:

```
sftp -i <keydir_path>/.ssh/id_rsa -P <port_number> admin@<ZCX_GUESTIPV4>
```

where:

**<keydir\_path>**

Path where the `<ZCX_DOCKER_ADMIN_SSH_KEY>` that you set in `workflow_variables.properties` is stored.

**<port\_number>**

Port indicated by the message stored in the job' SYSPRINT log.

**<ZCX\_GUESTIPV4>**

Value set for the corresponding variable in `workflow_variables.properties`

The message `Connected to <ZCX_GUESTIPV4>` is displayed.

3. Import the IBM Z Workload Scheduler container by issuing the command:

```
put <container_name>.tar /tmp
```

The message `Uploading <container_name>.tar to /tmp/<container_name>.tar` is displayed.

After importing and deploying the containers, to access the container shell and run IBM Z Workload Scheduler commands see [Accessing the Docker containers on page 307](#).

## Deploying containers with Docker

This topic describes how to deploy the current version of IBM Workload Automation by using Docker containers.

### About this task

The following Docker containers are available:

- IBM Workload Automation Console, containing the Dynamic Workload Console image for UNIX, Windows, Linux on Z operating systems, and the IBM z/OS Container Extensions (zCX) feature.
- IBM Workload Automation dynamic agent and the image of the agent with the machine learning engine, containing the Agent image for UNIX, Windows, Linux on Z operating systems. and the IBM z/OS Container Extensions (zCX) feature.
- IBM Workload Automation z-centric agent, containing the Agent image for UNIX, Windows, Linux on Z operating systems. and the IBM z/OS Container Extensions (zCX) feature.

Each container package includes also a `docker-compose.yml` file to configure your installation.

You can choose to deploy all product containers with a single command, or you can deploy each product component container individually.

### Deploying all product component containers with a single command

The following readme file contains all the steps required to deploy all product components at the same time:

[IBM Workload Automation](#)

### Deploying each product component container individually

If you want to install server, console and agent containers individually, see the related readme files :

- [IBM Workload Automation Server](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation Console](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation dynamic agent](#)
- [IBM Workload Automation z-centric agent](#)
- [Workload Automation FileProxy](#)



**Note:** The database is always external to the Docker engine and is not available as a container



**Note:** When deploying the server (master domain manager) container, the database schema is automatically created at the container start. If you are planning to install both the IBM Workload Automation server master domain manager and backup master domain manager, ensure that you run the command for one component at a time. To avoid database conflicts, start the second component only when the first component has completed successfully.

## Accessing the Docker containers

This topic shows you how to access the container shell and run IBM Workload Automation commands.

To check the container status and run IBM Workload Automation commands, you need to access the containers as described below:

1. Obtain the container ID by running the following command: `docker ps`

An output similar to the following one is returned:

| CONTAINER ID | IMAGE | NAMES      | ..... | ..... |
|--------------|-------|------------|-------|-------|
| b02459af2b9c | ..... | wa-console | ..... | ..... |

2. Access the Docker container by running the following command: `docker exec -it <container_id> /bin/bash`

Where

***container\_id***

Is the ID of the container obtained with the command explained in the first step, for example **b02459af2b9c**.

## Creating a Docker image to run IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agents

Quickly create a Docker image to run IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agents.

You can run IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agents in a Docker container that you use to run jobs remotely, for example to call REST APIs or database stored procedures, or to run jobs within the container itself.

To create a Docker container, you are provided with step-by-step instructions and the latest versions of the required samples on GitHub [here](#). Follow the instructions to create a Docker container to run jobs remotely, or use it as base image to add the applications to be run with the agent to other images, or customize the samples to best meet your requirements.

## Chapter 13. Upgrading the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent

Upgrading IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (also known as z-centric agent) from version 9.4.x or 9.5.x to 10.2.x.

Before beginning the upgrade procedure ensure that you have the required authorization roles, as described in [Authorization roles for running the twsinst script on page 285](#).

### Coexistence with previous versions

The current version of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent (z-centric) can be installed on any workstation containing an earlier version, provided that the `TWS_user`, **JobManager** port, and installation path are different from those of the previous versions.

### Upgrading notes

Before upgrading the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent, ensure that there are no jobs running on the agent.

If you are upgrading IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent from an installation where you did not install the dynamic capabilities, you cannot add them during the upgrade process. To add them, perform the procedure described in the following section:

- [Enabling dynamic capabilities after installation or upgrade on page 298](#)

When the upgrade procedure is successful, it is not possible to roll back to the previous version. Rollback is possible only for upgrades that fail.

### Upgrading using twsinst

Use **twsinst** to perform a direct upgrade of IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent by satisfying the following objectives:

#### **Save time, disk space, and RAM when upgrading the product**

It saves disk space and RAM because it is not Java-based.

#### **Use a very simple command**

It consists of a single line command.

#### **Manage both UNIX™ and Windows™ operating system workstations**

It runs both on UNIX™ and Windows™ agents.

For a list of the supported operating systems and requirements, see [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#).

For detailed upgrade steps, see *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

### Examples

To upgrade the agent installed for the user `TWS_user` in the user home directory that does not have the dynamic scheduling capabilities and the Java™ runtime to run job types with advanced options, run the following command:

```
./twsinst -update -uname TWS_user
```

## The twsinst log files

### About this task

The twsinst log file name is:

#### On Windows operating systems:

```
<TWS_INST_DIR>\logs\twsinst_operating_system_TWS_user^version_number.log
```

Where:

##### ***TWS\_INST\_DIR***

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default installation directory is C :  
\Program Files\IBM\TWA\_TWS\_user.

##### ***operating\_system***

The operating system.

##### ***TWS\_user***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler was installed, that you supplied during the installation process.

#### On UNIX operating systems:

```
<TWS_INST_DIR>/TWSDATA/installation/logs/
twsinst_operating_system_TWS_user^product_version_number.log
```

Where:

##### ***TWS\_INST\_DIR***

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default installation directory is /opt/  
IBM/TWA\_TWS\_user.

##### ***operating\_system***

The operating system.

##### ***TWS\_user***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler was installed, that you supplied during the installation process.

## Enabling dynamic capabilities after upgrade

To enable dynamic scheduling after you upgraded the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent without enabling it, see [Enabling dynamic capabilities after installation or upgrade on page 298](#).

## Chapter 14. Uninstalling the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent

Uninstalling the z/centric agent does not remove the files created after the agent was installed, nor files that are open at the time of uninstallation. If you do not need these files, remove them manually. If you intend to reinstall and therefore need the files, make a backup before starting the installation process.

Before beginning the uninstallation procedure, ensure that you have the required authorization roles as described in [Authorization roles for running the twsinst script on page 285](#).

### Uninstalling the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent using the twsinst script

Depending on your operating system, perform the following steps to uninstall the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent by using the twsinst script:

- Windows™ operating systems:
  1. Ensure that all IBM Workload Scheduler processes and services are stopped, and that there are no active or pending jobs.
  2. Log on as administrator on the workstation where you want to uninstall the product.
  3. **twsinst** for Windows™ operating systems is a Visual Basic Script (VBS) that you can run in CScript and WScript mode, from the *installation\_dir*\TWS directory, run the twsinst script as follows:

```
cscript twsinst -uninst -uname user_name [-wait minutes]
[-domain domain_name] [-lang lang_id]
[-work_dir working_dir]
```

The uninstallation is performed in the language of the locale and not the language set during the installation phase. If you want to uninstall agents in a language other than the locale of the computer, run the **twsinst** script from the */installation\_dir*/TWS (for example, /home/user1/TWS) as follows:

```
cscript twsinst -uninst -uname user_name -lang language
```

where *language* is the language set during the uninstallation.

- UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems:
  1. Ensure that all processes and services are stopped, and that there are no active or pending jobs. For information about stopping the processes and services, see *Administration Guide*.
  2. Log on as root and change your directory to */installation\_dir*/TWS (for example: /home/user1/TWS where user1 is the name of IBM Workload Scheduler user.)
  3. From the TWS directory, run the twsinst script as follows:

```
twsinst -uninst -uname user_name [-wait minutes]
[-lang lang_id] [-work_dir working_dir]
```

The uninstallation is performed in the language of the locale and not the language set during the installation phase. If you want to uninstall agents in a language other than the locale of the computer, run the **twsinst** script from the */installation\_dir*/TWS (for example, /home/user1/TWS) as follows:

```
./twsinst -uninst -uname user_name -lang language
```

where *language* is the language set during the uninstallation.

**-uninst**

Uninstalls the agent

**-uname *user\_name***

The name of the user for which the agent is uninstalled. This user name is not to be confused with the user performing the installation logged on as **root** on UNIX™ and Linux™, and as **administrator** on Windows™ operating systems.

**-wait *minutes***

The number of minutes that the product waits for jobs that are running to complete before starting the uninstallation. If the jobs do not complete during this interval the uninstallation stops and an error message is displayed. Valid values are integers or **-1** for the product to wait indefinitely. The default is **60** minutes.

**-domain *domain\_name***

Windows™ operating systems only. The domain name of the IBM Workload Scheduler user. The default is the name of the workstation on which you are uninstalling the product.

**-lang *lang\_id***

The language in which the `twinsinst` messages are displayed. If not specified, the system LANG is used. If the related catalog is missing, the default C language catalog is used.



**Note:** The **-lang** option is not to be confused with the IBM Workload Scheduler supported language packs.

**-work\_dir *working\_dir***

The temporary directory used for the installation process files deployment.

**On Windows™ operating systems:**

If you specify a path that contains blanks, enclose it in double quotation marks. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to `%temp%\TWA\tws93`, where `%temp%` is the temporary directory of the operating system.

**On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems:**

The path cannot contain blanks. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to `/tmp/TWA/tws93`.

The following is an example of a `twinsinst` script that uninstalls the IBM Workload Scheduler agent, originally installed for user named **TWS\_user**:

**On Windows™ operating systems:**

```
twinsinst -uninst -uname TWS_user
```

**On UNIX™ and Linux™ operating systems:**

```
./twinsinst -uninst -uname TWS_user
```



## The twsinst log files

### About this task

The twsinst log file name is:

#### On Windows operating systems:

```
<TWS_INST_DIR>\logs\twsinst_operating_system_TWS_user^version_number.log
```

Where:

##### ***TWS\_INST\_DIR***

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default installation directory is C :  
 \Program Files\IBM\TWA\_TWS\_user.

##### ***operating\_system***

The operating system.

##### ***TWS\_user***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler was installed, that you supplied during the installation process.

#### On UNIX operating systems:

```
<TWS_INST_DIR>/TWSDATA/installation/logs/
twsinst_operating_system_TWS_user^product_version_number.log
```

Where:

##### ***TWS\_INST\_DIR***

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default installation directory is /opt/  
 IBM/TWA\_TWS\_user.

##### ***operating\_system***

The operating system.

##### ***TWS\_user***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler was installed, that you supplied during the installation process.

# Chapter 15. Troubleshooting and maintaining installation, upgrade, and uninstallation

## Example

Return codes that you can receive when you are installing, upgrading, restoring, or uninstalling agents. To analyze them and take corrective actions, run the following steps:

### On Windows operating systems

1. Display the operation completion return code, by using the following command:

```
echo %ERRORLEVEL%
```

2. Analyze the following table to verify how the operation completed:

**Table 38. Windows operating system agent return codes**

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                                   | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0          | Success: The operation completed successfully without any warnings or errors.                                                 | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 1          | Generic failure                                                                                                               | Check the messages that are displayed on the screen by the script. Correct the error and rerun the operation.<br><br>If the error persists, search the <a href="https://www.ibm.com/support/home/">https://www.ibm.com/support/home/</a> database for a solution. |
| 2          | The installation cannot create the IBM Workload Scheduler user or assign the correct permission to it.                        | Verify the operating system policies and configuration. Verify the input values. If necessary, create the user manually before you run the installation.                                                                                                          |
| 3          | The password is not correct or the installation cannot verify it.                                                             | Verify the operating system policies and configuration. Verify the input values.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 4          | The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory is not empty. You specified as installation folder a directory that exists. | Empty it or specify a different directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 5          | An error occurred checking the IBM Workload Scheduler prerequisites on the workstation.                                       | See the System Requirements Document at <a href="#">IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements</a> .                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6          | The IBM Workload Scheduler registry is corrupted.                                                                             | Use the recovInstReg option to recover the registry. Then, rerun the operation.                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Error Code | Description                                                                                     | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7          | The upgrade or restore operation cannot retrieve the information from the configuration files.  | Check that the previous installation and the <code>localopts</code> , the <code>globalopts</code> , the <code>ita.ini</code> , and the <code>JobManager.ini</code> files are not corrupted. Correct the errors and try again the operation. |
| 8          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are jobs that are running. | Stop the jobs that are running or wait for these jobs to complete. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 9          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are files that are locked. | Stop all the processes that are running and close all the activities that can block the installation path. Restart the operation.                                                                                                           |
| 10         | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are command lines opened.  | Close the command lines. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**On UNIX and Linux operating systems:**

1. Display the installation completion return code, by using the following command:

```
echo $?
```

2. Analyze the following table to verify how the installation completed:

**Table 39. UNIX or Linux operating system agent return codes**

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                          | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0          | Success: The installation completed successfully without any warnings or errors.                                     | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 1          | Generic failure.                                                                                                     | Check the messages that are displayed on the video by the script. Correct the error and rerun the operation.<br><br>If the error persists, search the <a href="https://www.ibm.com/support/home/">https://www.ibm.com/support/home/</a> database for a solution. |
| 2          | The installation did not find the IBM Workload Scheduler user or its home directory. The IBM Workload Scheduler user | Verify the operating system definition of the IBM Workload Scheduler user.                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                                   | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|            | that you specified either does not exist or does not have an associated home directory.                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3          | Not applicable                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 4          | The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory is not empty. You specified as installation folder a directory that exists. | Empty it or specify a different directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 5          | An error occurred checking the IBM Workload Scheduler prerequisites on the workstation.                                       | See the System Requirements Document at <a href="#">IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements</a> .                                                                                                                               |
| 6          | The IBM Workload Scheduler registry is corrupted.                                                                             | Use the <code>recovInstReg</code> option to recover the registry. Then, rerun the operation.                                                                                                                                                |
| 7          | The upgrade or restore operation cannot retrieve the information from the configuration files.                                | Check that the previous installation and the <code>localopts</code> , the <code>globalopts</code> , the <code>ita.ini</code> , and the <code>JobManager.ini</code> files are not corrupted. Correct the errors and try again the operation. |
| 8          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are jobs that are running.                               | Stop the jobs that are running or wait for these jobs to complete. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 9          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are files that are locked.                               | Stop all the processes that are running and close all the activities that can block the installation path. Restart the operation.                                                                                                           |
| 10         | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are command lines opened.                                | Close the command lines. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

## Analyzing return codes for agent installation, upgrade, restore, and uninstallation

Check how your operation completed by analyzing the return codes that are issued by `twinst`.

Return codes that you can receive when you are installing, upgrading, restoring, or uninstalling agents. To analyze them and take corrective actions, run the following steps:

### On Windows operating systems

1. Display the operation completion return code, by using the following command:

```
echo %ERRORLEVEL%
```

2. Analyze the following table to verify how the operation completed:

**Table 40. Windows operating system agent return codes**

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                                   | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0          | Success: The operation completed successfully without any warnings or errors.                                                 | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 1          | Generic failure                                                                                                               | Check the messages that are displayed on the screen by the script. Correct the error and rerun the operation.<br><br>If the error persists, search the <a href="https://www.ibm.com/support/home/">https://www.ibm.com/support/home/</a> database for a solution. |
| 2          | The installation cannot create the IBM Workload Scheduler user or assign the correct permission to it.                        | Verify the operating system policies and configuration. Verify the input values. If necessary, create the user manually before you run the installation.                                                                                                          |
| 3          | The password is not correct or the installation cannot verify it.                                                             | Verify the operating system policies and configuration. Verify the input values.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 4          | The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory is not empty. You specified as installation folder a directory that exists. | Empty it or specify a different directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 5          | An error occurred checking the IBM Workload Scheduler prerequisites on the workstation.                                       | See the System Requirements Document at <a href="#">IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements</a> .                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6          | The IBM Workload Scheduler registry is corrupted.                                                                             | Use the <code>recovInstReg</code> option to recover the registry. Then, rerun the operation.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 7          | The upgrade or restore operation cannot retrieve the information from the configuration files.                                | Check that the previous installation and the <code>localopts</code> , the <code>globalopts</code> , the <code>ita.ini</code> , and the <code>JobManager.ini</code> files are not corrupted. Correct the errors and try again the operation.                       |
| 8          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are jobs that are running.                               | Stop the jobs that are running or wait for these jobs to complete. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 9          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are files that are locked.                               | Stop all the processes that are running and close all the activities that can                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Error Code | Description                                                                                    | User action                                         |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|            |                                                                                                | block the installation path. Restart the operation. |
| 10         | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are command lines opened. | Close the command lines. Restart the operation.     |

**On UNIX and Linux operating systems:**

1. Display the installation completion return code, by using the following command:

```
echo $?
```

2. Analyze the following table to verify how the installation completed:

**Table 41. UNIX or Linux operating system agent return codes**

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                  | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0          | Success: The installation completed successfully without any warnings or errors.                                                                                                                             | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 1          | Generic failure.                                                                                                                                                                                             | Check the messages that are displayed on the video by the script. Correct the error and rerun the operation.<br><br>If the error persists, search the <a href="https://www.ibm.com/support/home/">https://www.ibm.com/support/home/</a> database for a solution. |
| 2          | The installation did not find the IBM Workload Scheduler user or its home directory. The IBM Workload Scheduler user that you specified either does not exist or does not have an associated home directory. | Verify the operating system definition of the IBM Workload Scheduler user.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 3          | Not applicable                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 4          | The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory is not empty. You specified as installation folder a directory that exists.                                                                                | Empty it or specify a different directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 5          | An error occurred checking the IBM Workload Scheduler prerequisites on the workstation.                                                                                                                      | See the System Requirements Document at <a href="#">IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements</a> .                                                                                                                                                    |

| Error Code | Description                                                                                     | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6          | The IBM Workload Scheduler registry is corrupted.                                               | Use the <code>recovInstReg</code> option to recover the registry. Then, rerun the operation.                                                                                                                                                |
| 7          | The upgrade or restore operation cannot retrieve the information from the configuration files.  | Check that the previous installation and the <code>localopts</code> , the <code>globalopts</code> , the <code>ita.ini</code> , and the <code>JobManager.ini</code> files are not corrupted. Correct the errors and try again the operation. |
| 8          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are jobs that are running. | Stop the jobs that are running or wait for these jobs to complete. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 9          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are files that are locked. | Stop all the processes that are running and close all the activities that can block the installation path. Restart the operation.                                                                                                           |
| 10         | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are command lines opened.  | Close the command lines. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

## Part VII. Installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent on IBM i systems

To install and use the z/centric agent on IBM i systems, ensure that you have a supported version of the IBM i operating system. For a detailed list of the supported operating systems, see the [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#).



## Chapter 16. Installing agents on IBM i systems

Learn how to install agents on IBM i systems.

### About this task

To install dynamic agents and z-centric agents on IBM i systems, use the `twsinst` installation script.

You can either use the default **QSECOFR** user or create a new user with **ALLOBJ** authority. If you plan to use a user different from **QSECOFR**, create the user before the installation and assign it the ALLOBJ authority.

For dynamic agents, you can also use a user **different from QSECOFR** with no specific authority. Note that only the user who performs the installation can use the agent.

Verify that the user profile used as **TWSUser** is not a member of a group profile. Set the group profile associated with the **TWSUser** to *\*NONE*. If the **TWSUser** is a member of a group, the installation might fail.

If you plan to enable FIPS, ensure your certificates meet FIPS standards before getting started.

To ensure FIPS compliance, all IBM® Workload Scheduler components must be at version 10.2.5 or later, certificates must employ at least a robust 2K RSA key and use encryption algorithms different from MD5-RSA and SHA1-RSA.

To install the agents, perform the following steps:

1. Sign on as the user of your choice, either **QSECOFR** or an **existing user with ALLOBJ authority**. If you use a user different from **QSECOFR**, specify the `allobjAuth` parameter to indicate that the specified user has the ALLOBJ authority. Ensure the user is existing and has ALLOBJ authority because the product does not verify that the correct authority is assigned. For more information about the `allobjAuth` parameter, see [Agent installation parameters on IBM i systems on page 323](#). Only for dynamic agents, you can also use a user different from **QSECOFR** with no specific authority.
2. Create an IBM i user profile for which the IBM Workload Scheduler agent is installed.



**Note:** The user profile is not the same as for the user that is performing the installation, unless you use a user different from **QSECOFR** with no specific authority (dynamic agents only). Instead the user profile is for the user that you specify in the `-uname username` parameter when running the `twsinst` script. For descriptions of the syntax parameters, see [Agent installation parameters on IBM i systems on page 323](#). You cannot use an existing IBM i system user profile, an application supplied user profile, or any of the following reserved IBM i user profiles:

- QDBSHR
- QDFTOWN
- QDOC
- QLPAUTO
- QLPINSTALL
- QRJE
- QSECOFR
- QSPL



- QSYS
- QTSTRQS



**Attention:** Consider that:

- If the user profile is a member of a group, the installation fails. Set the group profile that is associated with the user profile to *\*NONE*.
- If the *username* is longer than 8 characters, after the installation the agent (and the JobManager component) runs under the **QSECOFR** user instead of under the authority of the installation user. To prevent this problem, set the `PASE_USRGRP_LIMITED` environment variable to N.

3. On the IBM i system, verify that no library exists with the same name as the user profile supplied for the agent user.
4. Download the installation images from [IBM Fix Central](#).
5. To extract the agent elmage, you can use the *PASE* shell or the *AIXterm* command.

#### Using *PASE* shell:

- a. Open the *PASE* shell.
- b. Run the command "CALL QP2TERM".
- c. Locate the folder where you downloaded the agent elmage and run the command:

##### IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent

```
"unzip TWSversion_number>_IBM_I.zip"
```

##### Dynamic Agent

```
"unzip TWSversion_number>_IBM_I.zip"
```

- d. Exit from the *PASE* shell.

#### Using *AIXterm* command:

- a. Start the *Xserver* on your desktop.
- b. On the iSeries machine, open a *QSH shell* and export the display.
- c. In *QSH shell*, go to the directory */QopenSys* and run the command "aixterm -sb".
- d. A pop-up window is displayed on your desktop. By Using this pop-up window, unzip the *TWSversion\_number>\_IBM\_I.zip* file.

6. If your machine's primary language is other than English, carry out these steps:

- a. Add English as secondary language.
- b. Ensure that when connecting to the environment the Host Code-Page is set to 037
- c. Before starting the installation, verify that the *Qshell session* is configured correctly and type the following command in the <yourfilename> :

```
echo " key key2 " | sed 's/ *$//g' | sed 's/^ *//g'
```

- d. Run the <yourfilename>
- e. The environment is configured in the correct way if the output is: "key key2".

7. Open a *QSH shell* and run the `twsinst` script. During the installation process, the product creates an IBM i library and a job description with the same name as the user profile created in [Step 2 on page 321](#).

The installation procedure adds this library to the user profile library list of the dynamic agent user profile and sets this job description as the job description of the dynamic agent user profile. By default, the software is installed in the user's home directory.

If the installation fails to understand the cause of the error, see [Analyzing return codes for agent installation, upgrade, restore, and uninstallation on page 316](#).

After a successful installation, perform the following configuration task:

- Configuring a dynamic agent, as described in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

## Command usage and version

### Show command usage and version

```
twsinst -u | -v
```

### Install a new instance

```
twsinst -new -uname username
 -acceptlicense yes|no
 [-addjruntime true|false]
 [-agent dynamic]
 [-allObjAuth]
 [-company company_name]
 [-displayname agentname]
 [-gateway local|remote|none]
 [-gweifport gateway_eif_port]
 [-gwid gateway_id]
 [-hostname hostname]
 [-inst_dir install_dir]
 [-jimport port_number]
 [-jimportssl true|false]
 [-lang lang_id]
 [-tdwbport tdwbport_number]
 [-tdwbhostname host_name]
 [-work_dir working_dir]
```

For a description of the installation parameters and options that are related to agent on this operating system, see [Agent installation parameters on IBM i systems on page 323](#) in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

## Agent installation parameters on IBM i systems

### About this task

The parameters set when using the `twsinst` script to install dynamic and z-centric agents on IBM i systems.

#### **-acceptlicense yes|no**

Specifies whether to accept the License Agreement.

**-addjruntime *true|false***

Adds the Java™ run time to run job types with advanced options, both those types that are supplied with the product and the additional types that are implemented through the custom plug-ins. Valid values are **true** and **false**. The default for a fresh installation is **true**. Set this parameter to `true` if you use the **sslkeysfolder** and **sslpassword** parameters to define custom certificates in PEM format.

If you decided not to install Java™ run time at installation time, you can still add this feature later as it is described in Adding a feature.

**-allObjAuth**

If you are installing, upgrading, or uninstalling with a user different from the default **QSECOFR** user, this parameter specifies that the user has the required ALLOBJ authority. Ensure the user is existing and has ALLOBJ authority because the product does not verify that the correct authority is assigned. The same user must be specified when installing, upgrading or uninstalling the agent. If you are using the **QSECOFR** user, this parameter does not apply.

**-apikey**

Specifies the API key for authentication with the master domain manager. This key enables downloading certificates or JWT for communication between dynamic agent and dynamic domain manager. A random password in base64 encoding is automatically created for generating stash files. The password is stored in the `tls.sth` file. If needed, you can decrypt this password using any base64 decoder.

Obtain the string to be provided with this parameter from the Dynamic Workload Console before running the command. For more information, see the section about authenticating the command line client using API Keys in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

This parameter is **mutually exclusive** with:

- `-wauser wauser_name`
- `-wapassword wauser_password`
- `-sslkeysfolder path`
- `-sslpassword password`

and it is **required** with:

- `-tdwbhostname host_name`
- `-tdwbport tdwbport_number`

For a comprehensive list of supported combinations for this parameter and related ones, see Table 2.

**-company *company\_name***

The name of the company. The company name cannot contain blank characters. The name is shown in program headers and reports. If not specified, the default name is COMPANY.

**-displayname *display\_name***

The name to assign to the agent. The name cannot start with a number. The default is based on the host name of this computer.

If the host name starts with a number, the **-displayname** parameter must be specified.

**-enablefips *true|false***

Specify whether you want to enable FIPS. The default value is `false`. This parameter is optional.

**-gateway *local|remote|none***

Specifies whether to configure a gateway to communicate with the dynamic workload broker or not, and how it is configured. Specify *local* if the gateway is local to the dynamic agent workstation. Specify *remote* if the dynamic agent communicates through a gateway that is installed on a different dynamic agent workstation from the dynamic agent being installed. The default value is *none*, which means no gateway is configured. For information about installing with a local and remote gateway, see Example installation commands.

**-gweifport *gateway\_eif\_port***

Specifies the Job Manager Event Integration Facility (EIF) port number. The default value is **31132**. The valid range is 1 to 65535.

**-gwid *gateway\_id***

The unique identifier for the gateway. This parameter is required when you specify **-gateway *local*** and must be unique across all agents. The default gateway identifier that is assigned is **GW1**. The gateway identifier must start with either an alphabetic character or an underscore character (`_`), and it can contain only the following types of characters: alphabetic, numeric, underscores (`_`), hyphens (`-`), and periods (`.`).

Gateways can also work in parallel to mutually take over in routing communications to the agents connected to them. To enable gateways to work in parallel, all gateways must have the same *gateway\_id* assigned. This information is stored in the `JobManagerGW.ini` file, by setting the **JobManagerGWURIs** property.

**-hostname *host\_name***

The fully qualified hostname or IP address on which the agent is contacted by the dynamic workload broker.

The default is the hostname of this computer. If the hostname is a localhost, the hostname parameter must be specified.

**-inst\_dir *installation\_dir***

The directory of the IBM Workload Scheduler installation. Specify an absolute path. The path cannot contain blanks. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to the default home directory, that is, the *home/username* directory, where *username* is the value specified in the `-uname` option.

**-jimport *port\_number***

The JobManager port number used by the dynamic workload broker to connect to the dynamic agent. The default value is **31114**. The valid range is from 1 to 65535.

**-jimportssl true|false**

The JobManager port used by the dynamic workload broker to connect to the IBM Workload Scheduler dynamic agent. The port value is the value of the `ssl_port` parameter in the `ita.ini` file if **-jimportssl** is set to `true`. If set to `false`, it corresponds to the value of the **tcp\_port** parameter in the `ita.ini` file. The `ita.ini` file is located in `ITA\cpa\ita` on Windows™ systems and `ITA/cpa/ita` on UNIX™, Linux™, and IBM i systems.

Set the value to "true" if **- gateway** is set to `local`.

**For communication using SSL or HTTPS**

Set **jimportssl = true**. To communicate with the dynamic workload broker, it is recommended that you set the value to `true`. In this case, the port specified in **jimport** communicates in HTTPS.

**For communication without using SSL or through HTTP**

Set **jimportssl = false**. In this case the port specified in **jimport** communicates in HTTP.

**-lang lang\_id**

The language in which the twsinst messages are displayed. If not specified, the system LANG is used. If the related catalog is missing, the default C language catalog is used. If neither **-lang** nor LANG are used, the default codepage is set to SBCS. For a list of valid values for these variables, see the following table:

**Table 42. Valid values for -lang and LANG****parameter**

| Language                             | Value        |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| Brazilian portuguese                 | pt_BR        |
| Chinese (traditional and simplified) | zh_CN, zh_TW |
| English                              | en           |
| French                               | fr           |
| German                               | de           |
| Italian                              | it           |
| Japanese                             | ja           |
| Korean                               | ko           |
| Russian                              | ru           |
| Spanish                              | es           |



**Note:** This is the language in which the installation log is recorded and not the language of the installed engine instance. twsinst installs all languages as default.

#### **-new**

A fresh installation of the agent. Installs an agent and all supported language packs.

#### **-skip\_usercheck**

Enable this option if the authentication process within your organization is not standard, thereby disabling the default authentication option. If you specify this parameter, you must create the user manually before running the script.

#### **-skipcheckprereq**

If you specify this parameter, IBM Workload Scheduler does not scan system prerequisites before installing the agent.

For a detailed list of supported operating systems and product prerequisites, see [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#).

#### **-sslkeysfolder**

The name and path of the folder containing the certificates in PEM format. The installation program generates the keystore and truststore files using the password you specify with the **--sslpassword** parameter. If you use this parameter, ensure that the **addjruntime** parameter is set to true, because Java™ run time is required for defining custom certificates.

#### **-sslpassword**

Specify the password for the certificates automatically generated by the installation program. If you use this parameter, ensure that the **addjruntime** parameter is set to true, because Java™ run time is required for defining custom certificates.

#### **-tdwbhostname *host\_name***

The fully qualified host name of the dynamic workload broker. It is used together with the **-agent *dynamic*** and the **-tdwbport *tdwbport\_number*** parameters. This value is registered in the **ResourceAdvisorUrl** property in the JobManager .ini file. This parameter is required if you use the **wauser** and **wapassword** or the **apikey** parameters.

If you set the **-gateway** parameter to `remote`, this is the host name of the dynamic agent hosting the gateway and to which the agent you are installing will connect. This information is stored in the JobManager .ini file. For information about installing with a local and remote gateway, see Example installation commands.

#### **-tdwbport *tdwbport\_number***

The dynamic workload broker HTTP or HTTPS transport port number. It is used together with the **-agent *dynamic*** and the **-tdwbhostname *host\_name*** parameters. The valid range is from 0 to 65535. If you specify **0**, you cannot run workload dynamically. Do not specify **0** if the *-agent* value is **dynamic**. This number is registered

in the **ResourceAdvisorUrl** property in the `JobManager.ini` file. This parameter is required if you use the **wauser** and **wapassword** or the **apikey** parameters.

If you set the **-gateway** parameter to `remote`, this is the HTTP or HTTPS port number of the dynamic agent hosting the gateway and to which the agent you are installing will connect. You have specified this port with the **jimport** parameter when installing the agent hosting the gateway. For information about installing with a local and remote gateway, see Example installation commands.

#### **-thiscpu workstation**

The name of the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation of this installation. The name cannot exceed 16 characters, cannot start with a number, cannot contain spaces, and cannot be the same as the workstation name of the master domain manager. This name is registered in the `localopts` file. If not specified, the default value is the host name of the workstation.

If the host name starts with a number, **-thiscpu** parameter must be specified.

#### **-u**

Displays command usage information and exits.

#### **-uname username**

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler is installed.

If you are using the **QSECOFR** user or a user with **ALLOBJ authority**, this user name is not the same as the user performing the installation. If you are using a user **different from QSECOFR**, the user performing the installation and the user for which the agent is installed are the same.

If *username* is longer than 8 characters, after installation the agent (and the JobManager component) erroneously run under the **QSECOFR** user, instead of under the authority of the installation user. To prevent this, set the `PASE_USRGRP_LIMITED` environment variable to N.

#### **-v**

Displays the command version and exits.

#### **-wapassword wauser\_password**

One of the following passwords, defined on the master domain manager:

- The password of the user for which you have installed the master domain manager the agent is connecting to.
- The password of the user with the DISPLAY permission on the FILE named AGENT\_CERTIFICATE. This permission allows the user to download certificates or JWT. For more information about this scenario, see Downloading certificates or JWT using a different user.

Always specify the user defined on the master domain manager, also if you are installing a dynamic agent and want it to register to a dynamic domain manager. This is because the dynamic domain manager simply forwards data to and from the master domain manager.



By providing the **wauser** and **wapassword** parameters or the **apikey** parameter, you enable IBM Workload Scheduler to download and install either the certificates or the JWT already available on the master domain manager:

See also `-jwt true | false`.

Key details about this parameter:

- It is **mutually exclusive** with the `-apikey` parameter, which provides authentication using an API Key and the `-sslkeysfolder` path and `-sslpassword` password parameters.
- It **always requires** the `tdwbport` and `-tdwbhostname host_name` parameters.

You can optionally encrypt the password using the secure script. For more information, see [Optional password encryption - secure script on page 287](#).

For further information about how to automatically download and deploy certificates in PEM format from the master domain manager to dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents, see [Certificates download to dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents - AgentCertificateDownloader script](#).

This parameter always requires the `tdwbport` and `-tdwbhostname host_name` parameters.

For a comprehensive list of supported combinations for this parameter and related ones, see Table 2.

#### **-wauser wauser\_name**

One of the following users, defined on the master domain manager:

- The user for which you have installed the master domain manager the agent is connecting to.
- The user with the DISPLAY permission on the FILE named AGENT\_CERTIFICATE. This permission allows the user to download certificates or JWT. For more information about this scenario, see [Downloading certificates or JWT using a different user](#).

Always specify the user defined on the master domain manager, also if you are installing a dynamic agent and want it to register to a dynamic domain manager. This is because the dynamic domain manager simply forwards data to and from the master domain manager.

By providing the **wauser** and **wapassword** parameters or the **apikey** parameter, you enable IBM Workload Scheduler to download and install either the certificates or the JWT already available on the master domain manager:

- To download certificates, set the **jwt** parameter to `false`
- To download JWT, set the **jwt** parameter to `true`. For more information, see `-jwt true | false`.

Key details about this parameter:

- It is **mutually exclusive** with the `-apikey` parameter, which provides authentication using an API Key and the `-sslkeysfolder` path and `-sslpassword` password parameters.
- It **always requires** the `tdwbport` and `tdwbhostname` `host_name` parameters.

For further information about how to automatically download and deploy certificates in PEM format from the master domain manager to dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents, see Certificates download to dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents - AgentCertificateDownloader script.

For a comprehensive list of supported combinations for this parameter and related ones, see Table 2.

#### **-work\_dir** *working\_dir*

The temporary directory used for the IBM Workload Scheduler installation process files deployment. The path cannot contain blanks. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to `/tmp/TWA/twsversion_number>`.

## Example installation of an agent on IBM i systems

### **About this task**

The following example shows the syntax used when using the **twsinst** script to install a new instance of the agent on an IBM i system.

```
./twsinst -new
-uname TWS_user
-acceptlicense yes
-hostname thishostname.mycompany.com
-jmport 31114
-tdwbport 41114
-tdwbhostname mainbroker.mycompany.com
-work_dir "/tmp/TWA/tws93"
```

## Chapter 17. Upgrading agents on IBM i systems

How to upgrade agents on IBM i systems.

### About this task

You can upgrade the agent on an IBM i system by using the `twsinst` installation script.

To upgrade an IBM Workload Scheduler agent, perform the following steps:

1. Sign on as the user who performed the installation, either **QSECOFR** or an existing user with ALLOBJ authority. If you installed with a user different from **QSECOFR**, use the same user who performed the installation and specify the **allObjAuth** parameter to indicate that the user has the ALLOBJ authority. For more information about this parameter, see [Agent installation parameters on IBM i systems on page 323](#). You can find the name of the profile used to perform the installation in the `instUser` located in the `agent_data_dir/installation/instInfo`.
2. Download the installation images from [IBM Fix Central](#).
3. If you downloaded the elimages, to extract the package, use the *PASE* shell or the *AIXterm* command.

#### Using *PASE* shell:

- a. Open the *PASE* shell.
- b. Run the command "CALL QP2TERM".
- c. Locate the folder where you downloaded the elimages and run the command:

```
"unzip TWS1025_IBM_1.zip"
```

- d. Exit from the *PASE* shell.

#### Using *AIXterm* command:

- a. Start the *Xserver* on your desktop.
- b. On the iSeries machine, open a *QSH shell* and export the display.
- c. In *QSH shell*, go to the directory `/QopenSys` and run the command "aixterm -sb".
- d. A pop-up window is displayed on your desktop. By Using this pop-up window, extract the file `TWS1025_IBM_1.zip`.

4. Open a *QSH shell* and run the **twsinst** script.

The installation procedure replaces the library to the user profile library list of the dynamic agent user profile and sets this job description as the job description of the dynamic agent user profile. The upgrade process replaces the new version of the agent in the directory where the old agent is installed.

If the operation fails to understand the cause of the error, see [Analyzing return codes for agent installation, upgrade, restore, and uninstallation on page 316](#).

### Command usage and version

#### Show command usage and version

```
twsinst -u | -v
```

## Upgrade an instance

```
./twinst -update -uname user_name
-acceptlicense yes|no
[-addjruntime true]
[-allObjAuth]
[-create_link]
[-hostname host_name]
[-inst_dir install_dir]
[-jimport port_number]
[-jimportssl boolean]
[-lang lang-id]
[-reset_perm]
[-recovInstReg true]
[-skip_usercheck]
[-tdwbhostname host_name]
[-tdwbport port_number]
[-wait minutes]
[-work_dir working_dir]
```

For a description of the installation parameters and options that are related to agent on this operating system, see [Agent upgrade parameters on IBM i systems on page 332](#).

## Agent upgrade parameters on IBM i systems

### About this task

The parameters set when using the **twinst** script to upgrade a dynamic agent on IBM i systems.

#### **-acceptlicense yes|no**

Specifies whether to accept the License Agreement.

#### **-addjruntime true**

Adds the Java™ run time to run job types with advanced options to the agent. The run time environment is used to run application job plug-ins on the agent and to enable the capability to run remotely, from the agent, the dynamic workload broker resource command on the server.

By default, if the Java run time was already installed on the agent, it will be upgraded to the new version.

If the Java run time was not installed on the agent, it will not be installed during the upgrade, unless you specify

```
-addjruntime true.
```

If you decided not to install Java™ run time when you upgrade, you can still add this feature later. For details about how to add a feature, see *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Planning and installation*.

#### **-allObjAuth**

If you are installing, upgrading, or uninstalling with a user different from the default **QSECOFR** user, this parameter specifies that the user has the required ALLOBJ authority. Ensure the user is existing and has ALLOBJ authority because the product does not verify that the correct authority is assigned. The same user must be specified when installing, upgrading or uninstalling the agent. If you are using the **QSECOFR** user, this parameter does not apply.

**-create\_link**

Create the **symlink** between `/usr/bin/at` and `<install_dir>/TWS/bin/at`. See Table 1 for more information.

**-displayname**

The name to assign to the agent. The default is the host name of this computer.

**-inst\_dir *installation\_dir***

The directory of the IBM Workload Scheduler installation.



**Note:** The path cannot contain blanks. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to the default home directory, that is, the `user_home\user_name` directory.

**-jimport *port\_number***

The JobManager port number used by the dynamic workload broker to connect to the IBM Workload Scheduler dynamic agent. The default value is **31114**. The valid range is from 1 to 65535.

**-jimportssl *true|false***

The JobManager port used by the dynamic workload broker to connect to the IBM Workload Scheduler dynamic agent. This number is registered in the `ita.ini` file located in the `ITA/cpa/ita` directory.

**For communication using SSL or HTTPS**

Set **jimportssl = true**. To communicate with the dynamic workload broker, it is recommended that you set the value to **true**. If the value is set to **true**, the port specified in **jimport** communicates in HTTPS.

**For communication without using SSL, or through HTTP**

Set **jimportssl = false**. If the value is set to **false**, the port specified in **jimport** communicates in HTTP.

**-lang *lang\_id***

The language in which the `twinst` messages are displayed. If not specified, the system LANG is used. If the related catalog is missing, the default C language catalog is used.



**Note:** This is the language in which the installation log is recorded, and not the language of the installed engine instance. The `twinst` script installs all languages by default.

**-recovInstReg *true***

To re-create the registry files. Specify it if you have tried to upgrade a stand-alone, fault-tolerant agent (an agent that is not shared with other components or does not have the connector feature) and you received an error message that states that an instance of IBM Workload Scheduler cannot be found, this can be caused by a corrupt registry file. See Upgrading when there are corrupt registry files.

**-skip\_usercheck**

Enable this option if the authentication process within your organization is not standard, thereby disabling the default authentication option. If you specify this parameter, you must create the user manually before running the script.

**-skipcheckprereq**

If you specify this parameter, IBM Workload Scheduler does not scan system prerequisites before upgrading the agent.

For a detailed list of supported operating systems and product prerequisites, see [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#).

**-tdwbhostname *host\_name***

The dynamic workload broker fully qualified host name. It is used together with the **-tdwbport *tdwbport\_number*** parameter. It adds and starts the capabilities to run workload dynamically to IBM Workload Scheduler. This value is registered in the **ResourceAdvisorUrl** property in the JobManager .ini file.

**-tdwbport *tdwbport\_number***

The dynamic workload broker HTTP or HTTPS port number used to add dynamic scheduling capabilities to your distributed or end-to-end environment. It is used together with the **-tdwbhostname *host\_name*** parameter. This number is registered in the ResourceAdvisorUrl property in the JobManager .ini file. Specify a nonzero value to add dynamic capability. The valid range is 0 to 65535.

**-uname *user\_name***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler is being updated. The software is updated in this user's home directory. This user name is not to be confused with the user performing the upgrade.



**Note:** This user name is not the same as the user performing the installation logged on as QSECOFR.

**-update**

Upgrades an existing agent that was installed using **twinst**.

**-wait *minutes***

The number of minutes that the product waits for jobs that are running to complete before starting the upgrade. If the jobs do not complete during this interval the upgrade does not proceed and an error message is displayed. Valid values are integers or **-1** for the product to wait indefinitely. The default is **60** minutes.

**-work\_dir *working\_dir***

The temporary directory used for the IBM Workload Scheduler installation process files deployment. The path cannot contain blanks. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to /tmp/TWA/tws1025.

## Example upgrade of an agent on IBM i systems

### About this task

The following example shows the syntax used when using the **twsinst** script to upgrade an instance of the agent on IBM i system.

```
./twsinst -update
-uname TWS_user
-allObjAuth
-acceptlicense yes

-work_dir "/tmp/TWA/tws1025"
```

## Chapter 18. Uninstalling agents on IBM i systems

How to uninstall dynamic and z-centric agents on IBM i systems.

To uninstall the agents on an IBM i system by using the twsinst script, perform the following steps:

1. Ensure that all IBM Workload Scheduler processes and services are stopped, and that there are no active or pending jobs. For information about stopping the processes and services, see the section about starting and stopping Application server in *Administration Guide*.
2. Sign on as the user who performed the installation, either **QSECOFR** or an existing user with ALLOBJ authority. If you installed with a user different from **QSECOFR**, use the same user who performed the installation and specify the **allObjAuth** parameter to indicate that the user has the ALLOBJ authority. For more information about this parameter, see [Agent installation parameters on IBM i systems on page 323](#). You can find the name of the profile used to perform the installation in the `instUser` located in the `agent_data_dir/installation/instInfo`.
3.  **Note:** Only for dynamic agents, you have the option of installing using a user different from **QSECOFR** and with no specific authorizations. In this case, specify the same user who performed the installation.
4. Change your directory to `/installation_dir/TWS`. For example: `/home/user1/TWS` where user1 is the name of IBM Workload Scheduler user.
5. From the `Installation directory\TWS` directory, run the twsinst script as follows:

```
twsinst -uninst -allObjAuth -uname username
[-wait minutes] [-lang lang_id] [-work_dir working_dir]
```

### **-uninst**

Uninstalls IBM Workload Scheduler.

### **uname username**

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler is uninstalled. This user name is not the same as the user performing the installation.

### **-allObjAuth**

If you are installing, upgrading, or uninstalling with a user different from the default **QSECOFR** user, this parameter specifies that the user has the required ALLOBJ authority. Ensure the user is existing and has ALLOBJ authority because the product does not verify that the correct authority is assigned. The same user must be specified when installing, upgrading or uninstalling the agent. If you are using the **QSECOFR** user, this parameter does not apply.

### **-uname username**

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler is uninstalled.

If you are using the **QSECOFR** user or a user with **ALLOBJ authority**, this user name is not the same as the user performing the installation. If you are using a user **different from QSECOFR**, the user performing the installation and the user for which the agent is installed are the same.



**-wait *minutes***

The number of minutes that the product waits for jobs that are running to complete before starting the uninstallation. If the jobs do not complete during this intervals the uninstallation stops and an error message is displayed. Valid values are integers or **-1** for the product to wait indefinitely. The default is **60** minutes.

**-lang *lang\_id***

The language in which the `twsinst` messages are displayed. If not specified, the system LANG is used. If the related catalog is missing, the default C language catalog is used.

**-work\_dir *working\_dir***

The temporary directory used for the IBM Workload Scheduler installation process files deployment. If you do not manually specify a path, the path is set to `/tmp/TWA/twsversion_number>`.

The following example shows a `twsinst` script that uninstalls the IBM Workload Scheduler agent, originally installed for **twuser** user:

**On IBM i systems:**

```
./twsinst -uninst -uname TWS_user -allObjAuth
```

## Chapter 19. The twsinst script log files on IBM i systems

### About this task

The twsinst log file name is:

Where: `<TWS_INST_DIR>/twsinst_IBM_i_TWS_user^product_version.log`

#### ***TWS\_INST\_DIR***

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory. The default installation directory is `/home/TWS_user`.

#### ***TWS\_user***

The name of the user for which IBM Workload Scheduler was installed, that you supplied during the installation process.

#### ***product\_version***

Represents the product version. For example, for version 10.2.5 of the product, the value is 10.2.5.00

## Chapter 20. Analyzing return codes for agent installation, upgrade, restore, and uninstallation

Check how your operation completed by analyzing the return codes that are issued by twsinst.

Return codes that you can receive when you are installing, upgrading, restoring, or uninstalling agents. To analyze them and take corrective actions, run the following steps:

### On Windows operating systems

1. Display the operation completion return code, by using the following command:

```
echo %ERRORLEVEL%
```

2. Analyze the following table to verify how the operation completed:

**Table 43. Windows operating system agent return codes**

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                                   | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0          | Success: The operation completed successfully without any warnings or errors.                                                 | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 1          | Generic failure                                                                                                               | Check the messages that are displayed on the screen by the script. Correct the error and rerun the operation.<br><br>If the error persists, search the <a href="https://www.ibm.com/support/home/">https://www.ibm.com/support/home/</a> database for a solution. |
| 2          | The installation cannot create the IBM Workload Scheduler user or assign the correct permission to it.                        | Verify the operating system policies and configuration. Verify the input values. If necessary, create the user manually before you run the installation.                                                                                                          |
| 3          | The password is not correct or the installation cannot verify it.                                                             | Verify the operating system policies and configuration. Verify the input values.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 4          | The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory is not empty. You specified as installation folder a directory that exists. | Empty it or specify a different directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 5          | An error occurred checking the IBM Workload Scheduler prerequisites on the workstation.                                       | See the System Requirements Document at <a href="#">IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements</a> .                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6          | The IBM Workload Scheduler registry is corrupted.                                                                             | Use the recovInstReg option to recover the registry. Then, rerun the operation.                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Error Code | Description                                                                                     | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7          | The upgrade or restore operation cannot retrieve the information from the configuration files.  | Check that the previous installation and the <code>localopts</code> , the <code>globalopts</code> , the <code>ita.ini</code> , and the <code>JobManager.ini</code> files are not corrupted. Correct the errors and try again the operation. |
| 8          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are jobs that are running. | Stop the jobs that are running or wait for these jobs to complete. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 9          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are files that are locked. | Stop all the processes that are running and close all the activities that can block the installation path. Restart the operation.                                                                                                           |
| 10         | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are command lines opened.  | Close the command lines. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**On UNIX and Linux operating systems:**

1. Display the installation completion return code, by using the following command:

```
echo $?
```

2. Analyze the following table to verify how the installation completed:

**Table 44. UNIX or Linux operating system agent return codes**

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                          | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0          | Success: The installation completed successfully without any warnings or errors.                                     | None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 1          | Generic failure.                                                                                                     | Check the messages that are displayed on the video by the script. Correct the error and rerun the operation.<br><br>If the error persists, search the <a href="https://www.ibm.com/support/home/">https://www.ibm.com/support/home/</a> database for a solution. |
| 2          | The installation did not find the IBM Workload Scheduler user or its home directory. The IBM Workload Scheduler user | Verify the operating system definition of the IBM Workload Scheduler user.                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Error Code | Description                                                                                                                   | User action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|            | that you specified either does not exist or does not have an associated home directory.                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3          | Not applicable                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 4          | The IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory is not empty. You specified as installation folder a directory that exists. | Empty it or specify a different directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 5          | An error occurred checking the IBM Workload Scheduler prerequisites on the workstation.                                       | See the System Requirements Document at <a href="#">IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements</a> .                                                                                                                               |
| 6          | The IBM Workload Scheduler registry is corrupted.                                                                             | Use the <code>recovInstReg</code> option to recover the registry. Then, rerun the operation.                                                                                                                                                |
| 7          | The upgrade or restore operation cannot retrieve the information from the configuration files.                                | Check that the previous installation and the <code>localopts</code> , the <code>globalopts</code> , the <code>ita.ini</code> , and the <code>JobManager.ini</code> files are not corrupted. Correct the errors and try again the operation. |
| 8          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are jobs that are running.                               | Stop the jobs that are running or wait for these jobs to complete. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 9          | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are files that are locked.                               | Stop all the processes that are running and close all the activities that can block the installation path. Restart the operation.                                                                                                           |
| 10         | The upgrade, restore, or uninstallation cannot proceed because there are command lines opened.                                | Close the command lines. Restart the operation.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

# Appendix A. Integrating Workload Automation with Zowe™

Zowe™ is an open source project that enables you to interact with z/OS through modern interfaces. You can issue Workload Automation commands through the Zowe command-line interface (CLI), and access Workload Automation REST APIs through the Zowe API Mediation Layer (ML).

The following sections provide detailed information about:

- [Using Zowe CLI to issue Workload Automation commands on page 342](#)
- [Using Zowe API Mediation Layer to access the Workload Automation REST APIs on page 343](#)
- [Supporting authentication through Zowe JWT token on page 345](#)

## Using Zowe CLI to issue Workload Automation commands

The Workload Automation plug-in for Zowe CLI lets you issue Workload Automation commands to remotely control your workload. With Workload Automation commands, you can monitor and modify jobs, jostreams and resources, as well as issue WAPL commands.

### How the Workload Automation (WA) plug-in works

The WA plug-in:

- Defines a Workload Automation profile to manage the connection information, which is required to access the WA APIs.
- Provides you with a CLI interface with the relevant APIs on the Z connector server.

For information about Workload Automation commands and syntax, see the online help that is provided within the WA plug-in.

### Software requirements

Before installing and using the WA plug-in, you must:

- Install Zowe CLI on your workstation. For details about this task, see [Installing Zowe CLI](#).
- Ensure that the Z connector V9.5 Fix Pack 2 is installed and running in your environment.
- If you are using the Z controller V9.5, ensure that you have installed the PTFs UI68881, UI68882, UI69085, and UI69193.
- Access the Workload Automation APIs through the API Mediation Layer (API ML), or connect the WA plug-in directly to the WA API. For more information, see [Using Zowe API Mediation Layer to access the Workload Automation REST APIs on page 343](#)

### Installing the WA plug-in

To install the WA plug-in, download the `zowe-cli-ibm-wa-plugin.zip` file that is provided on [IBM Fix Central](#) and install the WA plug-in by performing the following steps:

1. Unzip the zip file locally.
2. From the directory where you unzipped the file, install the WA plug-in by issuing the following command:

```
zowe plugins install .
```

## Uninstalling the WA plug-in

To uninstall the WA plug-in, issue the following command:

```
zowe plugins uninstall @zowe/zowe-cli-ibm-wa-plugin
```

After the uninstallation process completes successfully, the product no longer contains the WA plug-in.

## For more details

For more detailed information about the WA plug-in, see the readme file that you find in the Info tab of [Automation Hub](#). A video about using the Zowe CLI is available at this [link](#).

# Using Zowe API Mediation Layer to access the Workload Automation REST APIs

How to add the Workload Automation REST APIs to the Zowe API Mediation Layer, which is a component that provides a gateway acting as a reverse proxy for z/OS services, and a catalog of REST APIs.

## Before you begin

Before adding the Workload Automation REST APIs to the Zowe API Mediation Layer, ensure that:

1. Zowe is installed and configured on your Z/OS system. For details about how to install and configure Zowe, see the Zowe documentation. .
2. You have installed Dynamic Workload Console V9.5 Fix Pack 2.
3. You have downloaded the `zowe-cli-ibm-wa-plugin.zip` file that is provided on [IBM Fix Central](#) and installed the plug-in as described in the `README_wa.html` file that is provided in the zip file.

## About this task

To add the Workload Automation REST API to the Zowe API mediation layer, perform the following steps:

1. Edit the `wa.yml` file that is provided in `zowe-cli-ibm-wa-plugin.zip` as follows:

```
services:
 - serviceId: <serviceID> # unique lowercase ID of the service
 catalogUiTileId: static
 title: IBM® Z Workload
 Scheduler
 description: IBM® Z Workload
 Scheduler Service
 instanceBaseUrls: # list of base URLs for each instance
 - https://<zconn_hostname>:<zconn_port> # scheme:https://zconn_hostname:zconn_port
 homePageRelativeUrl: /
 statusPageRelativeUrl: /twasz
 healthCheckRelativeUrl: /twasz/v1
 routes:
```

```

- gatewayUrl: api/v1
 serviceRelativeUrl: /twasz/v1 # relativePath that is added to baseUrl of an instance
List of APIs provided by the service:
apiInfo:
- gatewayUrl: api/v1
 documentationUrl: https://<zconn_hostname>:<zconn_port>/twasz/IWS_API3_all_zos.json
List of tiles that can be used by services defined in the YAML file:
catalogUiTiles:
 static:
 title: IBM® Z Workload
Scheduler API Services
 description: IBM® Z Workload
Scheduler REST Services

```

where:

**zconn\_hostname**

Host name of the Z connector where the Workload Automation REST APIs are located.

**zconn\_port**

Port used by the Z connector where the Workload Automation REST APIs are located.

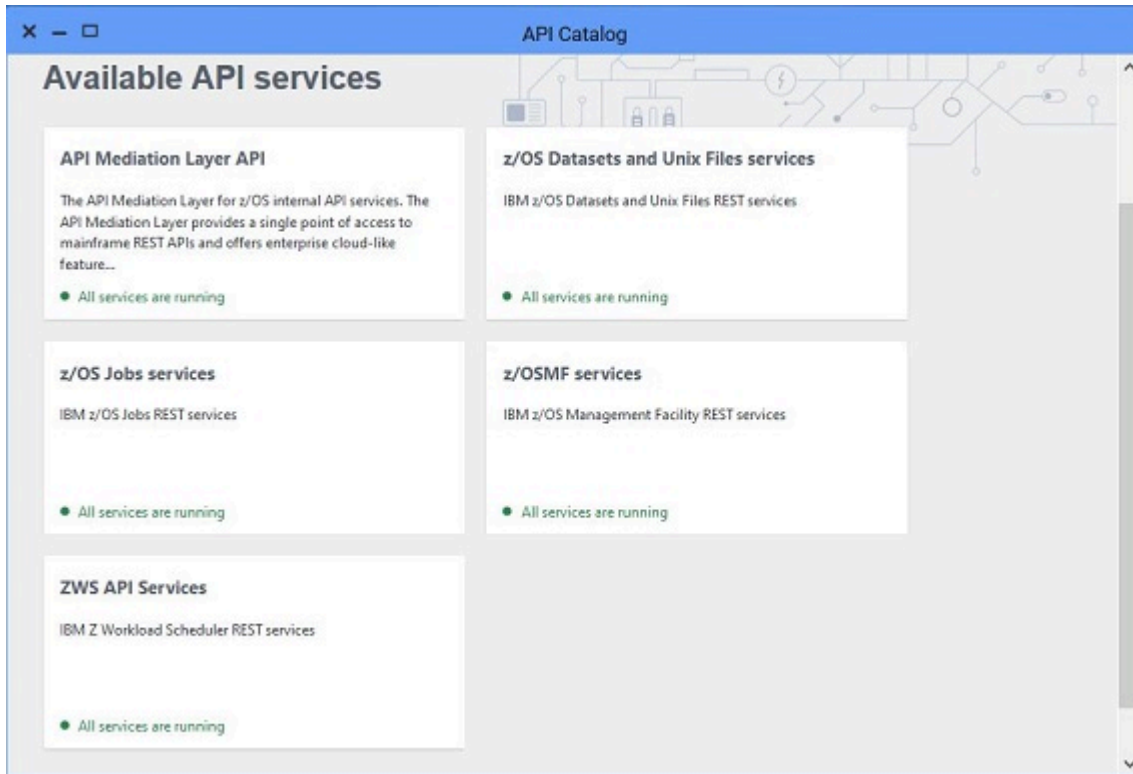
The result of the YAML file is that each call to the Zowe API mediation layer at <https://zowehost:zoweport/api/v1/waservice> is redirected to the Z connector REST API at [https://zconn\\_hostname:zconn\\_port/twasz/v1](https://zconn_hostname:zconn_port/twasz/v1).

2. Ensure that the certificate used by the Workload Automation REST API is trusted by the API mediation layer.

To meet this requirement, follow the instructions provided in the Zowe documentation.

3. Verify that the Workload Automation REST API was successfully added to the API mediation layer by opening the Zowe Virtual Desktop and accessing the API catalog. The catalog will show the Workload Automation REST API, as in the following example:





## Results

You have successfully added the Workload Automation REST API to the Zowe API Mediation Layer. You can issue the WA commands from the Zowe command-line.

## Supporting authentication through Zowe JWT token

The JWT secret that signs the JWT token is a private key that is generated during Zowe keystore configuration. To support authentication through JWT, perform the following steps.

### About this task

1. Copy the JWT secret from the API ML installation. For more information, see the Zowe documentation about authenticating with JSON Web tokens.
2. From the workstation where you installed the Dynamic Workload Console, import the secret into the trust store by issuing the following command from `<DWC_DIR>/usr/servers/dwcServer/resources/security`:

```
keytool -import -alias <my_secret> -keystore TWSServerTrustFile.jks
-file <complete_path>/localhost.keystore.jwtsecret.pem
```

3. Edit the `<DWC_DIR>/usr/servers/dwcServer/server.xml` file as follows:
  - a. Add the row `<feature>mpJwt-1.1</feature>` as shown in the following example:

```
<featureManager>
 <feature>javaee-7.0</feature>
 <feature>passwordUtilities-1.0</feature>
 <feature>localConnector-1.0</feature>
```

```
<feature>mpJwt-1.1</feature>
</featureManager>
```

b. Add the following information:

```
<!-- MPJWT configuration -->
<mpJwt id="<my_mpJwt>" keyName="<my_secret>"
 userNameAttribute="sub" ignoreApplicationAuthMethod="false"/>
```

where:

**<my\_mpJwt>**

A unique identifier that you define for the MicroProfile JWT (mpJwt).

**<my\_secret>**

The secret that you imported into the trust store at step 2.

4. Save the server.xml file.

## Appendix B. Sample library (SEQQSAMP)

The SEQQSAMP library contains samples to help you install, migrate, and customize IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

In most cases, you need only add installation-specific JCL to adapt a member in SEQQSAMP to your requirements.

[Sample library \(SEQQSAMP\) on page 347](#) lists all members in the SEQQSAMP library and provides a brief description of each member. The following pages describe the samples relating to installing IBM Z Workload Scheduler in more detail. Descriptions of other sample-library members are included in the book that describes the function demonstrated by the sample. For example, program-interface samples are described in *Developer's Guide: Driving IBM Z Workload Scheduler*.

Some of the samples provided address a specific function and you might be able to use the sample unchanged in your environment. If you need to change a sample member, it is advisable to copy the source to a separate library. The original sample member is then available for reference. It is also recommended that you create an SMP/E *usermod* for each sample member you run in the production environment. Changes to the sample source code will then be flagged for your attention, and subsequent updates can be reflected in the production code as soon as possible.

**Table 45. SEQQSAMP library members**

| Member   | Brief description                                                                                        |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQ9RF01 | Sample RACF® router table entry to enable security environment.                                          |
| EQQ9RFDE | Sample RACF® class descriptor entry to enable security environment.                                      |
| EQQ9SM01 | JCL to install RACF® router table update.                                                                |
| EQQ9SMDE | JCL to install RACF® class descriptor update.                                                            |
| EQQACPTx | Sample SMP/E ACCEPT JCL for the Z controller software, where the value of x depends on the language.     |
| EQQACTR1 | Sample SMF exit IEFACTRT, written in assembler, to enable job-tracking.                                  |
| EQQAIXST | Parameters used by the EQQX9AIX and EQQAIXTR samples.                                                    |
| EQQAIXTR | Sample tracker running on AIX®, used with EQQX9AIX.                                                      |
| EQQALLOC | JCL to allocate the IBM Z Workload Scheduler distribution and target libraries.                          |
| EQQALSMP | Sample JCL to allocate and initialize the SMP/E environment needed to install IBM Z Workload Scheduler   |
| EQQAPISM | ASCII file containing a sample API application.                                                          |
| EQQAPPLx | Sample SMP/E APPLY JCL for the Z controller software, where the value of x depends on the language.      |
| EQQAUDIB | Sample to invoke EQQAUDIT in batch mode outside of the dialog, processing EQQTROUT or EQQDROUT data set. |

**Table 45. SEQQSAMP library members (continued)**

| Member   | Brief description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|          |  <b>Note:</b> EQQAUDIB can be used successfully only if the <b>EQQTROUT dsname</b> and the <b>EQQAUDIT output dsn</b> fields in the EQQJOBSA panel are typed out. |
| EQQBSCAN | Batch loader sample to validate an application description.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| EQQBSUBS | Batch loader sample to create four application descriptions and two operator instructions. Output is directed to a subsystem.                                                                                                                      |
| EQQBVSAM | Batch loader sample to create an application description and two operator instructions. Output is directed to a VSAM data set that is allocated by the sample.                                                                                     |
| EQQCLEAN | Sample procedure invoking EQQCLEAN program.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| EQQCONOP | Sample parameters used by EQQCONO.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| EQQCONO  | Sample started task procedure for controller only.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| EQQCONP  | Sample initial parameters for a controller and tracker in the same address space.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| EQQCON   | Sample started task procedure for a controller and tracker in the same address space.                                                                                                                                                              |
| EQQCVM2  | Sample to enable submission and tracking on VM systems using EQQUX009.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| EQQCVM   | Sample to enable job-tracking facilities on VM systems.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| EQQDBENC | Contains the JCL to encrypt the password in the DBOPT statement.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| EQQDBOPT | Sample DBOPT statement.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| EQQDBREP | Contains the SQL statements to create the DB2 reporting objects.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| EQQDDDEF | Sample job to allocate DDDEFs in SMP/E.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| EQQDELDI | JCL and usage notes for the data set deletion function.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| EQQDLFX  | Assembler installation sample of DLF connect/disconnect exit.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| EQQDPCOP | JCL and usage notes for copy VSAM function.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| EQQDPX01 | DP batch sample user exit to update the scheduling environment.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| EQQDSCL  | Batch Clean Up sample.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| EQQDSCLP | Batch Clean up sample parameters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| EQQDSECT | Assembler version of PIF data areas.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| EQQDSEX  | Batch Export sample.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| EQQDSEXP | Batch Export sample parameters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| EQQDSIM  | Batch Import sample.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

**Table 45. SEQQSAMP library members (continued)**

| <b>Member</b> | <b>Brief description</b>                                                                                            |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQDSIMP      | Batch Import sample parameters.                                                                                     |
| EQQDSRG       | Batch sample reorg.                                                                                                 |
| EQQDSRI       | Batch Recovery index.                                                                                               |
| EQQDSRIP      | Batch Recovery index parameters.                                                                                    |
| EQQDST        | Sample procedure to start Data Store.                                                                               |
| EQQDSTP       | Parameters for sample procedure to start Data Store.                                                                |
| EQQICNVS      | Sample job to migrate VSAM files.                                                                                   |
| EQQINIRE      | Sample JCL to create the DB2 reporting objects.                                                                     |
| EQQISMKD      | Sample job to run EQQMkdir exec for directories.                                                                    |
| EQQJCCTB      | JCL to assemble a JCC message table macro definition.                                                               |
| EQQJCLIN      | Sample JCL to start program EQQPDLF.                                                                                |
| EQQJER2U      | Sample to restore the EXIT7 as a JES2 usermod.                                                                      |
| EQQJER2V      | Sample to restore the EXIT5 as a JES2 usermod.                                                                      |
| EQQJER3U      | Sample to restore the EQQUX191 and EQQUX291 as JES3 usermods.                                                       |
| EQQJES21      | JCL to assemble and link-edit the JES2 EXIT51.                                                                      |
| EQQJES2       | JCL to assemble and link-edit a JES2 exit.                                                                          |
| EQQJES2U      | JCL to install the JES2 EXIT7 as an SMP/E usermod.                                                                  |
| EQQJES2V      | JCL to install the JES2 EXIT51 as an SMP/E usermod.                                                                 |
| EQQJES3       | JCL to assemble and link-edit a JES3 exit.                                                                          |
| EQQJES3U      | JCL to install a JES3 exit as an SMP/E usermod.                                                                     |
| EQQJVXIT      | Sample assembler JCL-variable-substitution exit. Also used for variable substitution in System Automation commands. |
| EQQLSJCL      | Sample JCL to invoke the EQQLSENT macro.                                                                            |
| EQQMIGRE      | Sample JCL to migrate DB2 reporting objects from the previous version.                                              |
| EQQMkdir      | Sample exec to create directories.                                                                                  |
| EQQNCFCT      | Sample parameters for an SNA connection between Z controller and tracker.                                           |
| EQQNETW1      | REXX™ EXEC that receives IBM Z Workload Scheduler WTO messages and issues z/OS commands.                            |
| EQQNETW2      | PL/I NetView® command processor that uses EQQUSINT to change the status of operations.                              |

**Table 45. SEQQSAMP library members (continued)**

| Member   | Brief description                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQNETW3 | REXX™ EXEC that uses EQQEVPGM to change the status of operations.                                                                                                                                |
| EQQOCWTO | Sample job to assemble and linkedit the IPOWTO routine used by the PIF REX sample.                                                                                                               |
| EQQPCS01 | Allocates data sets that need to be unique within the SYSPLEX.                                                                                                                                   |
| EQQPCS02 | Allocates data sets that need to be unique to each ZOS image in the SYSPLEX.                                                                                                                     |
| EQQPCS03 | Generates a job that allocates VSAM copy data sets.                                                                                                                                              |
| EQQPCS04 | Defines Data Store VSAM files and initializes them.                                                                                                                                              |
| EQQPCS07 | Allocates VSAM data sets for Restart and Cleanup.                                                                                                                                                |
| EQQPCS08 | Allocates USS files for Java™ utilities enablement.                                                                                                                                              |
| EQQPCS09 | Allocates the GDG root and VSAM data set used as input by the archiving process supporting the Dynamic Workload Console reporting feature.                                                       |
| EQQPCS10 | Creates the SSL work directory used for TCP/IP communication with the Z controller.                                                                                                              |
| EQQPCS11 | Allocates data sets ( <a href="#">EQQOUCEV on page 140</a> and <a href="#">EQQOUCKP on page 140</a> ) used for the retrieval of job logs in the z-centric environment with the Output collector. |
| EQQPCS12 | Allocates the GDG root to archive the MLOG files.                                                                                                                                                |
| EQQPIFAD | Program-interface PL/I sample that creates a two-operation application in the AD database.                                                                                                       |
| EQQPIFAP | Program-interface PL/I sample that resolves JCL variables.                                                                                                                                       |
| EQQPIFCB | Program-interface assembler samples for various current plan or long-term plan actions.                                                                                                          |
| EQQPIFCL | Program-interface assembler sample that uses the DAYSTAT command to return work or free status for a particular date.                                                                            |
| EQQPIFDJ | Program-interface assembler sample, deletes JCL for completed occurrences from JS data set.                                                                                                      |
| EQQPIFJC | Program-interface COBOL sample to manipulate JCL variable tables.                                                                                                                                |
| EQQPIFJD | Program-interface PL/I sample that can either list or delete records in the JCL repository data set (JS).                                                                                        |
| EQQPIFJV | Program-interface PL/I sample to manipulate JCL variable tables.                                                                                                                                 |
| EQQPIFJX | Sample to maintain the JCL repository.                                                                                                                                                           |
| EQQPIFOP | Program-interface REXX™ sample to modify an operation in the current plan.                                                                                                                       |
| EQQPIFPR | Program-interface REXX™ sample to list all cyclic periods.                                                                                                                                       |
| EQQPIFWI | Program-interface PL/I sample to modify capacity values in an open interval of a current plan workstation.                                                                                       |

**Table 45. SEQQSAMP library members (continued)**

| Member   | Brief description                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQPMCKP | Merges the checkpoint data sets of the old and new systems in the production system migration process. See <a href="#">Produce a checkpoint data set containing data from the old production system on page 210</a> . |
| EQQPROC  | Sample procedure, started by IBM Z Workload Scheduler, to initiate purge of DLF objects.                                                                                                                              |
| EQQRECVx | Sample SMP/E RECEIVE JCL for the Z controller software, where the value of x depends on the language.                                                                                                                 |
| EQQREPRO | Is invoked by EQQSMLOG to copy the contents of the outgoing MLOG file onto the GDG data set. You must copy this sample to the PARMLIB of the controller.                                                              |
| EQQRETWT | Sample program to simulate abends, return codes and waits.                                                                                                                                                            |
| EQQRMD5  | Usage notes for the job-log-retrieval exit object code to interface to RMD5.                                                                                                                                          |
| EQQRXSTG | An assembler routine to get and free storage for the REXX™ program-interface samples.                                                                                                                                 |
| EQQSAMPI | JCL to load sample data for application descriptions, operator instructions, and workstation descriptions to the databases.                                                                                           |
| EQQSERP  | Sample initial parameters for a Server.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| EQQSER   | Sample started task procedure for a Server.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| EQQSMF   | JCL to assemble and install the SMF exits.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| EQQSMLOG | Sample procedure that creates the GDG data set where the outgoing MLOG file is archived when the MLOG switching function takes effect. Uses the EQQREPRO input parameter.                                             |
| EQQTCPCT | Sample definitions for TCP/IP communication between tracker and controller.                                                                                                                                           |
| EQQTRAP  | Sample initial parameters for a Tracker.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| EQQTRA   | Sample started task procedure for a Tracker.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| EQQTROPT | Sample TRGOPT statement.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| EQQU831  | Sample SMF exit IEFU83 to enable job tracking and optionally include data set triggering support.                                                                                                                     |
| EQQUJ1   | Sample SMF exit IEFUJ1 to enable job-tracking.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| EQQUSIN1 | EQQUSIN subroutine sample to change the status of an operation.                                                                                                                                                       |
| EQQUSIN2 | EQQUSIN subroutine sample to change the availability of a special resource.                                                                                                                                           |
| EQQUSIN3 | EQQUSIN subroutine sample to change the status of a workstation.                                                                                                                                                      |
| EQQUSIN4 | EQQUSIN subroutine sample to backup an IBM Z Workload Scheduler resource data set.                                                                                                                                    |
| EQQUSIN5 | EQQUSIN subroutine sample to update the USERDATA field of an operation.                                                                                                                                               |

**Table 45. SEQQSAMP library members (continued)**

| <b>Member</b> | <b>Brief description</b>                                                                                                                         |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQUX001      | Sample job-submit exit.                                                                                                                          |
| EQQUX002      | Sample job-library-read exit.                                                                                                                    |
| EQQUX004      | Sample event-filtering exit.                                                                                                                     |
| EQQUX011      | Sample job-tracking log write exit.                                                                                                              |
| EQQUX013      | Sample job-tailoring prevention exit.                                                                                                            |
| EQQUX0N       | Sample PL/I start/stop exit, EQQUX000.                                                                                                           |
| EQQUX191      | Sample JES3 exit IATUX19 to enable job tracking.                                                                                                 |
| EQQUX291      | Sample JES3 exit IATUX29 to enable job tracking.                                                                                                 |
| EQQUX9N       | Sample PL/I operation-initiation exit, communicating with VM (EQQUX009).                                                                         |
| EQQUXCAT      | Sample restart and clean up exit for the EQQCLEAN program.                                                                                       |
| EQQUXPIF      | Sample user exit to validate application descriptions.                                                                                           |
| EQQUXSAZ      | Sample assembler system command exit, communicating with System Automation invoked in place of EQQUX007 for automation workstations.             |
| EQQVTAMN      | Sample VTAM® definition for SNA connection between tracker and controller.                                                                       |
| EQQVTAMS      | Sample VTAM® definition for server SNA connection.                                                                                               |
| EQQX5ASM      | Sample SYSOUT archiving exit.                                                                                                                    |
| EQQX6ASM      | Sample incident-record-create exit.                                                                                                              |
| EQQX6JOB      | Sample batch-job skeleton JCL used by EQQX6ASM.                                                                                                  |
| EQQX7ASM      | Sample change-of-status exit.                                                                                                                    |
| EQQX7JOB      | Sample batch-job skeleton JCL used by EQQX7ASM.                                                                                                  |
| EQQX9AIX      | Sample assembler operation-initiation exit, communicating with AIX®.                                                                             |
| EQQXCFCT      | Sample definitions for XCF connection between tracker and controller.                                                                            |
| EQQXIT51      | Sample JES2 EXIT51 to enable job tracking for JES2.                                                                                              |
| EQQXIT74      | Sample JES2 EXIT7 to enable job tracking for JES2.                                                                                               |
| EQQXML01      | Sample XML file for data set triggering event rule definitions.                                                                                  |
| EQQYCBAG      | Sample to unload a group application (and all the applications belonging to it) into a sequential file in Batch Loader Control statement format. |
| EQQYCBAT      | Run the Batch Command Interface tool.                                                                                                            |



**Table 45. SEQQSAMP library members (continued)**

| Member   | Brief description                                              |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| EQQYRJCL | Sample JCL to run the Control Language tool.                   |
| EQQYRMSG | Messages used by the Control Language tool.                    |
| EQQYRPRC | Sample procedure to run the Control Language tool.             |
| EQQYRPRM | Sample initialization parameter for the Control Language tool. |

## Using the Visual Age compiler

With the z/OS® operating system, the Visual Age PL/I compiler replaces all the previous PL/I compilers. Therefore, if you use this compiler, you need to customize the samples in PL/I as follows:

1. Replace the PL/I compiler invocation statement:

```
EXEC PGM=IEL0AA
```

with:

```
EXEC PGM=IBMZPLI
```

2. Link into a PDS/E data set for SYSLMOD or include a pre-link edit step in the JCL.

As an example, here is the JCL for the EQQPIFJV sample using the Visual Age PL/I compiler:

```
//EQQPIFJV JOB MSGCLASS=N, ...
//PLI1 EXEC PGM=IBMZPLI,REGION=1024K,
// PARM='OBJECT,OPTIONS'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=IBMZ.V2R2M1.SIBMZCMP,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSLIN DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(2,1)),DISP=(,PASS),
// DSN=&&OBJ1
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(3,3))
//SYSIN DD *
/*
/*
//PLI2 EXEC PGM=IBMZPLI,REGION=1024K,
// COND=(4,LT,PLI1),PARM='OBJECT,OPTIONS'

//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//STEPLIB DD DSN=IBMZ.V2R2M1.SIBMZCMP,DISP=SHR
//SYSLIN DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(2,1)),
// DISP=(,PASS),DSN=&&OBJ2
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(3,3))
//SYSIN DD *
.....
/*
/*
//*****
/* PRE-LINK-EDIT STEP *
//*****
//PLKED EXEC PGM=EDCPRLK,COND=(8,LT,PLI1),
// REGION=2048K
```

```
//SYSDSFSD DD DSN=&&DEF1,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200,
// DISP=(,PASS)
//STEPLIB DD DSN=CEE.SCEERUN,DISP=SHR
//SYSMSGSGS DD DSN=CEE.SCEEMSGP(EDCPMSG),DISP=SHR
//SYSLIB DD DUMMY
//SYSMOD DD DSN=&&PLNK,DISP=(,PASS),
// UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3200)
//SYSIN DD DSN=&&OBJ1,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
// DD DSN=&&OBJ2,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=*
/*****
/* SCEELKD ADDED TO SYSLIB ON LINK STEP */
/*****
//LKED EXEC PGM=IEWL,PARM='XREF',
// COND=(4,LT,PLI2),REGION=4M
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=CEE.SCEELKD
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=USER.OPC23.LINKLI
//SYSLMOD DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SVIOLA.SEQQLMD0
//OPCLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=USER.OPC23.LINKLI
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(3,3))
//SEQOBJ1 DD DISP=(OLD,DELETE),DSN=&&PLNK
//SYSLIN DD *
INCLUDE SEQOBJ1
INCLUDE OPCLIB(EQQYCOM)
SETCODE AC(1)
ENTRY CEESTART
NAME EQQPIFT(R)
/*
/*
//EQQPIFT EXEC PGM=EQQPIFT,PARM='NOSTAE,NOSPIE',
// COND=(4,LT,LKED),REGION=4096K
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SVIOLA.SEQQLMD0
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=USER.OPC23.LINKLIB
//EQQMLIB DD DSN=EQQ.V2R3M0.SEQQMSG0,DISP=SHR
//EQQYPARM DD DISP=SHR,DSN=XXXX.YYYY.ZZZZ(YPARM)
//EQQMLOG DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//EQQDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//EQQDMSG DD SYSOUT=*
//CARDIN DD *
.....
/*
/*
```

## SMP/E samples

The following SEQQSAMP members relate to SMP/E processes.

## Environment setup

You can use the sample library members `EQQALSMP`, `EQQDDDEF`, and `EQQALLOC` to create and initialize the SMP/E environment and the IBM Z Workload Scheduler product libraries that are needed to support the installation and continuing maintenance of IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

The EQQALSMP job performs the following functions:

- Initializes an SMP/E CSI, adding a global zone, and the IBM Z Workload Scheduler FMID.

The EQQDDDEF job sets up DDDEFs for all IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets to provide for basic JCL requirements for RECEIVE, APPLY, and ACCEPT processing.

The EQQALLOC job allocates all Tivoli® target and distribution libraries. The JCL also contains a number of steps, which are currently commented out. You can use those steps to delete the IBM Z Workload Scheduler libraries if you need to reinstall the product.

## RECEIVE processing

The sample library members EQQRECVE, EQQRECVS, EQQRECVJ, EQQRECVD, and EQQRECVK contain JCL that you can use to run SMP/E RECEIVE processing for IBM Z Workload Scheduler data sets. These library members enable you to receive the following IBM Z Workload Scheduler features:

- Tracker
- Controller
- End-to-end and Java™ enabler

Each of these jobs performs RECEIVE processing for a particular NLS feature:

### **EQQRECVE**

Receives all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the English feature for the controller.

### **EQQRECVS**

Receives all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Spanish feature for the controller.

### **EQQRECVJ**

Receives all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Japanese feature for the controller.

### **EQQRECVD**

Receives all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the German feature for the controller.

### **EQQRECVK**

Receives all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Korean feature for the controller.

You might need to change the distribution library and zone name to reflect those defined in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler CSI.

For further details, see the IBM Z Workload Scheduler *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Program Directory*.



**Note:** The *Program Directory* refers to trackers as *agents*, and to the controller as the *engine*.

## APPLY processing

The sample library members EQQAPPLE, EQQAPPLS, EQQAPPLJ, EQQAPPLD, and EQQAPPLK contain JCL that you can use to run SMP/E APPLY processing for IBM Z Workload Scheduler. These members enable you to apply the following features:

- Tracker
- Controller
- End-to-end and Java™ enabler

Each of these jobs performs APPLY processing for a particular NLS feature:

### **EQQAPPLE**

Applies all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the English feature for the controller.

### **EQQAPPLS**

Applies all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Spanish feature for the controller.

### **EQQAPPLJ**

Applies all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Japanese feature for the controller.

### **EQQAPPLD**

Applies all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the German feature for the controller.

### **EQQAPPLK**

Applies all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Korean feature for the controller.

You might need to change the distribution library and zone name to reflect those defined in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler CSI.

For further details, see the *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Program Directory*.



**Note:** The *Program Directory* refers to trackers as *agents*, and to the controller as the *engine*.

## ACCEPT processing

The sample library members EQQACPTJ, EQQACPTD, and EQQACPTK contain JCL that you can use to run SMP/E ACCEPT processing for IBM Z Workload Scheduler. These members enable you to accept the following features:

- Tracker
- Controller
- End-to-end and Java™ enabler

Each of these jobs performs ACCEPT processing for a particular NLS feature:

#### **EQQACPTE**

Accepts all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the English feature for the controller.

#### **EQQACPTS**

Accepts all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Spanish feature for the controller.

#### **EQQACPTJ**

Accepts all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Japanese feature for the controller.

#### **EQQACPTD**

Accepts all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the German feature for the controller.

#### **EQQACPTK**

Accepts all the scheduler base and tracker components plus the Korean feature for the controller.

You might need to change the distribution library and zone name to reflect those defined in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler CSI.

For further details, see the *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Program Directory*.



**Note:** The *Program Directory* refers to trackers as *agents*, and to the controller as the *engine*.

## SMF exits

The following text provides details of the SEQQSAMP members relating to SMF exits.



**Note:** If version ASMA90 of the compiler reports errors, and the RMODE=ANY statement is defined, remove the RMODE=ANY statement from the sample exit.

## Exit installation

The sample library member EQQSMF contains the JCL needed to assemble the SMF exits required for IBM Z Workload Scheduler. The job also defines an SMP/E usermod to connect the SMF exits to your target zone.

A single usermod is used to define the three SMF exits. You can, if you prefer, define usermods for each exit.

To restore the JES exits as SMP/E usermods, use the samples EQQJER2U, EQQJER2V, and EQQJER3U.

## Job step termination exit

The sample library member EQQACTR1 contains the assembler source code of an SMF job/step termination exit, IEFACTRT. The sample contains two subroutines:

- OPCASUB provides the necessary IBM Z Workload Scheduler code to track job- and step-end events.
- LOCALSUB generates WTO messages for step- and job-end.

If you use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Restart and Cleanup functionality or other functions, such as the one related to the NOERROR table (for details, see *Customization and Tuning*), you are required to install this exit. Use the sample provided with the product to install this exit.

From the introduction of the usability enhancement on, the IEFACTRT exit creates two different tables in the joblog, the Steptable and the Not\_Executed\_Step\_Table.

If you use the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Restart and Cleanup functionality or other functions, such as the one related to the NOERROR table, and you want to replace this subroutine with your own, you need to comply with the following restrictions:

- The fields JOBNAME, STEPNAME, PROCSTEP and STEPNO must continue to be filled on the basis of the following logic:
  - JOBNAME must contain the name of the job.
  - STEPNAME is the label of the EXEC PROC=... Card and must be filled only if a PROC is used.
  - PROCSTEP is the label of the EXEC PGM=... Card and must be filled also if a PROC is not used.
  - STEPNO must contain the sequence number of the steps inside the job.
- The JOBNAME, STEPNAME, PROCSTEP identifiers in the tables header must match the values specified in the *HDRJOBNAME*, *HDRSTEPNAME*, and *HDRPROCNAME* parameters of the DSTOPTS DATASTORE statement.
- The layout of STEPTABLE and NOT\_EXECUTED\_STEP\_TABLE must be in compliance with the following rules:
  - JOBNAME must be preceded by a hyphen sign (-), some characters can be inserted between a hyphen sign and the JOBNAME.
  - JOBNAME must be followed by a blank.
  - STEPNAME must be preceded and followed by a blank.
  - PROCSTEP must be preceded and followed by a blank.
  - STEPNO must be preceded by a blank.
  - STEPNO must follow the PROCSTEP in the NOT\_EXECUTED\_STEP\_TABLE.
- NOT\_EXECUTED\_STEP\_TABLE must be aligned to STEPTABLE as far as it concerns JOBNAME, STEPNAME and PROCSTEP information.
- The string "JOBXXXXX ENDED. NAME-" must be aligned so that the JOBNAME JOBXXXXX is under the JOBNAME header.
- JOBNAME, STEPNAME, PROCSTEP position in the STEPTABLE and in the NOT\_EXECUTED\_STEP\_TABLE must match the values specified in the *HDRJOBLENGTH*, *HDRSTEPLength*, *HDRPROCLength* parameters of the DSTOPTS DATASTORE statement. STEPNO position in the STEPTABLE must match the value specified in *HDRSTEPNOLENGTH*.
- User-customized records issued in the STEPTABLE and in the NOT\_EXECUTED\_STEP\_TABLE must be avoided.

## Initialization exit

The sample library member EQUJ11 contains the assembler source code of an SMF initialization exit, IEFUJ1. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses events generated from the exit to track job start information.

If your installation is already using an IEFUJI, incorporate the code into your existing exit and reassemble.

## Record write exits

The sample library member EQU831 contains the assembler source code of a record write exit, IEFU83. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses events generated from the exit to track print group and purge information.

If your installation is already using an IEFU83, incorporate the code into your existing exit and reassemble.

You can optionally include support for both the data set triggering and job-tracking functions using the EQU831 sample. This provides you with a method to automatically generate a special resource availability depending on specific actions affecting data sets. The event can be used by IBM Z Workload Scheduler to change the status of a special resource to make it available for operations and/or to trigger an application to be added to the current plan. You specify the data sets you want special resource availability events for using a specific macro, as described in [Invoking the EQQLSENT macro on page 366](#). For more information about data set triggering, see [Implementing support for data set triggering on page 104](#). Use the EQQSMF sample to install EQU831.

If you do not track print operations through IBM Z Workload Scheduler, and you do not want to include data set triggering support, you need not change IEFU83.

## JES exits

The following text provides details of the SEQQSAMP members relating to JES exits.



**Note:** If version ASMA90 of the compiler reports errors, and the RMODE=ANY statement is defined, remove the RMODE=ANY statement from the sample exit.

## Exit installation

The sample library contains a number of members to assemble and link-edit JES exits. EQQJES2, EQQJES21, and EQQJES3 provide sample JCL to assemble and link-edit of JES2 and JES3 exits respectively. However, it is recommended that you use members EQQJES2U, EQQJES2V, and EQQJES3U. These samples provide the JCL to install the JES exits as SMP/E usermods. The usermods are defined so that both the JES and IBM Z Workload Scheduler target zones are informed of the dependencies. This ensures that future maintenance, to either the JES component or the IBM Z Workload Scheduler component, will be handled correctly.

## JES2 QMOD phase change exit

The sample library member EQQXIT51 contains the assembler source code of the JES2 QMOD Phase Change exit, JES EXIT51. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses JES2 EXIT51 to detect job errors occurring during the JES2 input phase, and to trigger the creation of IJ2 events for started task.

## JES2 JCT I/O exit

The sample library member EQQXIT74 contains the assembler source code of a JES2 JCT I/O exit, JESEXIT7. EQQXIT74 is used for JES2. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses JESEXIT7 to detect new jobs on the internal reader and also to detect output group purge.

If you are already using a JESEXIT7, and want to keep the IBM Z Workload Scheduler job-tracking support in a separate load module, you can specify that JES use multiple EXIT7 modules in your JES2 parameters.

## JES3 OSE modification exit

The sample library member EQQUX191 contains the assembler source code of a JES3 OSE modification exit, IATUX19. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses events generated from the exit to detect output group purge.

If you are already using an IATUX19, you should include the code in your existing exit and reassemble.



**Note:** If you are using JES3 Exit IATUX72 then this exit must return with R15 = 8 to call IATUX19.

## JES3 input service final-user exit

The sample library member EQQUX291 contains the assembler source code of a JES3 input service final-user exit, IATUX29. IBM Z Workload Scheduler uses events generated from the exit to detect new jobs on the internal reader.

If you are already using an IATUX29, then you should incorporate the code into your existing exit and reassemble.

## RACF® samples

The following text provides details of the SEQQSAMP members relating to RACF® changes, which are required for IBM Z Workload Scheduler security.

### Class descriptor table

The sample library member EQQ9RFDE provides the class descriptor entry required to define the IBM Z Workload Scheduler security environment to RACF®, or a functionally equivalent product.

Each class descriptor contains control information needed by RACF® to validate class names and is a CSECT in the load module ICHRRCDE.

You can use member EQQ9SMDE to install ICHRRCDE as an SMP/E usermod on the RACF® target zone.

### Router table

The sample library member EQQ9RF01 provides the router table entry required to define the IBM Z Workload Scheduler security environment to RACF®, or a functionally equivalent product.

This is a sample RACF® router table that provides action codes to determine if RACF® is invoked on behalf of the RACROUTE macro.



You can use member EQQ9SM01 to install ICHRF01 as an SMP/E usermod on the RACF® target zone.

## EQQYCBAG sample

The EQQYCBAG member of the EQQSAMP library provides a sample in which the Batch Command Interface Tool (BCIT) is used to unload a group application, and all applications belonging to it, into a sequential file in batch loader control statement format.

The group applications, as well as other applications, can be modified via the batch loader control statements. From then on, you can use the sequential file as input for the batch loader run.

This sample consists of two jobs:

1. The unload job, that uses the batch command interface tool.
2. The load job, that uses the batch loader.

## EQQBENCR sample

The EQQBENCR member of the EQQSAMP library provides a sample that you can use to encrypt the passwords written in plain text in the USRREC statement of the USRINFO configuration member.

# Appendix C. Invoking the EQQEXIT macro

The sample event-tracking exits shipped with IBM Z Workload Scheduler are written in assembler language. The event-tracking code in these exits is generated by an assembler macro called EQQEXIT. The following sections describe how you invoke the EQQEXIT macro. This appendix contains General-use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information.

## Invoking EQQEXIT in SMF exits

EQQEXIT establishes its own addressability in SMF exits. It saves and restores all used registers. To do this, it expects Register 13 to point to a standard z/OS save area.

There are two ways to invoke the EQQEXIT macro in an SMF exit:

- Invoke EQQEXIT with all registers unchanged since the exit was called (except Register 15).
- Save all registers on entry to the exit and then invoke EQQEXIT by specifying the address of the initial save area.

In both cases, the EQQEXIT macro must be invoked in Supervisor state, PSW key 0.

## Invoking EQQEXIT in JES exits

In JES exits, EQQEXIT must be invoked in Supervisor state, PSW key 1. EQQEXIT expects code addressability to be already established. It also expects registers to be set up as follows:

- **EXIT7**

- R0**

- JCT read/write indicator (JES2 SP™ Version 3, or earlier); address of a parameter list mapped by the JES2 \$XPL macro (JES2 SP™ Version 4, or later).

- R1**

- Address of the JCT being read or written.

- R13**

- Address of the current PCE.

- **EXIT51**

- R1**

- Address of a parameter list mapped by the JES2 \$XPL macro.

- **IATUX19**

- R8**

- Address of the current JDS entry.

**R9**

Address of the current RESQUEUE entry.

**R11**

Address of the current FCT entry.

**R12**

Address of the TVTABLE entry.

• **IATUX29****R11**

Address of the current FCT entry.

**R13**

Address of the input-service data area for the current function.

Note that these register conventions are already set up when the exit is called. You must invoke EQQEXIT while these registers are unchanged.

If a shipped JES exit example (or the EQQEXIT macro) has been user-modified, make sure that it does not prevent or filter the tracking of IBM Z Workload Scheduler itself.

See the NOTES section of the EQQEXIT prolog for information about the register contents that are destroyed by EQQEXIT in JES exits.

## Macro invocation syntax for EQQEXIT

### Purpose

EQQEXIT produces IBM Z Workload Scheduler event-tracking exit code by generating assembler code to perform in an SMF or JES exit.

### Syntax

**EXIT**=*exit name*

**REG13**=*address of save area*

**MAPMAC**={YES|**NO**}

**SETUID**={YES|**NO**}

**SRREAD**={YES|NO|**NONE**}

**SNA**={YES|**NO**}

## Parameters

### **EXIT=exit name**

A required keyword defining the name of the exit in which the macro is used. The following names can be specified: IEFACRT, IEFUJI, IEFU83, EXIT7, IATUX19, and IATUX29. Except for the EXIT7 exit, a warning message is issued if the name of the current CSECT differs from the name specified by the EXIT keyword.

### **REG13=address of save area**

An optional keyword defining the address of the current-register save area when the SMF or JES exit was called. The default for this keyword depends on the name specified by the EXIT keyword. If the current exit is EXIT7, the default is PCELPVS. If the current exit is IATUX19 or IATUX29, the default is FCTSAVCH. In all other cases, the default is the second fullword in the current save area (if the current save area is properly chained, and the previous save area contains the registers at entry to the exit).

If the default does not apply, the REG13 keyword must be specified. Its value must be a fullword pointing to the save area that was used to store all the registers when the exit was entered.

### **MAPMAC={YES|NO}**

An optional keyword specifying whether the macro should generate the required assembler mapping macros. The default is to generate these mapping macros. The following mapping macros are required by EQQEXIT code: CVT, IEFJESCT, IEFJSSOB, and IEFJSSIB. The IEFACRT exit also requires the IEFJMR macro.

If you specify NO, the IEFU83 exit requires mapping of the SMF records IFASMFR 14 and IFASMFR 64. You must label them SMF14REC and SMF64REC, respectively. For example:

|                |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| SMF14REC DSECT | * SMF RECORD 14 MAPPING    |
| IFASMFR 14     | * DATA SET ACTIVITY RECORD |

### **SETUID={YES|NO}**

An optional keyword specifying whether the macro should generate code to place the current user ID in the JMRUSEID field when the IEFUJI exit is taken. Specify YES to generate this code. If you specify NO, which is the default, the JMRUSEID field is not updated. You are recommended to specify YES if you use the current user ID to filter data set close events. You need these mapping macros when you specify YES: IHAPSA, IHAASCB, IHAASXB, and IHAACEE.

### **SRREAD={YES|NO|NONE}**

An optional keyword defining whether a resource availability event should be generated when a data set is closed after being opened for read processing.

When YES is specified, an SR event is generated each time a data set is closed after being opened for either read or output processing.

When NO is specified or defaulted, the SR event is generated only when a data set has been opened for output processing. The event is not generated if the data set has been opened for read processing.

When you specify NONE, no data set triggering is performed.

For more information about the data set triggering function, see [Implementing support for data set triggering on page 104](#).

#### **SNA={YES|NO}**

An optional keyword specifying whether JES3 SNA NJE is supported.

### **Messages**

The following messages can be generated at assembly time:

- WARNING: SNA KEYWORD IS ONLY USED FOR EXIT = IATUX19
- WARNING: SNA VALUE SNA IS NOT RECOGNIZED
- WARNING: EXIT NAME DIFFERS FROM CURRENT CSECT NAME
- WARNING: MAPMAC VALUE MAPMAC IS NOT RECOGNIZED
- WARNING: SRREAD KEYWORD IS ONLY USED FOR EXIT=IEFU83
- WARNING: SRREAD VALUE NOT RECOGNIZED, YES OR NO ARE THE ONLY VALID VALUES
- EXIT NAME *EXIT* IS NOT SUPPORTED

### **Return codes**

The following return codes can be generated at assembly time:

**4**

Input invalid, check for warning messages.

**12**

Unsupported exit specified for the EXIT keyword.

## Appendix D. Invoking the EQQLSENT macro

The following procedure is supported only for compatibility with earlier versions. To use the current support for data set triggering, see the procedure for running event-driven workload automation described in *Managing the Workload*.

When the data set triggering function is used, you specify the data sets for which you want events generated by building the data set selection table EQQDSLST. The EQQDSLST is created by invoking the EQQLSENT macro. The following sections describe how you invoke the EQQLSENT macro. This appendix contains General-use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information.



**Note:** The current support for data set triggering is based on the EQQEVLSST configuration file. If EQQJCLIB contains both EQQEVLSST and EQQDSLST, the resulting triggering selection table is the union of EQQEVLSST and EQQDSLST. In this case, EQQEVLSST data is processed first. If EQQJCLIB contains only EQQDSLST, the tracker loads it as triggering selection table.

### Invoking EQQLSENT to create EQQDSLST

The EQQLSENT macro is used to create entries in the data set triggering selection table. The selection table is loaded into ECSA when the IBM Z Workload Scheduler event writer is started.

The sample EQQLSJCL in the SEQQSAMP library can be used to invoke the EQQLSENT macro.

### Macro invocation syntax for EQQLSENT

#### Purpose

EQQLSENT produces an entry in the data set triggering selection table, EQQDSLST. EQQDSLST is used in SMF exit IEFU83 by the data set triggering function to decide which SMF records to process. When an SMF 14, 15, or 64 record matches a condition in EQQDSLST, a special resource availability event is created and broadcast to all IBM Z Workload Scheduler subsystems defined on the system where the SMF record was created.

#### Format

**STRING=** *string*|**LASTENTRY**

**POS=** *numeric position*

**USERID=** *user ID filter criteria*

**JOBNAME=** *jobname filter criteria*

**AINDIC={Y|N}**

**LIFACT={Y|N|R}**

**LIFTIM=***interval*

## Parameters

### STRING=*string*|LASTENTRY

Required keyword specifying the character string to be searched for. The string can be 1 to 44 characters long. To identify the fully qualified last level of a data set name, add a space as the last character and enclose the string in single quotation marks. Consider this example. You have two data sets:

```
DSN.NAME.AB
DSN.NAME.ABC
```

Specify `STRING=DSN.NAME.AB, POS=1` if you want SR availability events created for both data sets. Specify `STRING='DSN.NAME.AB ', POS=1` if you want events created only for the first data set.

When EQQLSENT is invoked with `STRING=LASTENTRY` it generates an end of table indicator. After having invoked EQQLSENT with keyword parameters `STRING` and `POS` a number of times, EQQLSENT must be invoked one last time with `STRING=LASTENTRY` in order to complete the table.

To create an empty EQQDSLST, just invoke EQQLSENT once, with `STRING=LASTENTRY`. When an empty list is used by IEFU83, no SR events are created.

### POS=*numeric position*

A required keyword specifying the numeric position where the string begins.

### USERID=*string*

Optional keyword specifying a generic character string to be compared with the SMFxxUID field, which contains the user identification associated with the job, started task, or TSO user that requested the activity against the data set that resulted in the data set close. The string can be 1 to 8 characters long. For this parameter the following wildcards are allowed:

- `*`: to match any sequence of characters.
- `%`: to match any single character. For example, if you specify `AB%`, `ABC` is a match, `AB` or `ABCD` are not a match.



**Note:** The SMF user ID field may contain a blank value. See *z/OS® System Management Facilities* for more information about the SMFxxUID or SMFxxUIF field.

If you need to control SR availability events based on the user ID and the SMF value is blank in your installation, consider using the IEFUJI exit to insert the user ID. You are recommended to specify `SETUID=YES` on the EQQEXIT macro when you generate the IEFUJI exit: this sets the JMRUSEID field, which SMF then copies to the SMF user ID field.

If you want to update the JMRUSEID field yourself, the user ID is most easily taken from the ACEEUSRI field in the ACEE, pointed to from the ASXB, pointed to from the ASCB. This can be located as follows: `PSAAOLD ===>`

```
ASCB ACSBASXB ===> ASXB ASXBSENV ===> ACEE ACEEUSRI ===> userid
```

The DSECTs needed are mapped by these macros:

| Area | Macro   | Library     |
|------|---------|-------------|
| PSA  | IHAPSA  | SYS1.MACLIB |
| ASCB | IHAASCB | SYS1.MACLIB |
| ASXB | IHAASXB | SYS1.MODGEN |
| ACEE | IHAACEE | SYS1.MACLIB |

The JMR, mapped by IEFJMR, is already available in the EQQEXIT expansion in IEFUJI.

#### **JOBNAME=string**

Optional keyword specifying a generic character string to be compared with the SMF14JBN, SMF15JBN, or SMF64JMN field, which contains the name of the job, started task or TSO user that requested the activity against the data set that resulted in the data set close. The string can be 1 to 8 characters long. For this parameter the following wildcards are allowed:

- \*: to match any sequence of characters.
- %: to match any single character. For example, if you specify AB%, ABC is a match, AB or ABCD are not a match.

If the data set is to be processed by FTP, JOBNAME corresponds to the \*\* USERID \*\* under which the data set is received. That is, the USERID supplied when the remote host opened the FTP session to PUT the data set, or when a local user (or batch job) opened the FTP session to GET the data set.

#### **AINDIC={Y|N}**

Optional keyword specifying that the special resource is available (Y) or unavailable (N). The default is that the resource available.

#### **LIFACT={Y|N|R}**

Optional keyword specifying the value to which the global availability of the special resource is reset, after the interval of time specified by LIFTIM has expired. Allowed values are:

**Y**

Sets the global availability to Yes

**N**

Sets the global availability to No

**R**

Sets the global availability to blank

This keyword is valid only if LIFTIM is specified. The default is R.



**LIFTIM=interval**

Optional keyword specifying the interval of time, in minutes, after which the global availability of the special resource is reset to the value specified by LIFACT. The allowed range is from 1 to 999999.

**Note:**

1. The output from assembling the EQQSENT macro must be placed in the EQQDSLST member in the data set referenced by the ddname EQQJCLIB.
2. Generation Data Group data sets are specified by the group name. For example, when a GDG data set with the name 'DSN.OPCSUBS.GDG.G0001V00' is closed the special resource event contains resource name 'DSN.OPCSUBS.GDG'.
3. For a partitioned data set, the member name is not part of the resource name in the SR event.
4. For VSAM data sets the resource name in the SR event is the cluster name (without the DATA or INDEX suffix).

**Example****Examples**

```
EQQSENT STRING=SYS1.MAN,POS=1
EQQSENT STRING='TEST.DSCLOSE ',POS=1,USERID=SYSOP
EQQSENT STRING=CP2,POS=12
EQQSENT STRING=EQQDATA.EXCL,POS=5
EQQSENT STRING='DSN.OPCSUBS.GDG ',POS=1
EQQSENT STRING=LASTENTRY
END
```

In this example, SMF records with:

- A data set name beginning with SYS1.MAN, or
- Data set name TEST.DSCLOSE and user ID SYSOP
- Records with CP2 in position 12, such as DSN.OPCSUB.CP2, or
- Records that have EQQDATA.EXCL starting in position 5
- The root of a GDG data set name

will cause SR availability events to be generated.

**Messages**

The following messages can be generated at assembly time:

- KEYWORD STRING IS REQUIRED
- KEYWORD POS IS REQUIRED
- POSITION MUST BE BETWEEN 1 AND 43
- NULL NAME NOT VALID

- NAME (STRING) GREATER THAN 44 CHARACTERS
- POSITION INVALID FOR NAME (STRING)
- USERID STRING NOT VALID
- JOBNAME STRING NOT VALID
- AINDIC MUST BE EITHER Y OR N
- POSITION NOT VALID FOR NAME (STRING)
- LIFACT MUST BE Y, N, OR R
- LIFTIM LENGTH NOT VALID
- LIFTIM VALUE NOT VALID
- LIFTIM VALUE 0 NOT ALLOWED

## Return codes

The following return code can be generated at assembly time:

### 12

Input invalid, check error messages.

# Notices

This document provides information about copyright, trademarks, terms and conditions for product documentation.

© Copyright IBM Corporation 1993, 2016 / © Copyright HCL Technologies Limited 2016, 2025

This information was developed for products and services offered in the US. This material might be available from IBM in other languages. However, you may be required to own a copy of the product or product version in that language in order to access it.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM Director of Licensing  
IBM Corporation  
North Castle Drive, MD-NC119  
Armonk, NY 10504-1785  
US*

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

*Intellectual Property Licensing  
Legal and Intellectual Property Law  
IBM Japan Ltd.  
19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku  
Tokyo 103-8510, Japan*

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you provide in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

*IBM Director of Licensing*  
*IBM Corporation*  
*North Castle Drive, MD-NC119*  
*Armonk, NY 10504-1785*  
*US*

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

The performance data discussed herein is presented as derived under specific operating conditions. Actual results may vary.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to actual people or business enterprises is entirely coincidental.

#### COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

© (HCL Technologies Limited) (2025).

Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2016

## Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM® or other companies. A current list of IBM® trademarks is available on the web at "Copyright and trademark information" at [www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml](http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml).

Adobe™, the Adobe™ logo, PostScript™, and the PostScript™ logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe™ Systems Incorporated in the United States, and/or other countries.

IT Infrastructure Library™ is a Registered Trade Mark of AXELOS Limited.

Linear Tape-Open™, LTO™, the LTO™ Logo, Ultrium™, and the Ultrium™ logo are trademarks of HP, IBM® Corp. and Quantum in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel™, Intel™ logo, Intel Inside™, Intel Inside™ logo, Intel Centrino™, Intel Centrino™ logo, Celeron™, Intel Xeon™, Intel SpeedStep™, Itanium™, and Pentium™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel™ Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux™ is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft™, Windows™, Windows NT™, and the Windows™ logo are trademarks of Microsoft™ Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.



Java™ and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cell Broadband Engine™ is a trademark of Sony Computer Entertainment, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both and is used under license therefrom.

ITIL™ is a Registered Trade Mark of AXELOS Limited.

UNIX™ is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

## Terms and conditions for product documentation

Permissions for the use of these publications are granted subject to the following terms and conditions.

## **Applicability**

These terms and conditions are in addition to any terms of use for the IBM website.

## **Personal use**

You may reproduce these publications for your personal, noncommercial use provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not distribute, display or make derivative work of these publications, or any portion thereof, without the express consent of IBM.

## **Commercial use**

You may reproduce, distribute and display these publications solely within your enterprise provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not make derivative works of these publications, or reproduce, distribute or display these publications or any portion thereof outside your enterprise, without the express consent of IBM.

## **Rights**

Except as expressly granted in this permission, no other permissions, licenses or rights are granted, either express or implied, to the publications or any information, data, software or other intellectual property contained therein.

IBM reserves the right to withdraw the permissions granted herein whenever, in its discretion, the use of the publications is detrimental to its interest or, as determined by IBM, the above instructions are not being properly followed.

You may not download, export or re-export this information except in full compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including all United States export laws and regulations.

IBM MAKES NO GUARANTEE ABOUT THE CONTENT OF THESE PUBLICATIONS. THE PUBLICATIONS ARE PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

# Index

## A

- ACCEPT processing 356
- accessibility xi
- activating
  - API (application programming interface) 163
  - Dynamic Workload Console 170
  - NCF 159
  - server 166
  - subtasks 19
- AES encryption algorithm 287
- agent
  - direct upgrade 309, 309
  - maintaining 314
  - troubleshooting 314
  - with z-centric capabilities 308
- agent installation return code
  - twinsinst 316, 339
- agent restore return code
  - twinsinst 316, 339
- agent uninstallation return code
  - twinsinst 316, 339
- agent uninstalling
  - twinsinst 336
- agent upgrade return code
  - twinsinst 316, 316, 339, 339
- agent with z-centric capabilities
  - installing 285
  - dockerfile 308
- agents
  - authorization to install 286
- allocating data sets
  - non-VSAM 125
- APAR
  - PK93917 101
- APARs
  - IZ79105 272
  - PH06422 129, 129
  - PH09531 205, 205
  - PH31359 68, 68, 69
  - PH50320 96
  - PH51620 203, 220
  - PH59585 194, 206, 207, 208, 210
  - PH62691 106, 106, 170, 172, 201
  - PH64395 267
  - PI13017 101
  - PI19400 150, 172
  - PI63875 204
  - PI67317 103, 103, 194
  - PI77416 118, 118
  - PI97370 97
  - PK00502 161
  - PK04155 106, 109
  - PK05336 207
  - PK06007 92, 98, 98
  - PK06227 76, 92, 93, 179, 179, 347, 359, 359, 362
  - PK06712 160
  - PK06763 200
  - PK11767 358
  - PK16903 151, 153
  - PK18760 48
  - PK20776 102, 102
  - PK20879 208
  - PK22761 197
  - PK25268 124

- PK25979 352
- PK28707 134
- PK31005 113
- PK39432 199
- PK40356 76, 347
- PK40969 16, 17, 18, 24, 25, 25, 27, 48, 51, 71, 72, 87, 113, 162, 185, 191
- PK41519 82
- PK45614 171
- PK53014 154
- PK53476 146, 148
- PK54782 207
- PK56520 146
- PK57062 153
- PK64650 368
- PK65147 360
- PK65527 152
- PK69493 106
- PK77418 56
- PK81179 366
- PK83161 208
- PK86682 68, 68, 79, 83
- PK88734 92
- PK92042 94, 161, 357, 359
- PK94896 14
- PK96348 123, 124, 124
- PM01090 127, 142
- PM02690 142
- PM04245 151, 154
- PM06648 126, 200
- PM07439 77, 77, 77, 349, 349, 349, 357
- PM08778 105, 133
- PM45677 102
- PM60019 125
- PQ65923 13
- PQ78043 13
- PQ81700 117
- PQ84095 358
- PQ86050 126
- PQ87576 106, 111
- PQ91074 145
- PQ96400 95
- PQ96540 48, 60, 63, 82, 95, 139
- PQ99317 76
- PQ99366 216
- API (application programming interface)
  - activating support for 104, 163
- APPC/MVS
  - options, updating in SYS1.PARMLIB 104, 165, 169
- APPCPMnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 104, 165, 169
- APPL
  - resource class 109
  - statements
    - API (application programming interface) 163, 163
    - local LU for the server, defining 168
    - local LU, defining 163
    - NCF 159, 161
- application description data set (EQQADD5) 117
  - considerations when allocating 123
- application job plug-ins
  - option to add runtime for Java runtime to run job types with advanced options 332
- application node definitions, NCF 159
- application programming interface (API)

- activating support for 104, 163
- APPLY processing 356
- archive of current plan (EQQACPD5)
  - considerations when allocating 123
- AUTHCMD statement, updating for TSO commands 103
- authority, problem determination procedures 184
- authorization roles
  - twinsinst 285
- AUTHTSF statement, updating for EQQMINOX 103
- automatic-recovery-procedure library (EQQPRLIB) 127
  - considerations when allocating 140

## B

- backup checkpoint data set (EQQBKPT) 125
  - considerations about allocating 129
- BACKUP command 103
- backup controller
  - configuring 44
  - migrating 198
- basic user registry
  - configuration 277
- batch jobs
  - security 106
  - user ID of submitted jobs 106
- batch-jobs
  - generating skeleton JCL 79
- BULKDISC command 103

## C

- calendar and workstation data set (EQQWSDS) 119
- CDRSC statements
  - API 165
  - NCF 159
- checklist for installing 50
- checkpoint data set (EQQCKPT) 125
  - considerations when allocating 129
- class of service table 161
- CLIST library 125, 150
- Cloud & Smarter Infrastructure technical training xi
- COFDLFnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 104
- commands
  - TSO
    - BACKUP 103, 103
    - BULKDISC 103
    - OPINFO 103
    - OPSTAT 103
    - SRSTAT 103
    - WSSTAT 103
- COMMNDnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 104
- configuration
  - basic user registry 277
  - for LDAP 277
  - for single sign-on 277
- configurations
  - connecting
    - IBM Z Workload Scheduler systems 25
  - cross-system coupling facility (XCF) 25
  - description 18
  - examples
    - introduction 27

- single address space 32
- TCP/IP connection 27
- VTAM connection 30
- XCF connection 29
- MAS (Multi-Access Spool) restrictions 27
- Multi-Access Spool (MAS) restrictions 27
- NCF (network communication function) 25, 25
- planning 24
- VTAM 25, 25
- workload restart
  - description 26
- workstation destination 26
- XCF (cross-system coupling facility) 25
- configureDB script
  - configuration 241
  - database configuration 241
  - database population 241
  - schema creation 241
- connection
  - to
    - Dynamic Workload Console 267
- console
  - portfolio 269
  - start 269
- Containers
  - Deploying with Docker 300
- controlled systems
  - description 18
  - software requirements 14
- controller
  - checking the message log 182
  - description 15
  - IBMOPC resource class 109
  - loading national language support (NLS) software 66
  - loading software 65
  - RACF 106, 109
  - software requirements 13
  - started task data sets 146, 148
  - verifying installation 181
- controller, migrating with IWSZSELFUPGRADE 211
- controlling system
  - description 18
- COS table 161
- COUPLEnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 102
- creating sample JCL 68
- creating
  - Workload Automation Programming Language samples 89
- critical job table data set (EQQJTABL) 126
- cross-domain resource definitions
  - API 165
  - NCF 159
- cross-system coupling facility (XCF)
  - groups 157
  - including 156
  - initialization statements 158
  - MVS initialization options 102
  - run time options 158
- current plan data set (EQQCPnDS) 117
  - considerations when allocating 123
- current plan data set (EQQSTDS and EQQNSTDS) 124

## D

- data
  - considerations when allocating

- dual job-tracking log (EQQDLnn) 135
- extended-auditing archive (EQQDBARC) 136
- extended-auditing log (EQQDBnn) 136
- job-tracking archive (EQQJTARC) 135
- job-tracking log (EQQJTnn) 135
- data lookaside facility (DLF) 104
- data set triggering
  - implementing 104
- data set triggering selection table macro (EQQLSENT)
  - invoking 366
  - syntax 366
- data sets
  - allocating 116
  - VSAM 117
- backup checkpoint (EQQBKPT) 129
- checkpoint (EQQBKPT) 129
- considerations when allocating
  - (event-driven workload automation configuration file (EQQEVLIB) 133
  - application description (EQQADDS) 123
  - archive of current plan (EQQACPDS) 123
  - automatic-recovery-procedure library (EQQPRLIB) 140
  - checkpoint (EQQCKPT) 129
  - current plan (EQQCPnDS) 123
  - diagnostic (EQQDUMP) 130
  - diagnostic message and trace (EQQDMSG) 130
  - dump (SYSMDUMP) 130
  - event (EQQEVDS) 132
  - event (EQQHTTPO) 132
  - extended data (EQQXDnDS) 125
  - extended-auditing archive (EQQDBARC) 136
  - general 116
  - JCC incident log 134
  - JCC incident work (EQQINCWK) 135
  - JCC message table (EQQJCLIB) 134
  - JCL repository (EQQJSnDS) 123
  - job library (EQQJLIB) 133
  - job-tracking archive (EQQJTARC) 135
  - loop analysis (EQQLOOP) 139
  - message log (EQQMLLOG) 138
  - parameter library (EQQPARM) 140
  - PIF parameter data set (EQQYPARM) 140
  - started-task submit (EQQSTC) 141
- in Tivoli OPC procedure JCL
  - optional 148
  - required 146
- ISPF profile 150
- migrating 201, 205, 205, 206
- security 108
- step awareness
  - current plan (EQQSTDS and EQQNSTDS) 124
- Tivoli OPC dialog 153
- databases, migrating 201, 205, 205, 206
- datasets
  - allocating non-VSAM 125
- DB2
  - setup to run reports on DWC 143
- DB2 for DWC reports
  - setting up 143
- default dialog-controller connection table 151
- Deploying
  - with Docker compose 300
- diagnostic data set
  - EQQDMSG 125, 130

- EQQDUMP 126, 130, 162
- SYSMDUMP 101, 127, 130
- dialog
  - entering 155
  - EQQMINOx, authorizing 103
  - initializing 150
  - ISPF command table 151
  - problem determination procedures 183
  - security 109
- direct upgrade 309, 309
- disaster recovery
  - configuring backup controller 44
- dispatching priority 104
- DLF (data lookaside facility) 104
- Docker compose
  - prerequisites 300
- Docker containers
  - master domain manager installation 306
- dockerfile 308
- dump content definitions 101
- dump data set (SYSMDUMP) 101, 127, 130
- dwcinst script
  - Dynamic Workload Console 256
- dynamic exits (PROGnn) 98, 100
- Dynamic Workload Console
  - accessibility xi
  - activating 170
  - activating support for 170
  - configuration 272, 272
  - dwcinst script 256
  - engine connection 267
  - getting started 269
  - installation path 218
  - prerequisite 219
  - server support 170
  - upgrading
    - overview 278, 278

## E

- ECSA (extended common service area) 95
- education xi
- EDWA configuration file repository (EQQEVLIB) 126
- EMAIL (EMAIL data set) 130
- email data set
  - EQQEMAIL 126
- EMAIL data set (EQQEMAIL 130
- ended-in-error-list layout table 153
- environment setup 354
- EQQACPDS (archive of current plan)
  - considerations when allocating 123
- EQQADDS (application description data set) 117
  - considerations when allocating 123
- EQQBKPT (backup checkpoint data set) 125, 129
- EQQBRDS (internal reader data set) 128
- EQQCKPT (checkpoint data set) 125
  - considerations when allocating 129
- EQQCPnDS (current plan data set) 117
  - considerations when allocating 123
- EQQDBARC (extended-auditing-archive data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 136
- EQQDBnn (extended-auditing-log data set)
  - considerations when allocating 136
- EQQDLnn (dual job-tracking-log data set) 125
  - considerations when allocating 135
- EQQDMSG (diagnostic message and trace data set) 125



- considerations when allocating 130
- EQQDUMP (diagnostic data set) 126, 162
  - considerations when allocating 130
- EQQEMAIL (email data set) 126
- EQQEMAIL (incident data set) 126
- EQQEVDS (event data set) 126
  - calculating optimum LRECL 133
  - considerations when allocating 132
- EQQEVLIB ( EDWA configuration file repository) 126
- EQQEVLIB (event-driven workload automation configuration file data set)
  - considerations when allocating 133
- EQQEXIT (event-tracking-code generation macro)
  - in JES exits 92, 362
  - in SMF exits 92, 362
  - invoking 362
  - syntax 363
- EQQHTTPO (event data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 132
- EQQINCWK (JCC incident work data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 135
- EQQJBLIB (job library data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 133
- EQQJCLIB (JCC message table data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 134
- EQQJOBS installation aid
  - creating sample JCL 68
  - creating
    - Workload Automation Programming Language samples
  - 89
  - description 66
  - generating batch-job skeletons 79
  - setting up 66
- EQQJSnDS (JCL repository data set) 117
  - considerations when allocating 123
- EQQJTABL (critical job table data set) 126
- EQQJTARC (job-tracking-archive data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 135
- EQQJTnn (extended-auditing-log data set) 126
- EQQJTnn (job-tracking-log data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 135
- EQQLDDS (long-term plan work data set) 118
- EQQLOOP (loop analysis data set) 126
- EQQLOOP (loop analysis log data set)
  - considerations when allocating 139
- EQQLSENT (data set triggering selection table macro)
  - invoking 366
  - syntax 366
- EQQLTBKP (long-term-plan backup data set) 118
- EQQLTDS (long-term plan data set) 118
- EQQMINOx, authorizing for TSO 103
- EQQMLOG 49
  - checking at the controller 182
  - checking at the server 183
- EQQMLOG (message log data set) 126
  - considerations when allocating 138
- EQQMLOG2 49
- EQQMONDS ( monitoring data set) 126
- EQQNCPDS (new current plan data set) 118
- EQQNCXDS (new current plan extension data set) 118
- EQQNSTDs (current plan data set) 124
- EQQOCPBK (data set) 127
- EQQOIDS (operator instruction data set) 118
- EQQPARM (parameter library) 127

- considerations when allocating 140
- EQQPRLIB (automatic-recovery-procedure library) 127
  - considerations when allocating 140
- EQQRDDS (resource description data set) 118
- EQQSIDS (side information data set) 118
- EQQSMTP (internal reader data set) 139
- EQQSTC (started-task-submit data set) 127
  - considerations when allocating 141
- EQQSTDS (current plan data set) 124
- EQQTROUT (input to EQQAUDIT) 127
- EQQTROUT (tracklog data set) 136
- EQQUPGBL sample 211
- EQQUPGWA sample 211
- EQQWSDS (workstation and calendar data set) 119
- EQQXDnDS (extended data, data set)
  - considerations when allocating 125
- EQQYPARM (parameter data set)
  - considerations when allocating 140
- EQQYPARM (PIF parameter data set) 127
- event data set
  - for an event writer (EQQEVDS) 126
  - for submit checkpointing 24, 126
  - verify 178
- event types 177
- event writer
  - using with event reader function 48
- event-driven workload automation configuration file data set (EQQEVLIB)
  - considerations when allocating 133
- event-tracking-code generation macro (EQQEXIT)
  - in JES exits 92, 362
  - in SMF exits 92, 362
  - invoking 362
  - syntax 363
- exits
  - event tracking 91
- extended common service area (ECSA) 95
- extended data (EQQXDnDS)
  - considerations when allocating 125
- extended-auditing data sets
  - considerations when allocating 136
- extended-auditing-archive data set (EQQDBARC) 126
- extended-auditing-log data set (EQQJTnn) 126

## F

- fallback 215
- FIPS support 172
- functions,
  - IBM Z Workload Scheduler subtasks, activating 19

## G

- GDDM 153
- generating batch-job skeletons 79
- graphical attribute table 153
- gskkyman 113, 269

## H

- hardware requirements 13
- Hyperbatch support
  - COFDLFnn, updating 104
- hot standby 48

## I

- IBM i
- IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent 291

- IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent 290
  - direct upgrade 309, 309
  - uninstalling 311
  - upgrading 309
- IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent uninstalling
  - twinsinst 311, 311
- IBMOPC resource class 109, 109
- ICHRIN03 106
- IKJTSOnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB
  - AUTHCMD statement, updating for TSO commands 103
  - AUTHTSF statement, updating for EQQMINOx 103
- Incident (Incident data set) 131
- incident data set
  - EQQEMAIL 126
- Incident data set (EQQINCID 131
- incident log (JCC)
  - considerations when allocating 134
- initialization statements
  - defining 150
- input to EQQAUDIT (EQQTROUT) 127
- install
  - Java runtime 291, 323, 332
- installation
  - log files 271
- installation agent
  - return code 316, 339
- installation and uninstallation log files
  - twinsinst 297, 310, 313
- installation method
  - twinsinst 290
- installing
  - availability 48
  - checklist 50
  - detailed instructions 60
  - EQQJOBS installation aid
    - creating sample JCL 68
    - creating
      - Workload Automation Programming Language samples
    - 89
    - description 66
    - generating batch-job skeletons 79
    - setting up 66
  - event tracking exits 91
  - hot standby 48
  - initialization statements, defining 150
  - loading controller software 65
  - loading national language support (NLS) software 66
  - loading tracker software 64
  - MAS (Multi-Access Spool) restrictions 27
  - Multi-Access Spool (MAS) restrictions 27
  - NCF 159
  - overview 22
  - planning 48
  - RACF 106
  - security 106
  - started-task operations, implementing support for 145
  - verifying 175
    - configuration 187
    - controller 181
    - standby controller 185
    - submit events 191
    - tracker 175
    - tracking events 177

- installing master domain manager
  - Docker containers 306
- internal reader data set (EQQBRDS) 128
- ISPF (Interactive System Productivity Facility)
  - command table 151
  - table library 151
- IWSZSELFUPGRADE, application to migrate controller 211

## J

- Java runtime
  - installation 291, 323, 332
- Java utilities
  - activating support for 172
- JCL repository data set (EQQJSnDS) 117
- considerations when allocating 123
- JES exits, installing 91
- JES2
  - EXIT51 362
  - EXIT7 362
  - MAS (Multi-Access Spool) restrictions 27
  - Multi-Access Spool (MAS) restrictions 27
- JES3
  - IATUX19 362
  - IATUX29 363
- JESJOBS RACF resource class 111
- JESSPOOL RACF resource class 112
- job completion checker (JCC)
  - data sets
    - considerations when allocating 134
    - incident log 127, 134
    - incident work 135
    - incident work (EQQINCWK) 126
    - message table (EQQJCLIB) 126, 134
- job library data set (EQQJBLIB) 126
- considerations when allocating 133
- job log 17
- job-tracking data sets
  - considerations when allocating 135
  - dual job-tracking-log data set (EQQDLnn) 125
  - job-tracking-archive data set (EQQJTARC) 126
  - job-tracking-log data set (EQQJTnn) 126
  - tracklog data set (EQQTROUT) 136
- joblog and Restart Information requests log data sets
  - EQQLOGRC (joblog and Restart Information requests log data sets) 126

## L

- language packs
  - installing 245, 261, 294, 327
- LDAP
  - configuration 277
- libraries
  - CLIST 150
  - ISPF table 151
  - link 101
  - sample (SEQQSAMP) 347
- link library (LNKLSTnn) 101
- LNKLSTnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 101
- load module library (IEAAPFnn) 98
- log files 271
- log management 17
- logon mode table 160
- long-term plan data set (EQQLTDS) 118
- long-term plan work data set (EQQLDDS) 118
- long-term-plan backup data set (EQQLTBKP) 118
- loop analysis data set
  - EQQLOOP 126

- loop analysis log data set
  - EQQLOOP
    - considerations when allocating 139
- LTPA keys
  - sharing 277

## M

- macros
  - EQQEXIT (event-tracking-code generation macro) 92, 362
  - EQQLSENT (data set triggering selection table macro) 366
- maintaining
  - agent 314
- MAS (Multi-Access Spool) restrictions 27
- MAXECSA values 96
- message log data set
  - checking at the controller 182
  - checking at the server 183
  - EQQMLOG 126
  - considerations when allocating 138
- migrating
  - backup controller 198
  - controller 211
  - data sets 201, 205, 205, 206
  - databases 201, 205, 205, 206
  - EQQICTOP conversion program 201
- MLOG switch 49
- Monitoring data set (EQQMOMDS) 126
- Multi-Access Spool (MAS) restrictions 27
- MVS
  - router service 109
  - SSI (subsystem interface) 21
  - subsystem interface (SSI) 21

## N

- national language support (NLS) 66
- NCF (network communication function)
  - activating 159
  - application node definitions 159
  - cross-domain resource definitions 159
- network communication function (NCF)
  - activating 159
  - application node definitions 159
  - cross-domain resource definitions 159
- new current plan data set (EQQNCPDS) 118
- new current plan extension data set (EQQNCXDS) 118
- NLS (national language support) 66

## O

- operator instruction data set (EQQOIDS) 118
- OPERCMDS RACF resource class 112
- OPINFO command 103
- OPSTAT command 103
- optional password encryption 287
- output collector 17, 170
- overview
  - upgrading
    - Dynamic Workload Console 278

## P

- parallel test 197
- parameter library (EQPPARM) 127
  - considerations when allocating 140
- parameter twsinst update
  - addruntime 332
  - tdwbhostname 334
  - tdwbport 334
  - uname 334
  - update 334

- wait 334
- work\_dir 334
- password encryption 224, 286
- performance considerations
  - dispatching priority 104
  - event data set (EQQEVDS), calculating optimum LRECL 133
  - program properties table (PPT) 104
  - starting an event writer with an event reader 48
- PIF parameter data set (EQQYPARM) 127
- considerations when allocating 140
- planning
  - installation 48
- portfolio
  - console 269
- PPT (program properties table) 104
- prerequisite
  - Dynamic Workload Console 219
- prerequisite Docker deployment
  - master domain manager 300
- problem determination procedures
  - authority 184
  - dialog 183
  - job tracking 177
  - security 184
  - tracker 177
- PROGnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 98, 100
- program properties table (PPT) 104
- program temporary fix (PTF) 22
- PTF (program temporary fix) 22

## R

- RACF 21
  - APPL resource class 109
  - batch jobs 106
  - IBMOPC resource class 109, 109
  - ICHRIN03 106
  - modifying 106, 109
  - security
    - started task 108
  - STARTED resource class 106
  - started task 108
  - user ID of submitted jobs 106
  - using functions of RACF 1.9
    - JESJOBS resource class 111
    - JESSPOOL resource class 112
    - OPERCMDS resource class 112
    - SURROGAT resource class 111
  - using functions of RACF 2.1
    - STARTED resource class 106
- ready-list layout table 153
- RECEIVE processing 355
- recovery
  - disaster between remote sites 44
- removing the product
  - IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent 311
  - twsinst 311, 336
- requirements 13
  - hardware 13
- resource description data set (EQQRDDS) 118
- REST API
  - accessing through Zowe 343
- restore agent
  - return code 316, 339
- return code
  - twsinst 316, 316, 316, 316, 339, 339, 339, 339, 339

## S

SAF (system authorization facility) 21, 109  
 sample JCL, creating 68  
 sample library (SEQQSAMP) 22, 347  
 SCHEDnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 104  
 schema creation  
   configureDB script 241  
 secure script 287  
   optional password encryption 287  
 security 21  
   APPL resource class 109  
   batch jobs 106  
   encrypting passwords 224, 286  
   IBMOPC resource class 109, 109  
   modifying 106, 109  
   router table 109  
   SAF (system authorization facility) 109  
   STARTED resource class 106  
   system authorization facility (SAF) 109  
   user ID of submitted jobs 106  
   user ID of the Tivoli OPC address  
   space 106  
   using functions of RACF 1.9  
     JESJOBS resource class 111  
     JESSPOOL resource class 112  
     OPERCMDs resource class 112  
     SURROGAT resource class 111  
 security, problem determination  
 procedures 184  
 Self-Service Catalog  
   single sign-on 277  
 Self-Service Monitoring  
   single sign-on 277  
 SEQQSAMP (sample library) 22, 347  
 server  
   activating 166  
   checking the message log 183  
   description 16  
   optional data sets 148  
   required data sets 146  
   updating APPC/MVS options 169  
 side information data set (EQQSIDS) 118  
 single sign-on  
   basic registry 277  
   configuration 277  
   Dynamic Workload Console 277  
   LDAP registry 277  
   Self-Service Catalog 277  
   Self-Service Monitoring 277  
 SMF exits, installing 91  
 SMF parameters (SMFPRMnn) 98, 100  
 SMFPRMnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB 98, 100  
 SMTP data set (EQQSMTP) 139  
 SRSTAT command 103  
 SSL  
   controller 113  
   server 113  
   TCPOPTS 113  
   Z connector  
   and server started task  
   269  
 SSO  
   configuration 277  
   Dynamic Workload Console 277  
   Self-Service Catalog 277  
   Self-Service Monitoring 277  
 standby controller  
   verifying installation 185  
 Standby controller

description 18  
 STARTED resource class 106  
 started-task operations, implementing support  
 for 145  
 started-task procedure  
   controller 144  
   output collector 144  
   tracker 144  
 started-task-submit data set (EQQSTC) 127  
   considerations when allocating 141  
 starting  
   console 269  
 step awareness (EQQSTDS and  
 EQQNSTDs) 124  
 submit checkpointing 24  
 subsystem  
   APPL resource class 109  
   name table (IEFSSNnn) 94  
 subtasks, activating 19  
 SURROGAT RACF resource class 111  
 SYS1.PARMLIB  
   APPC/MVS options (APPCPMnn) 104, 165,  
   169  
   defining subsystems (IEFSSNnn) 94  
   dispatching priority 104  
   dynamic exits (PROGnn) 98, 100  
   EQQMINOX, authorizing for TSO  
   (IKJTSOnn) 103  
   Hiperbatch support (COFDLFnn) 104  
   link library (LNKLSTnn) 101  
   load module library (IEAAPFnn) 98, 101  
   performance (SCHEDnn) 104  
   program properties table (PPT) 104  
   SMF parameters (SMFPRMnn) 98  
   starting Tivoli OPC (COMMNDnn) 104  
   SYSMDUMP 101  
   updating dump content definitions 101  
   XCF initialization options (COUPLEnn) 102  
 SYS1.PROCLIB  
   controller 144  
   tracker 144  
 SYSMDUMP (dump data set) 101, 127  
   considerations when allocating 130  
 system authorization facility (SAF) 21, 109

## T

TCPOPTS 269  
 technical training xi  
 Tivoli OPC server  
   activating support for 166  
   server support 166  
 tracker  
   description 15  
   loading software 64  
   optional data sets 148  
   RACF 106  
   started task data sets 146  
   verifying installation 175  
 tracklog data set (EQQTROUT) 136  
 training  
   technical xi  
 troubleshooting  
   agent 314  
 TSO  
   IKJTSOnn member of SYS1.PARMLIB  
   AUTHCMD statement, updating for TSO  
   commands 103  
   AUTHTSF statement, updating for  
   EQQMINOX 103  
   RACF user 109  
 TSO commands

BACKUP 103  
 BULKDISC 103  
 OPINFO 103  
 OPSTAT 103  
 SRSTAT 103  
 WSSTAT 103  
 twsinst 290, 291  
   authorization roles 285  
   installation and uninstallation log files 297,  
   310, 313, 338  
   installation method 290  
   return code 316, 316, 316, 316, 339,  
   339, 339, 339, 339  
   uninstalling 311, 336  
   usage 291

## U

uninstallation agent  
   return code 316, 339  
 uninstalling  
   IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent  
   311  
 uninstalling agent  
   twsinst 336  
 uninstalling  
   IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent  
   twsinst 311  
 upgrade agent  
   return code 316, 316, 339, 339  
 upgrading  
   Dynamic Workload Console  
   overview 278  
   IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent  
   309  
 usage  
   twsinst 291

## V

VARY ACT command 162  
 verifying installation 175  
   configuration 187  
   controller 181  
   standby controller 185  
   submit events 191  
   tracker 175  
   tracking events 177  
 VTAM  
   activate network resources 161  
   class of service table 161  
   defining NCF 159  
   logon mode table 160  
   VARY ACT command 162

## W

Workload Automation  
   Zowe CLI integration 342  
   Zowe integration 342  
 Workload Automation Programming Language  
   creating samples 89  
   environment setup 144  
 workload restart (WLR)  
   description 26  
 Workload Scheduler agents IBM i uninstalling  
   twsinst 336  
 workstation  
   destination 26  
 workstation and calendar data set  
 (EQQWSDS) 119  
 WSSTAT command 103

## X

XCF (cross-system coupling facility)

- groups 157
- including 156
- initialization statements 158
- MVS initialization options 102
- run time options 158

## **Z**

- z-centric
  - log management 17
- z-centric agent
  - direct upgrade 309, 309
  - installing 285
- Zowe
  - accessing REST API 343
  - integrating with Workload Automation 342
  - JWT token 345
  - Workload Automation commands 342